

TACTICS AND MANUAL  
FOR  
KNIGHTS TEMPLARS

SWORD AND BUGLE SIGNALS; RULES FOR CAMPS AND  
COMPETITIVE DRILLS; MILITARY ORDERS AND  
CORRESPONDENCE; CEREMONIES AND HINTS  
FOR KNIGHTLY COURTESES; ALSO THE

COMMANDERY WORKING TEXT  
THE  
BURIAL AND RELIGIOUS SERVICES

CONSECRATION OF BANNERS; GRAND ENCAMPMENT CEREMONIALS, ETC.

---

New and Enlarged Illustrated Edition  
**By H. B. GRANT,**  
**AUTHOR OF DIGEST AND CODE FOR MASONIC TRIALS.**

---

LOUISVILLE, KY.  
PUBLISHED FOR THE AUTHOR.  
1882.

Entered according to an Act of Congress in the year 1878, by H. B.  
Grant, in the office of the Librarian of Congress,  
at Washington, D. C.

---

Entered according to an Act of Congress in the year 1882, by H. B.  
Grant, in the office of the Librarian of Congress,  
at Washington, D. C.

---

### PRICE OF TACTICS AND MANUAL.

Price per single copy (postage paid), . . . . .	\$1 25
Per Dozen, each copy, . . . . .	1 00
Morocco binding (Gilt), . . . . .	2 00

H. B. GRANT,

*Louisville, Ky.*

## Contents.

Preface . . . . .	5
Testimonials . . . . .	7
Nomenclature . . . . .	xi
School of the Knight . . . . .	13
Manual of the Sword . . . . .	28, 307
Silent Manual . . . . .	40
Salutes . . . . .	16, 30, 31, 41
School of the Officer . . . . .	42
School of the Commandery . . . . .	47
Templar and Display Drill . . . . .	79
School of the Battalion . . . . .	149
School of the Mounted Knight . . . . .	179
School of the Platoon, mounted . . . . .	193
School of the Mounted Commandery . . . . .	210
Mounted Display Drill . . . . .	229
Manual of the Sword, mounted . . . . .	231
Sword Exercise . . . . .	233
Templar Sword Exercise . . . . .	238
Honors paid by Templars . . . . .	241
Visitation and Courtesies without Arms . . . . .	242
Escorts of Honor . . . . .	243
Reception and Escorts of Grand Officer . . . . .	244
Dress Parade . . . . .	245
Review . . . . .	249
General Parade . . . . .	252
Sword Signals . . . . .	256
Bugle Signals—33 Signals, 1 March . . . . .	258
Award of Prize and Rules for Competitive Drill . . . . .	266
Camps and Camping . . . . .	270
Correspondence and Orders . . . . .	273
Tactics for Asylum, etc . . . . .	276
Burial Service (with music) . . . . .	288
Service for Public Worship . . . . .	308, 362
Dedicating and Consecrating Asylums . . . . .	314, 362
Consecrating Banners . . . . .	318, 362
Knights of the Red Cross, Manual . . . . .	322
Knight Templars, Manual . . . . .	339
Knight of Malta, Manual . . . . .	355
Dramatic Address for Public Worship and other Public Occasions . . . . .	362
Templar Uniform . . . . .	365

## CONTENTS.

<b>Grand Encampment "Form and Ceremonials."</b>	
Constituting new Commanderies . . . . .	372
Installation Subordinate Commanderies . . . . .	376
Installation Grand Commanderies . . . . .	384
Installation Grand Encampment . . . . .	387
 <b>Crosses and Heraldic Tinctures.</b>	
Tinctures . . . . .	388
Crosses . . . . .	388
Crosses, Rings, Banners and Stars . . . . .	391
Index . . . . .	393

**¶** The cadence of silent manual, pages 40, 41, may be sixty to the minute if desired. The Wardens may also stand at parade rest during the silent manual.

The Wardens may omit the motions in the Manual if so directed—except the *present, order, parade rest, rest on swords, and uncover.*

**¶** Between the printer and the electrotyper, several errors were made, and not discovered until too late to correct them in this edition; they are not serious, however.



## Preface

### TO FIFTH EDITION OF TACTICS, BEING THE FIRST EDITION OF TACTICS AND MANUAL.

This system of Drill enjoys the commendation of educated tacticians and the official indorsement of nine Grand Commanderies, though it is scarcely more than three years' old. It is now enlarged and launched in new company as a candidate for further recognition.

The present work probably contains more pages of drill, more illustrations and is believed to be fuller on all subjects treated than any other manual, except perhaps in the historical part and explanation of crosses. Other matter, prepared and intended to be published with it, was necessarily crowded out, notwithstanding the fact that to make room the book has been re-set in new and smaller type, the former plates being thrown away.

For these reasons, and because the Grand Encampment ordered its laws distributed to subordinate commanderies, the Constitution and Code of Statutes have been omitted, as it is no doubt better to reduce this volume to the smallest practicable compass.

Templars seem to be alive to the truth that respect for themselves and the order demands that their drills should not only be based upon the tactics of their country, but that the commands and movements should be closely assimilated thereto. The formations peculiar to our order are under separate "schools" and in harmony with the basis established by educated experience; the commanderies can therefore practice the "legitimate drill" alone or indulge in the display

movements at Boston. The movements during trials are  
generally serious and important in the West, the object being  
to make experiments on trial machinery and may have scarcely  
wrote to us and now to do it.

Templars are instrumental the fact that they can drill  
as well as any company of volunteers. And why not? To  
add to the military worth of themselves.

The author does not claim any great amount of originality,  
although his work has been copied by the press, with slight  
modification; and some of the cuts have been taken entire  
by other authors of Templar manuscripts.

He trusts his efforts will meet with the approval of his  
fratres.



## TESTIMONIALS.

[It was the intention to have sent out this edition on its merits, but just as it was about to go to press, a few of the many letters received were looked up, and extracts are given below. Some of these were published in full with the first edition.]

It is a most admirable work, and I feel satisfied that it will meet with general favor.

It affords me sincere pleasure to recommend it to the favorable consideration of our order.

W. L. BRAGG,

*Deputy Grand Master, Grand Encampment, U. S. A.*

[He also has experience as a military officer in time of war.]

## OPINIONS OF OFFICERS OF THE ARMY.

From Gen. Upton, Author of U. S. Army Tactics.

Appears to me to be admirably adapted to the wants of this semi-military fraternity.

In assimilating the elementary military movements and commands to those prescribed in the U. S. Infantry Tactics, you have rendered an important service, not only to Knights Templars, but to the country at large.

With the hope that your work may be favorably received and widely circulated, I have the honor to be

E. UPTON,

*Brevet Maj. Gen. U. S. Army.*

The undersigned, judges of the prize-drill \* \* \* take pleasure in commending the work to the attention of those for whom it is designed, believing that it will adequately supply a want which has hitherto existed.

ALBERT BARNITZ,

*Brevet Colonel U. S. Army.*

ED. S. MEYER,

*Brevet Lieut. Colonel, U. S. Army.*

M. B. ADAMS,

*Captain of Engineers, U. S. Army.*

F. A. KENDALL,

*Captain 25th U. S. Infantry, Professor*

*Military Science and Tactics, Brooks' School, Cleveland, O.*

CHAS. W. BURROWS,

*Late 2d Lieut. 3d U. S. Art., Recorder Board of Judges.*

**From Lieut. E. S. Dudley, 2d U. S. Artillery, Professor of Military Science and Tactics.**

H'DQRS. MILITARY DEP'T, UNIVERSITY OF NEBRASKA)  
Lincoln, Nebraska, Nov. 4, 1878. }

Think it is, as a whole, the most complete and thorough work on the subject that I have yet seen. This commandery \* \* holds the prize banner awarded to the best drilled commandery in the State at our Annual Field Encampment, and as Captain General of it last year, I had occasion to examine somewhat carefully the tactics then in use. The necessity for some work upon the subject which should conform in principle to the army tactics was so evident, that I was about to prepare one the present winter. The necessity is met by the present work, and I hope its adoption may become general.

EDGAR S. DUDLEY,  
(*P. E. C. 1st Lieut, 2d U. S. Art., Prof. Mil. Science and Tactics.*)

**From Officers of Volunteers.**

The undersigned unhesitatingly pronounce it the best code, containing more practical hints than any we have ever seen. We heartily commend it to all Knights Templars, and especially recommend it for adoption as the standard drill of commanderies, to the exclusion of all others.

WM. E. WOODRUFF, K.T.  
*Late Brig. Gen. U. S. Vols. P. C. Dep. Gr. M.: □*

CLINTON McCLARTY, K.T. 32°.  
*Late Colonel, C.S.A.*

GEO. W. NORTHUP, E.C.,  
*Late Colonel U. S. Vols.*

ED. G. HALL, 33°  
*Gr. Gen'a; Gr. Com. in Chief; late Lieut. Colonel, C.S.A.*

JOHN H. LEATHERS, E.C., 32°.  
*Maj. K.S.G., P. Gr. M. G.: □ P. G. H.P.*

It is the most satisfactory work of the kind I have ever seen. There is an evident appreciation of the importance of attention to those minor details so essential to the proper execution of any movement, and the observance of which adds so much to the appearance of a commandery. \* \* \* \*

WM. C. SMITH,  
*E.C. Nashville Commandery, No. 1. [late Captain, etc.]*

\* \* \* I have thoroughly examined and compared your Knight Templar Tactics with others, and have no hesitancy in pronouncing it *the best*. \* \* It goes into detail in explaining the School of the Soldier (or Knight) and the most elaborate fancy movements.

C. S. AMMEL, 32°.  
*Capt. Gen., Capt. Ohio N. G.*

\* \* \* It is the best by far that has ever come under my observation.  
 \* \* \* It is based upon a thorough acquaintance with the science of military tactics and their adaptation to the Templar organization.

H. R. FRENCH,  
*Chairman Com. on Tactics and Drill.*

\* \* \* A very superior work; much better than any other yet published on this subject.

Private letter from Sir C. W. BROWN, 32°.  
*Supt. Educational Dep't D. Appleton & Co., N. Y.*

It is the most complete and explicit of any that has yet come to my notice, and is fully up to the requirements.

J. SCOTT JENKINS,  
*Gr. Capt., Gen., Iowa. [Now P. G.: C.]*

Have studied nearly all the Templar Tactics, and have not found any that pleased me so well. It contains good military drill with the Templar drill, enabling any who has had army experience to use it at once. With the changes you are now making I think it must become to our order what Up-ton's is to the army.

HENRY TURNER,  
*P. E. C. [Commander St. Bernard † 35 at Cleveland Prize Drill.  
 Now Dep. Gr. Com. Illinois.]*

I congratulate you [the Gr. Commandery] that the tactics \* \* \* has been pronounced by eminent soldiers, military educators, and writers, to be correct and the best, hence we may safely rely upon it. \* \* \* I am therefore glad that there is hope of uniformity in one department of the order and that the basis of that uniformity is technically correct,—so pronounced by the highest and best authority. \* \* \* Address of

R. E. WM. RYAN, 33° Gr. Com.,  
*[Late First Lieut. N. Y. State Militia.]*

I have examined it from the beginning to the end of the volume, and I unhesitatingly pronounce it to be the best code of tactics and drill for use of Knights Templars that I have ever seen.

DANIEL H. WHEELER,  
*Feb. 1879.*  
*Grand Commander, Nebraska.*

I have examined the manuscript of your "Tactics for Knights Templars," and am much pleased with the full, clear and easily understood manner in which you explain the different movements.

JOHN R. PARSON,  
*June, 1878.*  
*[Grand Commander of Missouri.]*

It is more full in detail and by far superior to any other I will stake my reputation that this will be the verdict of any army officer or military expert.

W. LA RUE THOMAS,  
*Gr. J. W. Gr. Encamp. [P. G. M. — P. G. H. P.; P. G. Th. Ill.]*

## Nomenclature of Military Terms.

---

**ABOUT.** A wheel (or face) of  $180^{\circ}$ . *Full about*; a wheel of  $360^{\circ}$ .

**BATTALION.** Two or more commanderies, as prescribed.

**CADENCE.** The rate of regular planting of the feet in marching and succession of motions in the manual.

**COLUMN.** A number of subdivisions formed in lines one behind the other.

**COLUMN OF FILES.** A single or double rank faced to the right or left (into column).

**COMMANDERY DISTANCE.** A distance equal to the front of the commandery when in line

**COVER.** Files or guides cover when exactly behind or in rear of each other, marching or at a halt.

**DEPLOY.** To extend; a column "extended" into line.

**DISTANCE.** Space between Knights or subdivisions, measured in depth or perpendicular to their front.

**DIVISION.** One-half (one-third or one-fourth) more or less of the commandery. (In the army drill called *Platoon*).

**DOUBLE-SECTION.** Twelve Knights in line, single or double rank.

**DRILL CORPS.** A portion of the commandery, with a head and members, organized for drilling.

**ECHELON.** Subdivisions in lines at equal distances, like stair steps, one more advanced than the other.

**FACING DISTANCE** Is such that in facing to the right or left, into line, the elbows will touch.

**FILE.** A Knight in rank. Two or more Knights, one behind the other, in ranks.

**FILE-LEADER.** The Knight in front of the file whom the others of the file *cover*.

**FLANK.** Either extremity of a line or side of a column.

**INTERVAL.** Space between Knights or subdivisions in line, measured parallel to their front.

**LINE.** Knights formed abreast; that is, elbow to elbow.

**MARCHING FLANK.** The extremity of the line farthest from the pivot, in the wheelings.

**MOTION.** A distinct movement in the manual of the sword, without pause, and designated as *first motion*, *second motion*, etc.

**PIVOT.** The Knight on the flank upon whom the wheeling is made.

**POST.** Position or place prescribed.

**RANK.** A number of Knights in line.

**RIGHT IN FRONT** Is when the original right of the line is the head of the column. The reverse is *left in front*.

**ROSTER.** List of officers and Knights for duty.

**SCHEDULE.** A programme containing the movements, etc., to be executed.

**SECTION.** Six Knights in line, single or double rank.

**SQUAD.** A small detachment of Knights. It may be (in mounted drill is) used as preparatory, in lieu of "Sir Knights."

**SQUADRON.** Two commanderies mounted; in this work two commanderies of a battalion, as prescribed.

**SUBDIVISION.** Threes, sections, etc. A commandery subdivided.

**WHEEL.** A circular movement by which a line of two or more Knights is placed at right angles to its former position.

**WHEELING DISTANCE** Is such that in wheeling into line the subdivisions will exactly join those on the right and left; or the distance between subdivisions equal to the front of the subdivision.

**WING.** One-half of a line. One of the Grand Divisions into which a line may be divided.

# School of the Knight.

## INTRODUCTION.

The instruction of Knights in the drill can only be perfected by joining theory to practice.

A competent officer should be detailed to drill Red Cross Knights in the School of the Knight, and report as to the proficiency attained, before they are permitted to receive the Order of the Temple. Stated times for drill, faithfully improved, are essential to success. A well disciplined commandery will rarely be troubled about "a constitutional number" at its conclaves, and a commandery that is not well drilled cannot perform the opening ceremonies with credit, as deficiency in drill detracts from the beauty and impressiveness of all our ceremonies. Let those who are skeptical witness the difference before criticising.

In this work commands are given for the execution of movements toward both right and left flanks, but the explanation of the movement towards one flank only will be made. To obtain the explanation towards the other flank substitute *left* for *right*, or the reverse.

The last syllable of a command determines its prompt execution.

The Eminent Commander has the right and ought to command in person, but custom has given that duty to the Captain General who acts under general or special directions of his chief.

When commands are prescribed herein, without mention as to who should give them, it will be understood that they are given by the officer in charge.

The movements and commands in the School of the Knight apply with equal force in other parts of this work wherever instruction to the contrary is not given, substituting *commandery* or *division*, etc., for *Sir Knights* or *Squad*.

#### COMMANDS.

Commands should be given in a clear, animated tone, every syllable distinct, and loud enough to be heard without difficulty by every Knight under instruction. If the lines are subdivided, the commands may be briskly repeated by the officers in charge of subdivisions, if necessary, in a lower tone, but loud enough to be heard by their particular section or division. The failure of a single Knight to understand the command may throw the entire line into confusion.

*Commands are of two kinds :*

1. *Preparatory*: such as *forward*, *carry*, etc., [printed in *italics*] indicate the movement to be executed.
2. Of *execution*, such as **MARCH**, **SWORDS**, etc., [printed in **SMALL CAPITALS**] pronounced in a firm, brief tone, indicate the exact instant for commencing, and causes the execution of a movement.

A preparatory command should always precede and be understood before adding that of execution. The cadence of commands is determined by the step.

#### POSITION.

*Heels* on the same line, as near each other as the formation of the Knight will permit. If one heel be in rear of the other, one shoulder will be thrown back and the position is constrained. Men knocked-kneed, or with large calves, cannot, without constraint, make their heels touch while standing.

The *feet* turned out equally, forming with each other an angle of about sixty degrees. If one is turned out more than the other the shoulders will be deranged; if both are turned out too much, the upper part of the body cannot be inclined forward without making the position unsteady.

The *knees* straight without stiffness. If stiffened constraint and fatigue will be unavoidable.

The *body* erect upon the hips, inclining a little forward. This gives equilibrium to the position. The reverse is common—that is, throwing the shoulders back and projecting the belly, which causes inconvenience in marching, and fatigue.

The *shoulders* square and falling equally. Many have a bad habit of dropping one shoulder. Correct it at once.

The *arms* hanging naturally;

The *elbows* near the body;

The *palms* of the *hands* turned slightly to the front, hands open, fingers together and nearly straight, the little fingers behind the seams of the pantaloons. These prevent Knights from occupying unnecessary space in ranks and tend to keep the shoulders in.

The *head* erect and square to the front;

The *chin* slightly drawn in, without constraint. Stiffness in these positions will be communicated to other parts of the body, giving pain and fatigue.

The *eyes* straight to the front, striking the ground at about the distance of fifteen yards. The surest way to keep the shoulders in line and head erect. Insist upon it.

When the Knights appreciate the importance and understand the details of the position—the *alpha* of the tactics—pass to the next lesson.

Let the Knights rest often, for a few moments at a time, until they become easy in their *position*; for this purpose command

REST.

All are now at liberty to stand, sit, or lie down, but not to move more than two or three yards away, nor is silence required.

Wishing to relieve the attention merely, command

1. *In place.* 2. REST.

The immobility or silence need not then be preserved, but the left heel ought to be kept in its place.

**1. Sir Knights. 2. ATTENTION.**

At the first command quiet is restored, and at the second, every Knight promptly takes his position, remains motionless and fixes his attention.

**1. Break ranks. 2. MARCH.**

This dismisses the squad.

**1. Eyes. 2. RIGHT (OR LEFT). 3. FRONT.**

At the command *right*, each Knight will turn his head promptly but gently, so as to bring the inner corner of the left eye on a line with the center of the body, the eyes fixed on the eyes of the Knights in, or supposed to be in, the same rank. (This is the position of head and eyes in *right dress* except that the Knight on the extreme right does not turn the head but remains at *attention*). Retain this position until the command *front* is given, when the head and eyes resume the habitual position.

*Eyes left* is exactly the reverse of *eyes right*.

See that every motion is understood and properly executed, before passing to the next; but do not dwell too long upon any one lest a dislike be engendered for the work at the beginning. Be clear and plain in every explanation, and if necessary, cause each Knight by himself to execute the motions, and correct any defect as soon as discovered. While courtesy is extended to all, *the discipline in ranks should be impartially rigid*.

**SALUTES WITH THE HAND.****1. Right (or left) hand. 2. SALUTE.**

*First motion.* Raise the right hand till the tips of the fingers touch the visor opposite the right eye, thumb closed, fingers and hand extended in prolongation of the fore arm, elbow down. *Second motion.* Lower the hand briskly to the right until the points of the fingers are at the height of the shoulder and in front of it, elbow advanced, hand and fingers

" extended in prolongation of the fore arm. *Third motion.*

" Drop the hand to the side.

When in uniform the proper salute should not be omitted, but the etiquette of Knightly Courtesy strictly observed. This should be impressed upon the minds as other lessons are taught, by theory and practice.

A junior officer or Knight addressing a senior salutes first, which is always acknowledged. If the senior officer addresses a junior officer or Knight, the inferior in rank makes the first salute.

If the sword is in the scabbard the salute is with the hand.

1. *Right (or left).* 2. FACE.

At the command *face*, raise the right foot slightly, face to the right, turning on the left heel, the left toe slightly raised; replace the right heel by the side of the left and on the same line.

The facings to the left are executed on the same heel as the facings to the right.

1. *Sir Knights.* 2. ABOUT. 3. FACE.

At the command *about*, turn on the left heel, bring the left toe to the front, carry the right foot to the rear, the hollow opposite to and three inches from the left heel, the feet square to each other. At the command *face*, raise the toes a little, turn on both heels, and face to the rear. When the face is nearly completed, raise the right foot and replace it by the side of the left.

1. *Parade.* 2. REST.

This gives rest, imposing both steadiness and attention.

At the command *rest*, carry the right foot three inches directly to the rear, the left knee slightly bent; clasp the hands in front of the center of the body, the left hand uppermost, the left thumb clasped by the thumb and forefinger of the right hand.

1. *Sir Knights.* 2. ATTENTION.

Resume the position of a Knight in line.

**THE STEPS.**

The length of the direct step in *common* and *quick time* is twenty-eight inches, measured from heel to heel.

The cadence for *common time* is ninety steps per minute; for *quick time*, one hundred and ten steps per minute.

The length of the *double step* is thirty-three inches; the cadence is one hundred and sixty-five steps per minute.

The *side step* is six inches.

The *backward step* and *short step* are each fourteen inches, measured from heel to heel.

*All steps are executed in quick time unless otherwise specified.*

Except in the double step, swinging of the hands or arms should be carefully avoided.

1. *Balance step.* 2. *Left (or right) foot.* 3. *FORWARD.*

4. *REAR.* 5. *HALT.*

The principles of the direct step are taught thus:

Require the body, shoulders, arms, and hands of the Knights to be kept in *position*. (*Vide* page 14).

At the command *forward*, bend the left knee slightly and carry the left foot, without jerk, about fourteen inches to the front, straightening the knee as the foot is brought forward, the toe turned out and slightly depressed, the sole of the foot about three inches from the ground, the body balanced firmly on the right foot and inclined slightly forward.

At the command *rear*, carry the left foot, without jerk, to the rear, the knee slightly bent, the toe on a line with the heel and inclining slightly downward.

At the command *halt*, plant the foot by the side of the other. Now exercise with the other foot.

1. *Balance step.* 2. *Left foot.* 3. *FORWARD.*

4. *GROUND.* 5. *HALT.*

At *forward*, advance the left foot as before.

At the command *ground*, plant it without shock, the foot advancing as the weight of the body is brought forward, the left heel twenty-eight inches from the right; the right foot is then advanced to the position of *forward* without command, and similarly planted at the command *ground*.

At the command *halt* the foot in advance is planted, and the one in rear brought to its side.

Commence at a very slow cadence, afterward increase it gradually to *common time*.

When this is well understood, command

1. *Forward.* 2. *Common time.* 3. MARCH.

At the command *forward* throw the weight of the body upon the right leg, without bending the knees.

At the command *march* move the left foot smartly, but without jerk, twenty-eight inches straight forward, observing carefully the principles explained in the *balance steps*; do not cross the legs or strike one against the other; eyes to the front.

Indicate the cadence by counting *one, two*, etc.

1. Sir Knights. 2. HALT.

At the command *halt*, given when either foot is being brought to the ground, bring the foot in rear to its side and plant it without shock.

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH,

Is the command to march in *quick time* from a halt, always stepping off with the left foot first.

The change to any other cadence is indicated by naming the time before the command *march*, thus: 1. *Common time.* 2. MARCH; or 1. *Double time.* 2. MARCH; or if at a halt the same commands preceded by *forward*, thus: 1. *Forward.* 2. *Common time.* 3. MARCH, stepping off with the left foot as before.

1. *Short Step.* 2. MARCH.

Being in march; at the second command the length of the step is reduced to fourteen inches without changing the cadence; at the command, 1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH, the full step is resumed.

1. *Mark time.* 2. MARCH.

Being in march; at the second command, given when either

foot is coming to the ground, continue the cadence and make a semblance of marching, without gaining ground, by alternately advancing each foot about half its length, the sole parallel with the ground, and bringing it back on a line with the other.

To resume the direct step the command is: 1. *Forward*  
2. MARCH.

1. *Change step.* 2. MARCH.

At the second command, given the instant either foot strikes the ground, the other foot is advanced and planted; bring the hollow of the foot that is in rear against the heel of the foot in front, and step off promptly with the foot that is in front, carefully keeping up the cadence.

1. *Backward.* 2. MARCH.

Step off with the left foot fourteen inches straight to the rear, measured from heel to heel. At the command, 1. *Sir Knights,* 2. HALT; plant the foot that is in rear and bring the other to its side.

1. *To the rear.* 2. MARCH.

Being in march; at the second command, given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance the left foot to the full step distance and plant it; face to the rear, turning to the right on the balls of both feet, and immediately step off with the left foot.

1. *Right (or left) side-step.* 2. MARCH.

At the second command carry the right foot six inches to the right, keeping the knees straight, shoulders square to the front, heels on the same line; plant the right foot and bring the left to its side and so continue, observing the cadence, until halted.

1. *Double step.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command raise the hands, fingers closed, nails toward the body, left forearm horizontal, elbows to the rear.

At the command *march* raise the left leg to the front, bending and elevating the knee as much as possible, that part

of the leg between the knee and instep vertical, the toe depressed ; replace the foot in its former position and execute the same movement with the right leg.

The cadence, one hundred and sixty-five steps per minute, is indicated by the instructor who counts *one, two*, as the feet are successively brought to the ground, commencing in common time and gradually increasing to double time. At the command, 1. *Sir Knights*, 2. HALT; bring back the foot that is raised to the side of the other, and resume the position of a Knight in ranks.

1. *Forward.* 2. *Double time.* 3. MARCH.

At the first command throw the weight of the body on the right leg ; at the second command raise the hands and arms as before explained ; at the command *march* carry forward the left foot, the leg slightly bent, knee somewhat raised and plant the foot, toe first, thirty-three inches from the right, and so with the right foot, allowing a natural swinging motion of the arms.

Breathe as much as possible through the nose.

To halt, the command is: 1. *Sir Knights.* 2. HALT.

To pass to *quick time* the command is: 1. *Quick time.* 2. MARCH. At the command *march*, plant the foot that is coming to the ground, drop the hands to the side, advance the other foot in *quick time* and plant it twenty-eight inches from the one in rear, resuming or taking up the march in *quick time*.

1. *By file.* 2. *Right (or left).* 3. DRESS. 4. FRONT.

Place two Knights abreast, two or more yards in advance, to establish the line ; at the command *dress* the others move up successively in *quick time*, until about six inches behind the alignment ; each then moves on the line, which should never be passed, taking steps of two or three inches, casting the eyes to the right as before explained, keeping the shoulders square to the front and, without opening his arms, touches with his elbow the Knight on his right.

At the command *front* the habitual position is promptly resumed without jerk.

1. *Right* (or *left*). 2. DRESS. 3. FRONT.

At the command *dress*, the entire rank, except the Knight established as a basis, moves forward and dresses up to the line, as before explained. The instructor verifies the alignment, by placing himself about two yards from the right flank, facing to the left, orders forward or backward such files as may be in rear or advance of the line, and commands *front*.

The whole movement should be promptly executed, and no delays be made in alignments.

1. *Right* (or *left*) *backward*. 2. DRESS. 3. FRONT.

March backward and together until six inches in rear of the line then dress up, by short steps, as explained.

1. *Forward*. 2. *Guide* (*right* or *left*). 3. MARCH.

At the third command, step off smartly with the left foot the guide marching straight to the front. To do this he must take points in advance, perpendicular to the line, and, with the greatest care, observe the length and cadence of the steps.

The instructor observes that the Knights touch lightly the elbow toward the side of the guide; that they do not open out either arm; that they yield to pressure coming from the side of the guide and resist pressure coming from the opposite direction; that by shortening or lengthening the steps they gradually recover the alignment and touch of elbow if lost; and that they keep the head and shoulders square to the front; that the guide takes the full step and cadence; that the principles of the step as before explained are carefully observed, in the most minute detail, and that the hands and arms are kept in their proper position, easy and all alike, but without oscillation.

1. *Right* (or *left*). 2. FACE. 3. *Forward*. 4. MARCH.

Being at a halt; face to the right and march as before.

*1. By the right (or left) flank. 2. MARCH.*

Being in march. The command *march* is given as the right foot strikes the ground; advance and plant the left foot at full distance, then turn to the right and step off in the new direction with the right foot. To march by the *left flank*, step off in the new direction with the left foot.

In marching in column of files, the Knights cover each other; *keep closed to facing distance*, and avoid spreading the feet and legs apart. Observe that this movement is similar to *right (or left) face* except that it is executed in march.

It is habitually executed in *quick time*; but if necessary to march in *double time*, the distance is increased to 21 inches.

*1. Column right (or left). 2. MARCH.*

Being in march. At the command *march* the leading file turns half to the right,—that is, at an angle of forty-five degrees,—advances one step, and again turning half right, continues the march at right angles with the former direction; thus by two steps describing the arc of a small circle. The other files keep closed up to proper distance and follow in his trace.

*1. Column half right (or left). 2. MARCH,*

Is similarly executed.

*1. Forward. 2. Column right (or left). 3. MARCH,*

*or 1. Forward, 2. Column half right (or left).*

*3. MARCH,*

Puts a column of files in motion and changes its direction.

*1. Sir Knights. 2. HALT,*

Is the command to halt a column of files; and

*1. Left (or right). 2. FACE,*

To face it to the front.

*1. By the left (or right) flank. 2. MARCH.*

*3. Guide (left or right),*

Is given when marching in column of files to march in line;

or when marching in line, to march in column of files. In the latter case, omit the third command.

1. *Right (or left) Oblique.* 2. MARCH.

Being in line marching. At the second command each Knight makes a half face to the right and marches straight in the new direction. As they no longer touch elbows they glance along the shoulders of the nearest files toward the side of the guide, being that to which they are obliquing, and regulate their steps so that their shoulders are always behind those of the next Knight on that side, and that his head conceals the heads of the others in the rank. The same length of step and same degree of obliquity is preserved, the line of the rank remaining parallel to its original position.

This being a half flank it is better to give the second command as the right foot strikes the ground, and execute the movement in a manner similar to the *right (or left) flank*, but it is not deemed absolutely essential.

To resume the original direction, command, 1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH. The guide is then on the side where it was previous to obliquing.

If at a *halt*, the Knights half face to the right at the first command and step off at the command *march*.

If halted while obliquing, they will halt, pause one cadence of a minute, and face to the front without further command.

The guide is always on the side towards which the oblique is made; on resuming the direct march the guide is on the side where it was previous to the oblique, without any indication to that effect being given.

In *column of files*, oblique by the same commands and means as when in line, the leading file being the guide.

**WHEELINGS.**

Are of two kinds: on fixed, and on movable pivots.

These are important movements, and each Knight should be required successively to act as pivot, and to conduct the

marching flank. The wheelings should also be repeated in double time as soon as the squad is able to execute them properly in quick time.

**The fixed pivot—from a halt.**

*1. In circle, right (or left) wheel. 2, MARCH.*

At the command *march* all, except the pivot, step off with the left foot, at the same time turning the heads a little to the left, the eyes fixed on the eyes of the Knights to the left; the pivot Knight marks time in his place, gradually turning his body to conform to the movements of the marching flank. The one who conducts the marching flank takes steps of twenty-eight inches, and from the first step advances the left shoulder a little, casts his eyes along the rank, and feels lightly the elbow of the next one toward the pivot, but never pushes him. Each of the others lengthen the step in proportion to the distance from the pivot, touches with the elbow towards it and resists pressure from the opposite side, conforms to the movement of the marching flank, and maintains the alignment. After wheeling around the circle several times command, 1. *Sir Knights.* 2. *HALT*, when all stop and no one stirs. Now point out the defects and mistakes, then command, 1. *Left.* 2. *DRESS..* 3. *FRONT.*

*1. Right (or left) wheel. 2. MARCH. 3. Sir Knights.*

*4. HALT. 5. Left (or right). 6. DRESS. 7. FRONT.*

Being at a halt; the squad wheels as before on a fixed pivot. At the fourth command, given when the squad is nearly at right angles with its original position, the line halts. After pointing out the defects, the instructor immediately dresses the line up to the perpendicular by the fifth and sixth commands; when done he commands *front*.

To wheel the squad and move it forward, command:

*1. Right (or left) wheel. 2. MARCH. 3. Forward.*

*4. MARCH. 5. Guide (right or left).*

The third command is given in time to add *march* the

instant the wheel (one-fourth of a circle) is completed, when they march in the new direction, taking the guide as indicated—

1. *Right (or left) about.*
  2. MARCH.
  3. *Sir Knights.*
  4. HALT.
  5. *Left (or right.)*
  6. DRESS.
  7. FRONT.
- Or, 3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH. 5. *Guide (right or left).*

This wheels the squad in a half circle to the right; when completed the squad is halted or moved forward, as explained before.

#### **Wheeling on a movable pivot.**

The wheelings are made by the same commands and means as on a fixed pivot, except that the pivot takes steps of nine inches and thus gains ground forward, describing a small curve so as to clear the wheeling point. The curve is increased in size proportionately with the size of the squad or subdivision, and is equal to about one-half of the front of the squad or subdivision.

The command *forward* is given in time to add *march* the instant the wheel (one-fourth of a circle) is completed, at which all retake the twenty-eight inch step, turn their heads square to the front and march straight forward. The squad may be halted by the same commands and means as before explained.

In wheeling on a movable pivot in double time, the pivot takes steps of eleven inches and the curve is augmented.

During the wheel the guide is upon the marching flank, and upon the completion of the wheel is upon the same flank that it was before the wheel was commenced, without any indication to that effect.

1. *Left (or right) turn.*
2. MARCH.

Being in march.

The first command is given when the rank is three yards from the turning point.

At the command *march*, pronounced the instant the rank is to turn, the Knight on the left, who becomes the guide, faces *to the left in marching*, (that is, executes *by the left flank* in

his own person) and moves forward in the new direction without changing the cadence or length of the step. The others advance the shoulders opposite the guide, take the *double time* and advance in the new direction till they come successively on the alignment, then retake the step and cadence from the guide and dress toward him.

In turning in *double time* those on the side opposite the guide increase the gait in order to come into line.

While this movement should be well learned, the wheel will in nearly all cases effect the desired change of direction.

#### **DOUBLE RANK.**

The movements should now be repeated, the Knights being in double rank.

The distance between the ranks is *facing distance*; but on rough ground or when marching is double time it is increased to twenty-one inches. Upon halting the rear rank closes up to facing distance.

In marching in column of files each rear rank Knight dresses upon his front rank frater, who is the guide of the file.

In changing direction in column of files each file wheels on a movable pivot.

In obliquing each rear rank Knight follows the one next on the right or left of his front rank frater.

Small commanderies, or less than forty-eight in line, ought not ordinarily to march in double ranks.

If there is but one Knight in the rear rank of the three on the left of the line he covers number *one* of the front rank; if there are but two in the rear rank of the left three, they cover numbers *one* and *three* of the front rank.

## Manual of the Sword.

---

*Remarks.* The rate of swiftness, or time occupied in the execution of each motion, is one-ninetieth of a minute. But in march the cadence of motion is changed to conform to the time indicated by the left foot, thus: The command of execution is given as the left foot is coming to the ground, and the first motion is commenced the instant the left foot is planted; the second motion is commenced the instant the left foot strikes the ground the second time, and so on.

If the sword is grasped too near the guards, or cross, the sword manual is rendered difficult and awkward. Ease and grace of movement in handling the sword can only be acquired by practice, therefore when the principles and motions are understood the Knights should frequently practice the manual by themselves. This rule applies as well to the steps, cadence and facings as to the manual.

Avoid the common error of bowing when executing the manual; habitually maintain the erect position.

In *double steps*, being at a carry, at the command *double time*, carry the sword straight to the front, the blade vertical, the hand firmly grasping the hilt, the right fore arm horizontal, elbow close to the body; if the sword is *at a right shoulder* or *port* it may so remain, but resume the *carry* after halting, without command, observing the cadence of the step—that is, halt, pause one-ninetieth of a minute, if marching in common time (or 1-110 if in quick time); then carry swords.

In marching, habitually steady the scabbard with the left hand, fingers next to the leg, thumb to the front.

*The sword is returned before the command to break ranks.*

Correctness in detail is of the first importance, therefore each motion should be explained and executed separately, without especial regard to the cadence, until the details are understood. To this end (for example) command: 1. *By the numbers*, 2. *Swords*. 3. *PORT*. 4. *TWO*. At the third command the *first motion* of the movement is executed. The instructor corrects the errors, commands *Two*, and the second motion is executed. The rapidity is gradually increased until the cadence is acquired. When the command *by the numbers* is given it is not repeated, but every succeeding command in the manual is executed with the numbers until the command *without the numbers* is given or some foot movement intervenes.

The manual should be learned first *by the numbers*, then alternate with and without the numbers, in order to attain the proper cadence and to become proficient in the mechanism.

### 1. Draw. 2. SWORDS.

*First motion.* At the command *swords* seize the scabbard near the top, press it against the thigh with the left and grasp the handle with the right hand, at the same time bring the hilt a little forward, and draw the sword until the right forearm is horizontal:



*Second motion.* Draw the sword quickly, raising the arm to its full extent, at an angle of forty-five degrees.

*Third motion.* Turn the sword and bring it to a *present*. q. v. p. 30.

*Fourth motion.* Bring the sword-blade vertically back against the right shoulder, edge of the sword to the front, thumb and forefingers embracing the grip, the left side of the grip and the thumb against the thigh, arm nearly extended, the other fingers extended and joined in rear of the grip, *elbow near the body*, drop the left hand to the side.

*This is the position of carry swords.*

*If in two ranks,* the rear rank takes two backward steps at the command *draw*, and after executing the fourth motion, pauses one-ninety-ninth of a minute and steps back to its position.

1. *Present.* 2. *SWORDS.*

Being at a carry, at the second command bring the sword vertically to the front, raising the hand so that the top of the cross hilt is on a line with the lower part of the chin, and about six inches from it, back of the hand to the front, the right forearm resting along the side and breast, elbow close to the body, helmet of the sword nearly

*Carry.* against the breast, the thumb on the back of the grip to the right, the blade inclined to the front at an angle of about sixty-five degrees.

*For officers.* At the command *present* carry the sword to the position just indicated. At the command *swords* drop the point of the sword near the ground and on a line with the

right foot, extending the arm so that the right hand may be brought near to the right thigh, back of the hand to the rear, arm extended, flat of the blade to the front. (This does not apply to past officers, the recorder, treasurer, or standard guard). It is sometimes referred to as a *salute* or *Officers present*, to distinguish it from the present of those who are not officers.

*For the standard.* (The standard bearer habitually carries the heel of the staff supported at the right hip; the right hand grasping the



*Present.*



*Present.*

staff at the height of the shoulder). At the command *present* slip the right hand along the staff to the height of the eye; at the command *swords* lower the staff by straightening the arm to its full extent, the heel of the staff remaining at the hip. At *carry swords* bring back the standard to its habitual place.



Salute.

*Salutes in march by officers and standards* are commenced when six yards from the person to be saluted, and cease when six yards past. In saluting, officers turn their heads and look toward the person being saluted simultaneous with the second motion.

*Knights in the ranks* do not salute, but retain the *carry* when in march.

Desiring to cause all to present swords as officers, the command is :

1. Officers present.
2. SWORDS, which is executed as before explained.

#### 1. Carry. 2. SWORDS.

From *present*. At the second command bring the sword back to the position of *carry swords*.

Avoid carrying the hand to the front and point of the sword to the rear of the shoulder.

#### 1. Support. 2. SWORDS.

*First motion.* Bring the sword vertically to the front of the center of the body, the cross nearly as high as the breast and six inches from it.

*Second motion.* Carry the sword to the left side, guards opposite the hollow of the elbow, bring the left hand up and grasp the right elbow, thumb over and resting on the right forearm, the cross (guard) resting on the left arm near the elbow, left forearm over the right, blade perpendicular.



Support.

## 1. Carry. 2. SWORDS.

*First motion.* Seize the blade, without deranging its position, with the thumb and forefinger of the left hand, left elbow remaining close to the body, as a pivot.

*Second motion.* Carry the sword vertically with both hands to its place at a *carry*, fingers extended, pressing the sword gently against the hollow of the shoulder, hand at the height of the shoulder, its back to the front, elbow near the body.

*Third motion.* Drop the left hand to the side.

## 1. Swords. 2. PORT.

*First motion.* Seize the blade at the shoulder with the left hand. *Second motion.* Bring the sword diagonally across the front of the body,

*Swords Port.* flat of the blade to the front and resting in the left hand at the height of the breast, thumb extended in rear along the blade toward the point, the right hand grasping the hilt and nearly in front of the right hip, edge of the sword down.

## 1. Carry. 2. SWORDS.

*First motion* Bring back the sword with both hands, the left hand as high as the right arm pit, pressing the blade to its place, fingers extended at the height of the shoulder, elbow near the body, back of hand to the front.

*Second motion.* Drop the left hand to the side.

## 1. Order. 2. SWORDS.

Drop the sword-point to the ground about an inch from the point of the right toe and on a line with the toes; sword vertical, the right hand resting on the helmet, back of the hand up, first three fingers in front touching the grip, the thumb and little finger partially embracing it.



Order.

1. *Carry.* 2. SWORDS.

Bring the sword back to its position in *carry*.

*Charge.*1. *With sword.* 2. CHARGE.

Execute the first motion of *about face* (*vide page 17*), except that the right heel is in rear of the left; bend the left knee a little, inclining the body forward, the weight principally on the left foot, at the same time drop the point of the sword forward to the height of the belt, the right hand firmly grasping the handle, thumb against the hip. (This can also be executed in march, the shoulders being kept square to the front).

1. *Carry.* 2. SWORDS.

Face to the front and resume the position of *carry swords*.

1. *Right shoulder.* 2. SWORDS.

Bring the flat of the sword upon the right shoulder, guard as high as the arm pit, thumb nearly touching the side of the right breast, point of the sword up to the left and rear so as to as to clear the chapeau.

1. *Carry.* 2. SWORDS.

Resume that position.

1. *Support.* 2. SWORDS.

The sword being at a *right shoulder*. *First motion.* Lower the sword and bring it to the center of the body, to the position of the first motion of *support swords* from a *carry*.

*Second motion.* Carry it to the left side as before explained. (*Vide page 31*).

1. *Carry.* 2. SWORDS.

(*Vide explanation p. 32, after support swords.*) Right Shoulder.



## 1. Rear rest. 2. SWORDS.

*First motion.* Execute the *right shoulder swords*, as explained.



*Second motion.* Drop the sword-point to the left and rear and let the blade rest across the shoulders in rear of the neck; at the same time raise the left hand, palm to the front, and grasp the blade near the shoulder with the fingers and thumb, holding the grip in like manner with the fingers and thumb of the right hand, elbows close to the body. Care should be taken not to derange the position of the head and shoulders in executing this movement.

## 1. Carry. 2. SWORDS.

*Rear rest Swords.* *First motion.* Drop the left hand to the side and come to the position of *right shoulder swords*.

*Second motion.* Resume the carry.

## 1. Reverse. 2. SWORDS.

*First motion.* Raise and carry the sword vertically to the front, the elbow advanced and forming an obtuse angle. *Second motion.* Bring the point down to the front and rear, turning the sword by a wrist movement completely around, so that the edge will be down and the blade inclined to the rear at an angle of forty-five degrees, at the same time carry the left forearm horizontally behind the back, the left hand palm out, clasping the blade; support the sword with the elbow against the right side assisted by the left hand in rear; holding the grip with the thumb and forefinger of the right hand, the other fingers successively more curved, the *sabers (cross) nearly against the shoulder.*



*1st motion, Reverse.*

1. *Carry.* 2. *SWORDS.*

*First motion.* Retake the first position of *reverse* by inverse means. *Second motion.* Resume the *carry*.

1. *Sword arm.* 2. *REST.*

Bring the right hand in front of the body, arm extended, blade resting along the right forearm and diagonally across the body, embrace the back of the right hand with the palm of the left. Resume the *carry* at that command.

1. *Parade.* 2. *REST.*

*First motion.* Carry the right *Reverse*. foot three inches to the rear, the left knee slightly bent, resting the weight of the body principally on the right foot. *Second motion.* Drop the sword-point to the ground to the right and on a line with the great toe of the left foot parallel to the front; the sword vertical in front of the center of the body; fingers



and thumb holding the helmet *Sword-arm Rest.* which rests in the palm of right hand, back of the hand up embraced and covered by the left hand.

*Being at Parade Rest:* 1. *Rest on.* 2. *SWORDS.*

Incline the head to the front. At the command *Sir Knights*, raise the head. See page 37.

1. *Sir Knights* (or *Commandery*). 2. *ATTENTION.* 3. *Carry.* 4. *SWORDS.**Parade Rest.*

At the second command bring the right foot to the side of the left, body erect in *position*, drop the left hand to the side, the right hand hanging naturally at the side and holding the grip, *sword-blade inclining across and in front of right*

leg, the sword-point undisturbed. At the fourth command bring the sword to a carry.

1. *Right open files.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command all except the Knight on the right, who stands at a carry, turn the heads and drop the sword-point to the right, hand at the right breast, sword horizontal. At the command *march* they take the left side-step, all stepping together, until each in succession has gained such interval that the sword-point will touch the left arm of the Knight on the right, observing that the alignment is preserved; as each gains this interval he turns the head to the front and resumes the carry.



*Right open files.*

1. *Left open files.* 2. MARCH

Is similarly executed, except that the right hand is at the left breast, guards in front of the left arm, the sword horizontal to the left in prolongation of the right forearm.

1. *Right and left open files.*  
2. MARCH,

Causes the lines to take intervals right and left simultaneously.

1. *Cross.* . 2. SWORDS.

The lines being fully two yards apart and facing each other.

*First motion.* Bring the sword to a *present*. *Second motion.* Plant the right foot sixteen inches straight to the front, the right knee slightly bent, at the same time raise the right hand, arm extended, wrist as high as



*Left open files.*



Cross Swords.

the head, sword in prolongation of the arm, thumb extended along the left of the grip, back of sword up; cross the swords six inches from their points with the Knights opposite, at the same instant plant the foot with very light shock.

1. Carry. 2. SWORDS.

*First motion.* Bring back the foot to its former place and the sword to a present. *Second motion.* Resume the carry.

1. Sir Knights. 2. KNEEL.

Being at *parade rest*.

*First motion.* Carry the right foot about twenty-eight inches to the rear.

*Second motion.* Kneel on the right knee so that its front and the rear of the left heel will be on a line parallel with the front; head erect.

1. Rest on. 2. SWORDS.

Incline the head to the front.



Kneeling, rest on.

1. *Sir Knights.* 2. RISE.

At the first command, raise the head. At the second command, rise. *Second motion.* Bring the right foot to the side of the left, resuming the position of *parade rest.*

1. *Sir Knights.* 2. ATTENTION. 3. CARRY.  
4. SWORDS.

Resume that position.

1. *Sir Knights.* 2. RETURN. 3. SWORDS.

At the command *return,* seize the scabbard, with the left hand, near the top, inclining it a little forward, and bring the sword about six inches in front of the left shoulder, blade vertical, lower part of the hand at the height of the chin. *Second motion.* Lower the blade across and along the left arm, the point to the rear; turn the head slightly to the left, fixing the eyes on the opening of the scabbard, and insert the blade assisted by the thumb and forefinger of the left hand, until the right forearm is horizontal. At the command *swords return* the blade, turn the head to the front and drop the hands to the sides. (The second motion should occupy the time of three motions.) If in two ranks, at the command *return* the rear rank takes two backward steps and resumes its place, after the execution of the command *swords.*

*Return.**Secure.*

## 1. SECURE. 2. SWORDS.

The sword being in the scabbard.

*First motion.* At the command *swords* seize the scabbard with the left hand, palm front, thumb to the left, arm extended. *Second motion.* Raise the sword, in the scabbard, bring the left hand in front and nearly as high as the belt and a little to the left of the buckle,

the sword, in the scabbard, resting along the left forearm, back of the hand down, the cross at the hollow of the elbow.



**1: Drop. 2. SWORDS.**

Lower the sword (in the scabbard) to its place.

**1. Inspection. 2. SWORDS.**

*First motion.* Come to a present. *Second motion.*

Turn the wrist outward to show the other side of the blade, the edge to the right.

*Third motion.* Resume the carry.

**For the Chapeau or Cap.**

**1. Sir Knights (or Commandery) 2. UN-COVER.\***

*Uncover.* *First motion.* Take the chapeau (or cap) by the front piece with the left hand. *Second motion.* Raise the chapeau and place it on the right shoulder, slightly inclined to the front, holding it in that position with the left hand.

**1. Sir Knights (or Commandery). 2. RE-COVER.\***

*First motion.* Replace the chapeau (or cap) on the head.

*Second motion.* Drop the hand to the side.

Never execute the *uncover* unless the swords are sheathed, at an *order*, or (with the right hand) when at a *secure*. *To uncover and present at the same time is unmilitary and awkward.*

The *uncover* may be executed by signals thus:

*First motion.* Extend the left hand in front of the breast, palm up, fingers extended. *Second motion.* Execute the first motion of *uncover*. *Third motion.* Execute the second motion of *uncover*.

*To recover* by signals. *First motion.* Slowly raise the chapeau from the shoulder and place it on the head. *Second motion.* Drop the hand to the side.

---

\*Dwell slightly on the first syllable.

## THE SILENT MANUAL.

When the foregoing has been well learned it may be executed, being at "open order" (*vide* School of the Commandery) at the commands:

1. *Continue the manual.*
2. *Present.*
3. *SWORDS.*

At the command *swords* the manual is executed in the following order, without pause, except that the regular cadence of motions is preserved throughout.

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1. Present, swords.          | 2. Carry, swords.   |
| 3. Officers present, swords. | 4. " "  |
| 5. Support, swords.          | 6. " "  |
| 7. Swords, port.             | 8. " "  |
| 9. Order, swords.            | 10. " "   |
| 11. With swords, charge.     | 12. " "   |
| 13. Right shoulder, swords.  | 14. " "   |
| 15. Right shoulder, swords.  |   |
| 16. Support, swords.         | 17. " "   |
| 18. Rear rest, swords.       | 19. " "   |
| 20. Reverse, swords.         | 21. " " "   |
| 22. Sword arm, rest.         | 23. " "   |
| 24. Front rank, about, face. | The rear rank files (by one side step about eighteen inches, to the right, if it be single rank open order) cover the files in the front rank simultaneously with their <i>about face</i> . |
| 25. Cross, swords.           | 26. Carry, swords.  |
| 27. Front rank, about, face. | Rear rank re-covers intervals, by a side step to the left, at same instant with the <i>about face</i> of the front rank.  |
| 28. Parade rest.             |   |
| 29. Sir Knights, kneel.      | 30. Rest on, swords.  |
| 31. Sir Knights, rise.       | 32. Sir Knights, attention.   |
| 33. Carry, swords.           | 34. Return, swords.   |
| 35. Secure, swords.          | 6. Drop, swords.  |
| 37. Sir Knights, un-cover.   | 38. Sir Knights, re-cover.  |
| 39. Right hand, salute.      | 40. Left hand, salute.  |

41. Draw, swords.

42. Parade, rest. The *open files* is omitted.

The whole of the *silent manual* occupies eighty-ninetieths of a minute, including the command.

#### THE SALUTES.

When addressed, face the Knight challenging; the inferior in rank then, if the swords are drawn, salutes with it; this is acknowledged, and both resume the *carry* simultaneously, or the junior may stand at a *present* while making a short report.

If swords are not drawn the inferior in rank gives the *first motion* of the hand salute, which is acknowledged in full; the inferior in rank executes the *second* and *third motions*, so that the hands of both Knights may be dropped to the side at the same instant. The sword is never drawn to acknowledge a salute already given.

If the E.C. is sitting he salutes with the hand, although his sword may be drawn. He does not rise to acknowledge salutes of an inferior in rank, but inferiors when in the asylum or in uniform, if not engaged in some particular duties, arise when addressed by official superiors.

The Prelate when in robes does not salute but bows ceremoniously. He has no special uniform (q. v.) authorized by the Grand Encampment, and is governed by the same rules as other Knights, except when in official robes. It would not be in keeping for one in priestly garb to give the military salute.

In passing a Knight, salute with the hand farthest from him.

An officer or Knight mounted, dismounts before addressing official superiors not mounted.

## School of the Officer.

---

Theory and practice should go hand in hand. Officers should be competent to take command in the absence of official superiors and every one be able to command his subdivision with credit. A careless or ill-informed officer may cause the best drilled commandery to appear at great disadvantage or throw it into confusion. The beauty of the ritual itself is greatly enhanced by precision of movement, which to be fully appreciated must be seen. An indolent manner of giving commands is demoralizing in its tendency; hence officers should be energetic and prompt and require every Knight to be equally prompt and attentive.

The idea that discipline cannot be maintained among Templars is sheer nonsense, yet the instructor need not forget that his men are gentlemen who, out of ranks, are his peers.

An *officer's squad* should be organized, admitting as supernumeraries Knights who will take an interest in it and fill the places of absentees. Its members should be six or twelve, besides its chief. Every member should be faithful and prompt in attendance, cheerfully obedient to orders, attentive and silent in ranks.

The chief of the squad, whether he be the Eminent Commander, or some Knight selected for his peculiar fitness, must have absolute control. He indicates the lessons to be learned, commencing with the vocabulary and proceeds regularly through, without omitting anything. One of the most important requisites is promptness; therefore, having announced the lesson and the hour for meeting, the chief should him-

self be ready and, before the clock ceases to strike command: **FALL IN.** He should always be prompt in time, prompt in giving and obeying orders, and prompt in the "etiquette of Knightly courtesy." Promptly meet, promptly commence and promptly dismiss the squad.

After the oral lesson the squad should be drilled in it well and thoroughly, or better, as each motion is explained by a Knight, require its execution, until the principles are well understood.

Take frequent rests of two or three minutes only, when discussion may be indulged in; but at the command *attention* conversation stops instanter. Discussion while under instruction should not be permitted; then the chief's *ipse dixit* is law final.

Perfect discipline should be observed from the first. It is quite as proper to talk during the conference of the Templar Order as to talk during drill.

The officers should alternate in exercising the squad in the drill, under supervision of the chief, whose criticisms should be for the benefit of all, not prosy but clear cut pointed explanations without circumlocution or unnecessary comment.

The instructor ought never to require a movement to be made until he has fully explained it, and sees that *no movement, however trivial it may appear, is performed carelessly or with undue haste.* He should practice the officers and guides especially in estimating distances and in becoming familiar with the bugle and sword signals. The *assembly, forward, halt and threes right* are particularly important when Templars assemble in large numbers.

By giving each frequent opportunities to command, errors may be corrected, uniformity secured, ambition to excel stimulated, closer attention and study encouraged and the general interest increased.

All commands to Templars, under arms, are given with the sword drawn. If for any purpose Templars and troops

are together, officers execute the first motion of *officers present* at the command *present*, and the second motion at the command *arms* (or *sabre*) and the Knights *present swords*. In like manner, at the command *Fours right* (or *left*) *march*; Templars execute *Threes right* (or *left*) *march*. At the command *Platoons right wheel*, etc., Templars execute *Divisions* (or *double sections*) *right wheel*, and so on. At the command *parade rest* the Wardens and officers of higher rank take that position; at the command *attention* they *carry swords*.

When marching in double time officers who are in command, so that their position is in front or a yard or more from the flank, bring their swords to the position of *port*, steadyng the scabbard with the left hand.

*About face for officers.* At the command *about* carry the toe of the right foot about eight inches to the rear and three inches to the left of the left heel, without deranging the direction of the left foot. At the command *face* turn to the right upon the left heel and right toe, face to the rear and replace the right heel by the side of the left.

Wardens execute all the commands in the manual. At *present swords* executing the officers present, as explained.

#### **THE EMINENT COMMANDER AND STAFF.**

The ritual gives to the Senior and Junior Wardens the *right* and *left* of the lines, hence there is not a little difficulty in providing for the Generalissimo and Captain General, in case the Eminent Commander assumes the active charge of his own Commandery. The ritual declares the Generalissimo to be the Eminent Commander's *aid*, and the Captain General executes the orders of the E.C.. If the Eminent Commander is in immediate command his staff should march at the left, be absorbed in the ranks on the right, or take the Senior and Junior Warden's places; those officers might then take the right of sections, or double sections as chiefs. If

the Eminent Commander marches with his staff they must of necessity conform to the general movements of the Commandery. They should not appear as the chief and his staff in a display drill, but only in processions would it be appropriate or convenient. In battalion movements they must be absorbed as other members, or form as the leading or right three of the Commandery.

The Eminent Commander gives orders to his staff in a tone of voice loud enough to be heard by them only, when they march as such, that is, somewhat isolated. He marches between the Generalissimo on his right and the Prelate on his left, as a rule, and may command:

*Form triangle.* MARCH. He moves forward, and the Generalissimo and Prelate, by short oblique steps, shoulders square to the front, gain the distance of one yard to his right and left, and two yards retired, keeping dressed on each other, and at the same relative distance from the Eminent Commander.

*Into line.* MARCH. The staff lengthen their steps and form line with the Eminent Commander, each being one yard from his side.

*Close intervals.* MARCH. By oblique steps, shoulders square to the front, the staff close up elbow to elbow with Eminent Commander.

*At (so many) yards, take intervals.* MARCH. By side or oblique steps, shoulders square to the front, the staff gain the designated interval. The intervals are closed as before.

*Form column.* MARCH. The Generalissimo shortens the steps and "falls in" one yard in the rear of the Eminent Commander, and the Prelate, by the same means, drops one yard to the rear of the Generalissimo.

*Into line.* MARCH. Both commands are repeated by the Generalissimo, that the Prelate (who is in his rear) may hear them, and both, by lengthened steps, place themselves at the sides of the Eminent Commander again.

The Eminent Commander wheels his staff, causes them to oblique or half, etc., by the usual commands, all given in a low tone.

Perhaps it would be better for the Eminent Commander always to take command in person.

#### THE BAND.

*The Drum-major* faces the band and gives the signal to march. His position is two yards in front of the center of the band.

The counter-march is executed by the file leaders to the right of the Drum-major wheeling individually about to the right, those to his left to the left; the other men of each file follow their file leaders. The Drum-major passes through the center.

In executing *rear open order* each rank of the band steps back three yards from the rank in its front, the front being on a line with the front rank of the Commandery and six yards from its right.

Bands should be required to keep their proper distances and take the full twenty-eight inch step, also that they should be careful to keep the time with each other, when practicable; and, if near together, two should not play at the same time.

At the command *halt* the music ceases.

Do not take it for granted that the band is familiar with the cadence in *common* and *quick time*, but test its accuracy by the watch and notice the length of its step.

## School of the Commandery.

---

*Remarks.* Thorough instruction in the elementary School of the Knight is absolutely essential to success in the movements of the Commandery, which depend upon the precision of the drill. This can only be attained by *practice, the strictest attention of every Knight*, and the intelligent assistance of the chiefs of subdivisions. One awkward Templar or the swinging of a single hand, will wholly destroy the beauty of the line.

In this work "file closers" have been dispensed with, and officers are assigned places that will utilize every available uniform in extending the lines, because many Commanderies are small and comparatively few of their members are equipped, hence they can ill afford to scatter their numerical strength, and because the necessity for file closers does not appear in the movements of a Commandery, as is claimed for the operations of belligerants, nor do they add to the symmetry of the formations for display.

The Eminent Commander occupies an office of dignity scarcely justified by the strength of his command, but the position marked out for him and his staff (the Generalissimo and Prelate) is in harmony with the popular idea and in keeping with the practice of many Commanderies. This does not preclude his taking immediate command if he elects to do so.

The same explanations apply for the E.C. in command as are given for the Captain General as commander. When the Commandery is in column, if the Eminent Commander does not take command, he marches in line with his staff three yards in advance and maneuvers it in conformity with

the general movements of the Commandery. In line he may march with his staff three yards from the right flank, or at Commandery distance in front of its center. The Generalissimo is at his right and the Prelate at his left. Their swords are not drawn but are habitually carried at a *secure*. If the Eminent Commander takes immediate charge the staff, with the Captain General on the left and the Prelate on the right of the Generalissimo, may march three yards from the left of the line; or, better, are absorbed among the past officers.

The Past Officers wearing shoulder-straps form on the right according to height, but have no other distinction.

The Captain General as instructor goes wherever his presence is necessary; in column his place is on the left of the *Senior Warden*, or four yards to the left and abreast of the leading subdivision; if the Commandery be in line his post is two yards in front of the center, or on the right flank at the right of the Senior Warden.

The Senior Warden in line is on the right flank; in column of divisions, as chief of the first division, he marches two yards in front of its center. He is also the right or left guide, according as in the maneuvers he finds himself on the right or left of the Commandery.

The Junior Warden in line is, in like manner, on the left flank as *left guide*. He is chief of the rear division when the right is in front, and of the leading division when the left is in front.

It is the duty of the Wardens and Sword Bearer to assist the Captain General in maintaining order in the ranks; habitually preserving their own correct position and, if necessary, they caution the Knights in a low tone.

The Recorder, Treasurer and Sentinel, having shoulder-straps, form with the *Past Officers*, or form the rear rank of the *Standard Guard*.\*

\*None but the Eminent Commander, Generalissimo and Captain General are entitled to shoulder-straps; the rank of other officers is designated by their jewels. (*Vide Regulations.*)

The Sword Bearer is on the right, and the Warden on the left of the Standard Bearer. These three form the Standard Guard, whose place is in the front rank, and as near the center of the Commandery as practicable.

A Commandery is divided into two, and if desirable into three or four (nearly) equal parts; each part is called a *division*, the odd number of threes being in the division on the left. It is better that there should be but two divisions, so designated when the Commandery is formed. But for the purpose of placing the standard in a center division, there may be three, or in order to equally divide the Commandery into four parts, to form square, when double sections will not accomplish it, four divisions may be formed. In line of three ranks the front rank is the *first division*, the middle rank is the *second division*, and the rear rank the *third division*. In column, the leading division is the *first division*, whether the right or left is in front.

The Chief of a subdivision is the officer or Knight on its right, unless otherwise especially designated.

The Guide of a subdivision is generally the Knight on its left. Subdivisions are designated numerically from right to left, when in line, and from the head of the column to the rear. The designation changes when by facing, etc., the left becomes the right; officers in command caution *first division*, etc., whenever the designation is changed.

#### FORMATION OF A COMMANDERY.

At the sound of the *assembly* every Knight hastens to the place from which the sound came; *promptness* being the first most excellent quality for a well drilled Commandery.

The Captain General commands:

FALL IN,

and indicates the basis for the line by placing the Senior Warden upon it; he then places himself six yards in front of the center, facing it.

The Knights form in column of files faced to right, graduated in height from front to rear, tallest in front, swords at *carry*.



The Captain General now commands:

1. *Left.*
2. *Face.*
3. *Count Threes.*

The Knight on the left of the Senior Warden (front and rear rank) counts *one*, the next at his left says *two*, the next *three*, the next *one*, and so on to the left, without turning their heads, but counting in a firm, quick tone. Observing the cadence adds much to the appearance and effect.

The Senior Warden may count *one* in the leading three of very small Commanderies, and the Junior Warden may march with the left three if the number is wanting.

The Captain General then commands: **ONES COUNT**, when numbers one of each three successively turn their heads to the left, at the same time count *one*, *two*, etc., from right to left, and immediately turn the head to the front. The odd threes are the right and the even threes the left of sections. He then indicates the right and left of divisions, leaving the odd three in the left division, and commands:

1. *Second division.*
2. *Left side step.*
3. **MARCH.**
4. *Division.*
5. *HALT.*

The fifth command is given when the division has gained a distance of two yards.

In the mean time the Standard Guard (with the standard) forms six yards from the left, perpendicular to the line and in inverse order; that is, the Sword Bearer is on the left and the Warder on the right of the Standard Bearer.

The Captain General now commands:

1. *Standard Guard.*
2. *Post.*
3. *Present.*
4. **SWORDS.**

The line presents and the guard marches, under direction of

the Sword Bearer, standard saluting, between the Commandery and Captain General, opposite to its place, wheels to the right, marches through the opening between the divisions and halts, comes to an *about face*, and the Captain General immediately commands:

1. *Carry.*
2. *SWORDS.*
3. *Right.*
4. *DRESS.*
5. *FRONT.*
6. *Present.*
7. *SWORDS.*

This is acknowledged by the Eminent Commander, who raises his chapeau, he having taken position three yards in rear of the Captain General and facing the Commandery. He stands with arms folded until just before the command to *present*. The Generalissimo is at his right, the Prelate at his left, each one yard from him and two yards retired, forming a triangle.

The Captain General comes to an *about face*, salutes with the swords and says:

*Eminent Sir, the Commandery is formed.*

The salute is acknowledged with the hand, and the Eminent Commander orders: *Take your post, Sir Knight.* The Captain General takes the Prelate's place, who steps to the right of the Generalissimo. The Eminent Commander then draws his sword, exercises the Commandery in the manual, and, finally, leaving the swords at an *order*, returns his own sword and directs the Captain General to *Take charge of the Commandery, Sir Knight.* Or he orders the Generalissimo, Captain General and Prelate, thus: *Take posts in line, Sir Knights,* and they form in rear of the Eminent Commander and may march under direction of the Generalissimo three yards to the left of the Commandery, and dress on the line established. It is better for the staff to form with the past officers.

*If the Captain General is in command* the Senior Warden forms the Commandery as indicated, faces to the front, salutes the Captain General and says: *Sir, the Command-*

*ery is formed.* When the salute is acknowledged he faces about, marches to within one yard of the line, turns to the left, and when opposite his place, turns to the right and halts in rear of it, faces about and dresses on the line. When he faces the Commandery to the left into line (if so instructed) he brings it to *support swords* and calls the roll, each Knight coming to a *carry* and *order swords* as his name is called.

This is the formal ceremony, but the Captain General may, in emergencies, order the Commandery to *fall in; left, face; count threes; ones count*, and designate the divisions only.

#### To Form in two Ranks.

The Knights *fall in* as explained; the Captain General commands:

##### 1. *In two ranks form Commandery.* 2. MARCH.

At the second command the Senior Warden and the Knight on the right, face to the left (front). The second Knight places himself in rear covering the first one, the others close in quick time, form alternately in the front and rear rank, and each faces to the front upon arriving in his proper place; then *count threes* as before explained. Or the Knights may fall in, if so instructed, in two ranks, faced to the right, and the formation is completed as before.

#### To Dismiss the Commandery.

Being in line at a halt.

##### 1. *Swords.* 2. PORT. 3. *Break ranks.* 4. MARCH.

#### To Open Ranks.

Being at a halt.

##### 1. *Rear open order.* 2. MARCH. 3. FRONT.

At the first command the Senior Warden and Junior Warden march backward three yards to mark the new alignment. At the command *march* the front rank dresses to the right, the rear rank casts the eyes to the right and steps backward, halts a little in rear of the alignment and dresses to

the right on the line established by the Wardens. The Captain General verifies the alignment of the front and the Senior Warden of the rear ranks. At the command *front!* the Wardens place themselves three yards in front of their respective places.

The Eminent Commander and staff stand fast.

If the Eminent Commander is in command the Prelate moves five yards to the front of the left flank, dressing on the Generalissimo and Captain General, who take post five yards in front of the center of the right and left wings.

**1. Close order. 2. MARCH.**

At the command *march* the officers face about, approach to within one yard of the line, march along its front, and resume their places in line, the rear rank closes up in quick time to facing distance, each Knight covering his front rank frater.

**In Line, Single Rank, to Open Order.**

The same rules and commands apply as in double rank, except that *twos* are counted, if not otherwise known (see Templar's Drill); the even numbers march straight backward and form the rear rank, in open order, so as to be exactly in rear of their own intervals between numbers *one* of the front rank.

When ranks are closed they resume their places in line.

**To March in Line.**

**1. Forward. 2. Guide right (or left). 3. MARCH.**

At the command *march* all step off with the left foot in quick time, the Senior Warden as right guide taking points in advance perpendicular to the line, and with the greatest care observes the length and cadence of the steps. The touch of elbow toward the guide is kept up, and the alignment carefully preserved. This should be frequently practiced, and for long distances.

1. *Commandery.* 2. HALT.

At the second command every Knight halts and the alignment is made.

## To Wheel the Commandery.

Being in line at a halt.

1. *Right* (or *left*) *wheel.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Commandery,*  
4. HALT. 5. *Left* (or *right*). 6. DRESS. 7. FRONT.

At the command *march* the commandery wheels to the right on a fixed pivot. The Senior Warden stands fast, so that the breast of the pivot Knight may rest against his left arm at the completion of the wheel. The Captain General superintends the wheel, moves by the shortest line to a point commandery distance where the left of the line will rest, directly in front of the Senior Warden and facing him. At the command *halt*, given when the left guide is three yards from the perpendicular, the Commandery halts and the Junior Warden promptly places himself so that his breast will touch the Captain General's right arm, who steps back two yards and commands *left*, DRESS, when the Knights dress up to the line of the pivot and Junior Warden. At the command *front* the Senior Warden places himself in line on the right of the pivot.

To continue the march upon completion of the wheel the Captain General commands *forward*, when the Junior Warden arrives at three yards from the perpendicular, adding MARCH the instant the wheel is completed and *guide left* (or *right*) immediately afterward. At the command *forward* the Senior Warden places himself at the side of the pivot.

In all wheels the guide is on the marching flank and slightly advances the shoulder opposite the pivot, keeping the pivot constantly in view.

In wheeling on a movable pivot the command *forward* is given in time to add *march* the instant the wheel is completed, and the guide is announced on either flank.

To continue the wheel that caution is given as the marching flank approaches the perpendicular, and the wheeling is kept up as if but just commenced. If on a fixed pivot, the Warden on the pivot flank places himself in line at the side of the pivot Knight and halts as before. This may be continued *ad libitum*, or the direction of the wheel may be changed at the command: 1. *Left* (or *right*) *wheel*. 2. MARCH, when the same principles will govern as before.

#### To Effect a Slight Change of Direction.

*Incline to the right* (or *left*): Is given in march.

The guide advances gradually the left shoulder and marches in the new direction; all the files advance the left shoulder and conform to the movements of the guide, lengthening or shortening the step according as the change is toward the side of the guide or the side opposite.

While this should be learned a half wheel will ordinarily effect the desired object.

#### To Turn.

1. *Right* (or *left*) *turn*. 2. MARCH,

Is given when marching in line.

At the second command the Senior Warden faces to the right, without halting, and continues the march; all the files increase the gait and hasten to his left, taking the step and touch of elbow from him on arriving in line.

*Right* (or *left*) *half turn* is similarly executed.

#### To March by the Flank.

Being in line at a halt.

1. *Right* (or *left*). 2. FACE. 3. FORWARD. 4. MARCH. Or, 1. *By the right* (or *left*) *flank*. 2. MARCH, if in march. Or, from a halt or in march command:

1. *Threes right* (or *left*). 2. MARCH.



At the command *march* each three wheels to the right on a fixed pivot. Upon completion of the wheel the front rank of each three takes the full step, the rear ranks fall back until there are twenty-one inches between the front and rear ranks. The front rank of the second three will be twenty-one inches from the rear rank of the first three, and so on to the rear of the column.

The Senior and Junior Wardens each march forty-four inches to the front and face to the right; the Senior Warden places himself twenty-one inches in front of the left file of the first three, and marches on a line parallel to the former front of the Commandery, and the Junior Warden follows twenty-one inches in rear of the left file of the last three. This brings the front rank of each three at wheeling distance, as they would be had there been but one rank in the line; the rear ranks are half way between the front ranks of the threes.

In wheeling by threes the *forward march* is always taken up on completion of the wheel unless the command *halt* is given.

#### To March in Column of Threes to the Front.

Being in line the Captain General commands:

1. Right (or left) forward.
2. Threes right (or left).
3. MARCH.



At the third command the Senior Warden places himself in front of the left file of the right three; the right three moves straight to the front, shortening the first three steps; the rear rank, if there be one, falls back to half distance; the other threes wheel to the right on a fixed pivot; the second three, when its wheel is two-thirds completed, wheels to

the left on a movable pivot and follows the first three, and the others, having wheeled to the right, move forward and wheel to the left on the same ground as the second.

If the *Eminent Commander* and staff are on the right they move forward as prescribed for the first rank of three; the others wheel to the right and follow in trace of the Eminent Commander and staff.

#### To Change Direction of Column.

Being in march.

1. *Column right (or left).*
2. MARCH.

If the change of direction be to the side opposite the guide, he wheels as if on the marching flank of a rank of three; if the change of direction be toward the side of the guide, he shortens his step at the command *march* and wheels to the right, the leading three wheels on a movable pivot, its pivot following the trace of the guide. The wheel being completed the guide and leading rank retake the twenty-eight inch step; the other threes move forward and wheel on the same ground.

1. *Column right (or left).*
  2. MARCH
- Is similarly executed.

1. *Forward.*
2. *Column right (or left).*
3. MARCH.

1. *Threes right.*
2. *Column right.*
3. MARCH

Puts the column in march and changes the direction at the same time.

#### To Halt a Column and Put it in Motion.

1. *Commandery.*
  2. HALT.
- Or,
1. *Forward.*
  2. MARCH.

#### To Oblique in Column.

In obliquing in column of threes or subdivisions, the guide, without indication, is always on the side toward which the oblique is made. On resuming the direct march the guide, without indication, is on the same side it was previous to the oblique.

Practice obliquing in column and in line often and for a long distance at a time, that the errors may be seen and corrected.

*1. Right (or left) oblique. 2. MARCH.*



During the oblique the threes preserve their parallelism; the Knight in each rank of three on the side toward which the oblique is made is the guide of the rank. The leading guide is the guide of the column when the oblique is toward his flank. If toward the opposite flank the guide of the front rank of the leading three is the guide of the column.

*1. Forward. 2. MARCH*

Is given to resume the direct march.

**To March a Column of Threes to the Rear.**

*1. Threes right (or left) about. 2. MARCH.*

Each rank of three wheels about on a fixed pivot and marches to the former rear. The rear ranks, if there are two ranks, preserve their distance of twenty-one inches from the front ranks when in column of threes; the pivot of the rear rank closes up to his front rank pivot, covers him during the wheel and, on its completion, falls back to twenty-one inches.

The guide at the head of the column takes two steps forward, faces to the right, and places himself, on completion of the about, in rear of the file on the marching flank of the now rear three. The guide at the rear of the column faces to the right and places himself, on completion of the about, in front of the file on the marching flank of the now leading three.

*The Captain General faces about and hastens*



to place himself on the left of the guide at the head of the column. The Eminent Commander and staff wheel about and follow three yards in rear of the column.

If the movement is made to the left, the leading guide takes two steps straight forward and faces about; the leading three wheels past him, when he places himself twenty-one inches in rear of its left file by retracing his steps; the guide in rear of the column faces about and preserves his distance, marching forward when the movement is completed.

**To Form Line from Column of Threes.**

1. *Threes right (or left).*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide (right or left); or, 3. Commandery,*
4. HALT.
5. *Left (or right.)*
6. DRESS.
7. FRONT.

The threes wheel to the right, into line, on a fixed pivot.

If in two ranks, the rear rank closes to facing distance during the wheel, and if executed in *double time*, regains the distance of twenty-one inches should the line advance when formed. The guide, if in front of the pivot, takes two steps forward and faces to the right, placing himself on the left of the leading three upon completion of the wheel. If in front of the marching flank, he wheels to the right with the leading three, obliquing at the same time so as to uncover the file, and places himself on the left of the file when the wheel is completed. The guide in rear takes his place on the right of the Commandery, and the guide is announced the instant the threes unite in line.

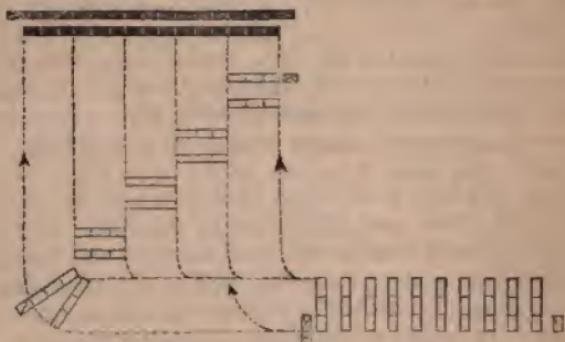
If the command *halt* be given as the threes wheel into line, the Captain General places the leading guide on the line of the pivots at sufficient distance to admit the leading three which dresses on the guide, the others dress up to the pivot of the three in front, thus insuring a prompt alignment.

1. *On right (or left) into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Commandery.*
4. HALT.
5. *Right (or left).*
6. DRESS.
7. FRONT.

At the command *march* the leading three wheels to the

right on a movable pivot, and moves forward dressing on the guide who places himself on its right and conducts it. The other threes march a distance equal to their fronts beyond the wheeling point of the three next preceding, wheel to the right and advance as did the first three. The rear guide places himself on the left of the rear three as it wheels to the right.

At the command *halt*, given when the leading three has advanced commandery distance in the new direction, or at a less distance if desired by the Captain General, it halts, and at the sixth command, given immediately after, dresses to the



right. The other threes halt and dress successively on arriving in line. The rear rank, if there is one, closes to facing distance upon halting.

The seventh command is given when the last three has dressed.

The Eminent Commander and staff place themselves on the right or left of the line, according as they are at the head or rear of the column. *This rule is general.*

*If in double rank*, and it is desired to form line in single rank, precede the first command by, 1. *In single rank.* 2. *On right into line*, etc., and the rear ranks execute the move-

ment the same as the others, passing a distance equal to their front beyond where their front ranks wheeled.

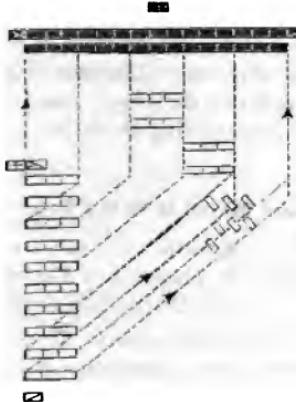
*If in single rank, to form in double rank, the command is, 1. In double rank. 2. On right into line, etc. The movement is similar. The rear rank of each three wheels to the right on the same ground as its front rank.*

*If marching in double time, or in quick time and the command be double time, the Captain General commands *guide right* when the leading three has wheeled out of the column; it then advances in quick time; the others continue the double time until they successively arrive in line when they take the step and alignment from the guide.*

### Front into Line in Single and Double Rank.

- 1. Right (or left) front into line.** 2. MARCH. 3. Commandery. 4. HALT. 5. Left (or right). 6. DRESS. 7. FRONT.

At the second command the first three moves straight to the front, dressing on the leading guide who places himself

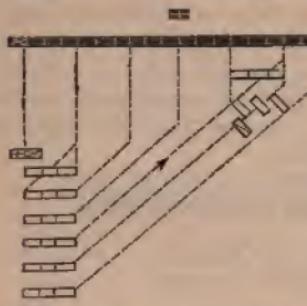


on its left, the other threes oblique to the right till opposite their places in line when each in succession marches forward.

At the command *halt*, given when the leading three has advanced commandery distance, it halts, and at the sixth command given immediately after, dresses to the left. The other threes halt and dress to the left upon arriving in line. The rear ranks close to facing distance upon halting. The guide in rear places himself on the right of the

front rank when the last three arrives in line.

*If marching in double time, or in quick time and the command is double time, the Captain General commands *guide left* immediately after the command *march*; the leading three advance in quick time, the others oblique in double time; each resumes the forward march when opposite its place, taking the step and alignment from the guide (or dresses) as it arrives in line.*



*If in double rank, and it is desired to form in single rank the command is, 1. In single rank. 2. Right (or left) front into line, etc. Each rear rank oblique until it has gained a distance equal to its front beyond the point where their front rank commenced the forward, which is opposite their place*

*in line, when they too march to the front, halting and dressing as explained.*

*If in single rank, to form in double rank in line, the principles are the same; the command will then be, 1. In double rank. 2. Right front into line, etc. The rear rank of each three oblique with and resumes the direct march at the same time as the front rank does, closing to facing distance on arriving in line.*

#### To Face a Line to the Rear and March it to the Rear.

1. *Threes right (or left) about.*
  2. *MARCH.*
  3. *Commandery.*
  4. *HALT.*
  5. *Left (or right).*
  6. *DRESS.*
  7. *FRONT.*
- Or, 3. *Guide (right or left).*

The Captain General passes between the nearest three as they wheel about on a fixed pivot, and places himself two yards in front of the center of the Commandery, and the guides wheel into their places.

- From a halt* to march a few paces to the rear, thus:
1. *Commandery.*
  2. *About.*
  3. *FACE.*
  4. *Forward.*
  5. *Guide (right or left).*
  6. **MARCH.** Or, if in march, 1. *To the rear.*
  2. **MARCH.** 3. *Guide (right or left).*

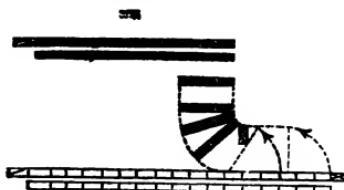
The guides and Standard Guard step into the rear rank, now become the front. Having faced about, number one of each three now becomes number three, and the reverse.

#### To Break Threes to the Rear.

**Marching in line, to pass obstacle.**

1. *(So many) threes from right (or left) to rear.*
2. **MARCH.**

At the command *march* the designated three executes *left forward, threes left* on the three next on its left, which re-



main in line. The Captain General points with his sword to the inner three which leads the movement. The guide, if the threes are broken from his side, closes in on the threes which remain in line; if from the opposite side, the guide on that flank follows in rear of the three next to him.

1. *Rear threes, right (or left) front into line.*
2. *Double time.*
3. **MARCH.**

The threes which were broken form in line, and the guide if on that side hastens to the point where the right of the Commandery will rest.

#### The Route Step.

**Being in column of threes, marching.**

1. *Route step.*
2. **MARCH.**

At this command the swords are carried at will and the Knights need not preserve silence or keep the step, but each covers the file in front and maintains the regular distance.

Change of direction is effected by the same commands as when in the cadence step.

1. *Commandery.* 2. ATTENTION.

At the second command the swords are brought to a *carry* and the cadence step is resumed.

To Form Column of Files from Column of Threes.

Being at a halt.

1. *Right (or left) by file.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command the rear rank, if there be one, closes to facing distance.

At the second command the right file of the leading three of the front and rear rank moves forward, followed in succession by the files on his left. When the left file of the leading three is about to commence the oblique the right file, front and rear rank, of the second three moves to the front, and so on to the rear of the column, keeping close to facing distance.

The guides (Wardens) precede and follow the leading and rear files.

If marching, the right file of the leading three continues the march, the others halt and resume the march at the proper time. The Captain General places himself on the left of the leading guide.

To Form Column of Threes from Column of Files.

Being in march.

1. *Form threes.* 2. *Left (or right) oblique.* 3. MARCH.

At the command *march* the leading file of each three, front and rear rank, if there be two ranks, moves forward two yards and halts, the rear rank Knights falling back to twenty-one inches; the other files oblique to the left and place themselves successively on the left of the leading files, the rear rank taking the distance of twenty-one inches from the front rank; the other three successively form as explained for the first,

the leading file of each three halting at twenty-one inches from the corresponding file of the next three in front. The leading guide places himself in front of the left file of the leading three.

**To Form Column of Twos from Line, and Line from Column of Twos,**

Is executed similar to like formations by threes.

**To Form Column of Files from Line, and the Reverse.**

In march the command is, 1. *By the right (or left) flank.* 2. MARCH. If the line is so formed add: 3. *Guide (right, left or center).*

From a halt, command: 1. *Right (or left).* 2. FACE. 3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH. If by facing the line is formed, add: 5. *Guide left, (right or center).*

**To Form Single Rank from Double Rank.**

Being in line.

1. *Form single rank.* 2. *Threes (right or left).* 3. MARCH.

All the threes wheel to the right at the command *march.* The front rank of the right threes, upon completion of the



wheel, continues the march, and is conducted by the right guide who is in front of the file on the marching flank; the other ranks halt and successively resume the march when at fifty-four inches, wheeling distance, from the rank preceding.

The rearmost rank having its distance, the Captain General commands:

1. *Threes left (or right).* 2. MARCH. 3. *Commandery.* 4. HALT. 5. *Left (or right).* 6. DRESS. 7. FRONT.  
Or, 3. *Guide (right or left).*

**Marching in Column, to Form Single Rank.**

*1. Form single rank. 2. MARCH.*

At the second command, the front rank of the leading three continues the march, the others *halt* and resume the march when at wheeling distance, the rearmost three having its distance line is formed as before.

If marching in *double time*, or in *quick time* and the command be *double time*, the front rank of the leading three marches in double time; the others halt and take the double time when at wheeling distance.

The leading guide in column of threes at single rank distance places himself twenty-four inches in front of the file on the marching flank of the leading three. The rear guide follows at the same distance in rear of the file on the marching flank of the rear three.

*In single rank* the positions of the officers are the same as when in double rank. The Commandery performs all the movements explained for double rank by similar commands and means.

For small Commanderies the single rank formation should generally be used.

**To Form Double Rank.**

Being in line single rank.

*1. Form double rank. 2. Threes right (or left). 3. MARCH.*

At the command *march*, the ranks of three wheel to the right, the leading rank halts the instant the wheel is completed; the others continue the march and halt successively upon closing the twenty-one inches from the rank preceding.



The rearmost rank having gained this distance, the Captain General commands:

- . *Threes left (or right).* 2. MARCH. 3. *Commandery.*  
4. HALT. 5. *Left.* 6. DRESS. 7. FRONT. Or, 3. *Guide*  
(right or left).

The command is *threes right* (or *left*), according as the front ranks are on the right or left of their rear ranks. Should the original left three be in front, and its rear rank wanting, the front rank of the succeeding three instead of closing remains at its wheeling distance of fifty-four inches.

If the rearmost three is wanting in numbers to complete it the Junior Warden marches with it when the nature of his duties as guide, etc., does not render it impracticable; but when the Commandery is in line he is in the front rank on the extreme left.

*Marching in column of threes*, single rank distance, the front rank of each three being in front of its rear rank, *to form double ranks*, command:

1. *Form double rank.* 2. MARCH.

At the second command the leading rank halts; the others continue the march, each halting at twenty-one inches from the rank preceding, the rearmost rank having closed, the line is formed as before.

#### To Close to Double Rank Distance.

Being in march, threes at single rank distance.

1. *Double rank distance.* 2. *Double time.* 3. MARCH.

The leading rank continues in quick time; the other ranks close to twenty-one inches in double time and resume the quick time. If marching in double time the leading rank takes the quick time as do the others successively upon closing to twenty-one inches.

#### To Form Column of Divisions.

Being in line at a halt.

1. *Divisions right (or left) wheel.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command the Senior Warden, as chief of the first division, and the Junior Warden, as chief of the second



*Double Rank, without Standard.*

chief of division hastens by the shortest line to the point where the left of his division will rest and faces the late rear; the divisions wheel to the right on fixed pivots and the wheel of each division is conducted as explained in the wheelings of the Commandery, the Knights on the right and left of the divisions acting as right and left guides; when the division approaches the perpendicular its chief commands:

1. — *Division.* 2. *Halt.* 3. *Left.* 4. *Dress.* 5. *Front.*

At the command *halt* the Knights on the left of the divisions place themselves so that their breasts will touch the right arms of their chiefs, who then step back two yards and each dresses his division and places himself in front of its center.

At the command *march*, the *Standard Guard* also wheels under direction of the *Sword Bearer*, who is its chief, to the center of the column midway between the divisions.

If in march, the Commandery wheels into column by the same commands as at a halt. At the command *march* the pivots halt and mark time in their places, so as to conform to movement of the marching flank.

The position of the Captain General is on the side of the



*Single Rank, with Standard.*

division, two yards in front of the center of and facing their divisions, and repeat the command, *division right wheel*. At the second command, briskly repeated, each

division places themselves two yards in front of the center of and facing their divisions, and repeat the command, *division right wheel*. At the second command, briskly repeated, each

guide, four yards from the flank and abreast of the leading division.

Whenever in column a subdivision is dressed, its chief places himself two yards in front of its center, except the chiefs of threes and sections, who habitually remain on the flanks of their subdivisions.

The *Eminent Commander and Staff* wheel in front of the center of the column at full division distance, and march in line, or triangle, etc., as the Eminent Commander shall indicate in an undertone.

**1. In three (or four) divisions. 2. Right wheel. 3. MARCH.**

The Captain General having previously indicated the right and left of the divisions, so that the standard shall be in the center of the second division, the Senior Warden commands the leading division and the Junior Warden the rear division. At the second command the Sword Bearer steps to the front, takes command of the middle division, the Warder takes the Sword Bearer's place, and the left guide of this division quickly fills the interval at the left of the standard. If in two ranks the Warder hastens to the right of the Standard Bearer, and the number *three* covering the Warder, steps into the front rank on the left of the standard as soon as the interval is made.

The wheels are conducted as already explained; at the command *front* the chiefs of divisions place themselves in front of the centers of their divisions.

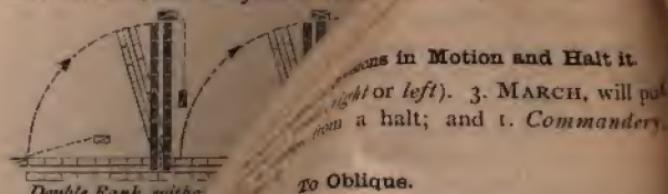
**To Form Column of Divisions and Move Forward  
without Halt.**

Being in line at a halt.

1. *Continue the march. 2. Divisions right (or left) wheel.*
3. **MARCH.**
4. *Forward. 5. MARCH.*
6. *Guide (right or left).*

The divisions wheel as before, except that the chiefs of divisions remain in front of their centers. Each guide preserves

At the first command the Senior <sup>W</sup>heels the leading guide of the first division, and the Junior War... and keep the correct s...



*Double Rank, with chief of division where the left c... the divisions the right on and the v... division : explain*

*at the first command the chief of the leading division ings e... at the command, right wheel; at the command march, repeated by, rig... the chief, the division wheels to the right on a movable pivot w... the chief adding 1. Forward. 2. MARCH, on the completion of the wheel; then adds guide left (or right), according to the position of the guide before the wheel.*

*The second division marches squarely up to the wheeling point and changes direction by the same means and commands from its chief.*

*The Standard Guard wheels on the same ground, under direction of its chief (who does not leave his place on its right), and preserves its place in column.*

*When the right of a column is in front the guide is left, and the reverse when the left is in front. This is not given as a rule, but as a suggestion, the matter being entirely at the discretion of the Captain General.*

*In changing direction it is essential that the rear of the column should never be checked; each chief, therefore, whose place is in front of it, faces his division while wheeling, and sees that the guides take the full step of twenty-eight or*

#### To Oblique.

*for the same commands and means as here... for obliquing in column of threes.*

#### Change Direction of a Column of Divisions.

*1. Column right (or left). 2. MARCH.*

*at the first command the chief of the leading division ings e... at the command, right wheel; at the command march, repeated by, rig... the chief, the division wheels to the right on a movable pivot w... the chief adding 1. Forward. 2. MARCH, on the completion of the wheel; then adds guide left (or right), according to the position of the guide before the wheel.*

*The second division marches squarely up to the wheeling point and changes direction by the same means and commands from its chief.*

*The Standard Guard wheels on the same ground, under direction of its chief (who does not leave his place on its right), and preserves its place in column.*

*When the right of a column is in front the guide is left, and the reverse when the left is in front. This is not given as a rule, but as a suggestion, the matter being entirely at the discretion of the Captain General.*

*In changing direction it is essential that the rear of the column should never be checked; each chief, therefore, whose place is in front of it, faces his division while wheeling, and sees that the guides take the full step of twenty-eight or*

sixty-three inches, and the pivot nine or eleven inches, according to the time.

The guide in wheeling is always on the marching flank without command; on its completion each chief of division, or double-section, cautions his subdivision *guide left* or *right*, according as the guide was before the wheel.

#### **Column Half Right, or Left**

Is similarly executed; each chief gives the preparatory command of *right* (or *left*) *half wheel*.

**To put a Column of Divisions in March, and change Direction at the same time.**

1. *Forward.* 2. *Guide (right or left).* 3. *Column right (or left); or 3. Column half right (or left).* 4. MARCH.

**To Face Column of Divisions to the Rear, and March it to the Bear.**

1. *Threes right (or left) about.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Commandery.* 4. HALT; or 3. *Guide (left or right).*

At the fourth command, given the instant the threes complete the wheel, each chief goes to the left of his division and dresses it to the left, commands *front*, and places himself in front of its center.

To march to the rear without halting, the Captain General announces the guide when the wheel is nearly completed.

If the column be faced to the rear and one division be smaller than the other, the guide of the second division regains the trace and wheeling distance on the march.

The Standard Guard conforms to these movements and carefully preserves its central position.

The Eminent Commander and Staff may follow in rear, or take position in front of the column, at the option of the Eminent Commander.

The leading division is always the *first division*, whether the right or left is in front.

**To Form Line to the Left or Right from Column of Divisions.**

Being at a halt,

- 1 *Left (or right) into line wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Commandery.*
4. HALT.
5. *Right (or left).*
6. DRESS.
7. FRONT.

The first command is repeated by the Wardens, who promptly take their places on the left flanks of their divisions as guides, the one in the rear exactly covering the one in front.



repeat the first and second commands, and stand fast; the divisions wheel on a fixed pivot.

The Standard Guard wheels, conducted by and under direction of its chief, so that when the wheel is nearly completed he shall be opposite his place in line.

The Captain General commands *halt*, and places himself in prolongation of the line marked by the Wardens where the marching flank of the leading divisions will rest, and faces the Wardens.

At the sixth command, the divisions and Standard Guard dress up to the line; at the seventh command the Wardens take their places on the flanks of the Commandery.

If marching, the movement is executed as just explained, except at the command *march* the pivots halt and mark time in their places so as to conform to the movements of the marching flank.

**To Form Line and Continue the March.**

1. *Continue the march.*
2. *Left (or right) into line wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. *Forward.*
5. MARCH.
6. *Guide left (or right).*

The chiefs repeat the commands to and including the third,

and quickly return to their posts in line, so as to step off with the Commandery at the fifth command.

The pivots are careful to turn in their places as before, until the wheel is completed.

In long lines the guide may be *center*, when all will dress on the Standard Bearer.

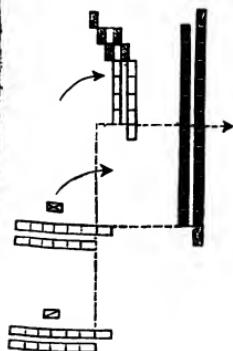
**To Form Line on the Right (or Left) from Column of Divisions.**

Being in march.

The Captain General indicates that the *guide* is *right* or *left*, on the flank toward which the movement is to be executed, and commands:

1. *On right (or left) into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. FRONT.

At the first command, the chief of the first division commands *right turn*; at the command *march*, repeated by its chief, the first division turns to the right, advances in the new direction, division distance, when the chief halts it, commands,



1. *Right.* 3. DRESS, and takes his place on its right. The Standard Guard and second division march straight forward, their chiefs successively command *right turn* in time to add MARCH when each is opposite its place in line; they are halted by the chiefs, the Standard Guard when at one and the division when at three yards from the line, who successively command *Right.* DRESS; and when the chief of the second division has given the second command, he takes his post on the left.

The Captain General superintends the alignment from the right, and commands *front*.

A similar movement by threes from column of divisions

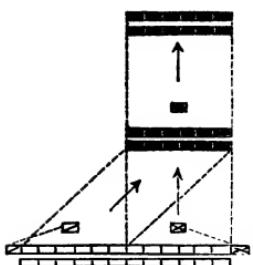
or sections may be executed, as before explained (*vide page 60*); each three in succession breaking from its division by wheeling when opposite its place in line; the command, when in columns of sections or divisions, being preceded by, 1. By *threes*. 2. *On right into line*, etc.

#### To Break into Divisions.

From a halt.

1. *Right (or left) by divisions.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left (or right).*

At the first command, the Wardens quickly take their places in front of their divisions; the chief of first division commands *forward*; the chiefs of the Standard Guard and second division command *right oblique*.



At the command *march*, repeated by the chief of the right division, the division moves forward, the chief repeating *guide left*. The chiefs of the Standard Guard and left division successively command *march* the instant they are severally disengaged.

The Sword Bearer commands *forward* and adds *MARCH* the instant the Guard is opposite the center of the first division, and so regulates the steps that it may immediately gain and preserve its proper distance.

The chief of the left division commands, 1. *Forward*; and adds 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left*, the instant the Knight on its left arrives in trace of the guide of the leading division; the guide is careful to regulate his steps so as to preserve the proper distance.

The Eminent Commander and Staff lengthen their steps and move into their places in front of the center of the first division at the first command.

*Marching*, the chief of the first division repeats the command, indicating the place of the guide.

The chiefs of Standard Guard and second division command, 1. *Standard Guard* (or, 1, *Second division*). 2. *Mark time*; repeat the command *march*, adding *right oblique* in time to command *march* the instant they are disengaged; the movement is completed as from a halt.

#### To Re-form the Commandery.

Being at a halt.

1. *Form Commandery.*
2. *Left* (or *right*) *oblique.*
3. **MARCH.**
4. **FRONT.**

At the second command the chief of the first division commands, 1. *Forward.* 2. *Guide right.* The chiefs of the Standard Guard and second division command, *left oblique*.

At the command *march*, repeated by the chiefs, the first division advances division distance, when its chief commands, 1. *First Division.* 2. **HALT.** 3. *Right.* 4. **DRESS**, and returns to his place on the right flank.

The Guard oblique to the left, its chief commanding 1. *Forward* in time to add 2. **MARCH.** 3. *Guide right* the instant the guard is opposite its place in line. When in rear of the line its chief halts it and commands, 1. *Right.* 2. **DRESS.**

The second division marches to its place in line by the same commands and means as described for the Standard Guard, halting at three yards from the line, when its chief commands, 1. *Right.* 2. **DRESS**, and takes his post on its left.

The Captain General superintends the alignment from the right, and gives the fourth command.

If *marching* in *quick time*, and the command be *double time*, the Captain General commands *guide right* (or *left*) immediately after the command *march*; the chief of the leading division commands *Forward*, **MARCH**, and repeats

the indication for the guide. The chiefs of the Standard Guard and second division repeat the commands *double time, march*, and when they are about to arrive in line, command *quick time*, adding **MARCH** the instant they are abreast of the leading division. The divisions and guard united, the Wardens return to their posts on the flanks.

If marching in *double time* the chief of the first division, at the first command of the Captain General, commands *quick time*, repeats the command *march*, and also the command for the guide.

**To March a Column of Divisions by the Flank and Re-form the Column.**

Being at a halt.

1. *Right* (or *left*). 2. **FACE**. 3. *Forward*. 4. **MARCH**.
5. *Guide right* (or *left*).

The Wardens place themselves in front of the leading files, and the guard marches in columns of files in the center between the divisions. The Captain General is on the side of the guide, four yards from the flank, abreast of the chiefs of division, or on a line midway between them.

The Eminent Commander and Staff also march to the right, conforming to the movement of the column.

*If in march* the divisions may be moved to the right or left by the commands, 1. *By the right* (or *left*) *flank*. 2. **MARCH**. 3. *Guide right* (or *left*).

Or, if at a halt, or in march, by the command:

1. *Threes right* (or *left*). 2. **MARCH**. 3. *Guide left* (or *right*).

The Wardens quickly place themselves in front of their divisions, as in columns of threes; the Standard Guard wheels as other threes do, and maintains its central position.

**To Form in Column Again.**

If the divisions are marching by the flank in columns of

, command, 1. *By the left (or right) flank.* 2. MARCH. *Guide left (or right).*

If marching in columns of threes, as explained, the Captain General commands:

1. *Threes left (or right).* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left (or right), or 3. Commandery.* 4. HALT.

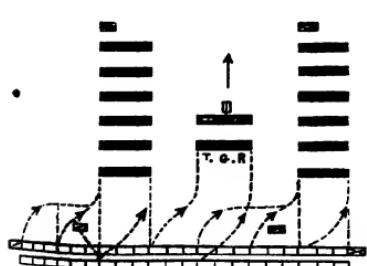
The threes and Standard Guard wheel to the left into column of divisions; the Wardens take their positions and exact distances are carefully preserved.

If halted, the chiefs dress their commands and promptly take their places in front of the centers of their divisions.

#### To Advance by the Right or Left of Divisions from Line.

1. *Divisions.* 2. *Right (or left) forward.* 3. *Threes right (or left).* 4. MARCH. 5. *Guide right (or left).*

At the second command the Wardens quickly place themselves in front of the centers of their divisions.



At the command *march* each division executes the movement from their right. The chiefs place themselves in front of the left files of the leading threes, the Captain General is midway between and on a line with the Wardens; the Eminent Commander and Staff oblique, to the center, three yards in front of the double column.

The Standard Guard wheels to the right, and follows the division whose rear file is next to it, until it is opposite the center between the divisions, when it wheels to the left and arches into its place in the center, under direction of its chief.

The Standard Guard wheels to the right, and follows the division whose rear file is next to it, until it is opposite the center between the divisions, when it wheels to the left and arches into its place in the center, under direction of its chief.

**To Form in Line again.**

1. *Divisions.*
2. *Left (or right) front into line.*
3. **MARCH.**
4. *Commandery.*
5. **HALT.**
6. *Right (or left).*
7. **DRESS.**
8. **FRONT.**

The Wardens hasten to their posts on the flanks.

The Standard Guard oblique to the left, halts in rear of its place in line, under direction of its chief, and dresses to the right. The Eminent Commander and Staff halt or move to the right under direction of the Eminent Commander so as to regain their places in line. The command *halt* is given when the leading threes have advanced division distance.

**To Form Column of Threes from Column of Divisions.**

1. *Divisions.*
2. *Right (or left) forward.*
3. *Threes, right (or left).*
4. **MARCH.**

The Wardens take their places in columns of threes. The Standard Guard marches straight forward and wheels to the right, so as to follow the leading division as it passes. The Eminent Commander and Staff move under his direction so as to regain their places at the head of the column.

**To Form Column of Divisions from Column of Threes.**

1. *Divisions.*
2. *Left (or right) front into line.*
3. **MARCH.**
4. *Commandery.*
5. **HALT.**

At the second command the Wardens place themselves on the left and opposite the centers of their divisions.

At the third command each division executes ~~left, right~~ into line; the chiefs place themselves in front of the ~~centers~~ of their divisions; the Standard Guard oblique to ~~the left~~ and marches to the center between the divisions, under direction of its chief. The command *halt* is given when the leading division has advanced division distance; each chief dresses his division to the right, and takes his place in front of its center.

If executed in double time, or in quick time and the command be *double time*, the Captain General commands: *Guide right (or left)* immediately after the command *march*.

## Templar and Display Drill.

---

**REMARKS.** Thus far the movements have been chiefly legitimate or in accord with the U. S. Infantry Tactics, substituting *threes* for *fours*, *divisions* for *platoons*, dispensing with *file closers*, causing the Wardens to perform the double duty of lieutenants and sergeants, and providing for a Standard Guard and Eminent Commander's Staff.

The movements which follow are in harmony with the principles laid down, but are such as are peculiar to Templars both as to the division of the Commandery and in the display drill.

As it is not desirable to describe minutely every detail that may arise in the movements of a Commandery, the Captain General, or Eminent Commander, will use his discretion in supplying any detail or omission. His decision should be final in any case not supplied by the tactics.

The Standard Bearer may carry the standard, dispensing with Sword Bearer and Warder, but his movements will be similar to those of the full guard. If the Standard Bearer does not carry the standard the Guard should fall in as other Knights.

In display drills the Eminent Commander and Staff ought not to participate as such; it is better that they be absorbed in the ranks. For this reason their movements are not always described, but enough has been given in detail to indicate their proper position.

---

\*The movements by fours, octaves, and platoons, (p. p. 81—86) are not to be considered as part of the *Templar Drill*. See last two paragraphs p. 86.

**How to Determine Position in Column.**

When *ones count*, as at the formation of the Commandery, it is to number the threes. The odd threes being the right and the even threes the left of sections. Hence the number of the section and position of any three therein is instantly ascertained by dividing the number by two. An odd three at the rear of the column marches in rear of the left three of the rear section; or the Senior Warden counts *one* and the Junior Warden marches with the rear section on its left flank, with number two of the left three wanting.

It is unnecessary to *count twos*, although it may be done if desired, as *one* and *two* from the right of each section form the first two; number *three* of the right three and *one* of the left three of each section form another two; and numbers *two* and *three* of the left three of each section form the next two.

**To Form Column of Twos and Fours from Line.**

Three (and its multiple) being the number most revered among Templars, it is not desirable to follow the army formations with four as the unit.

A few movements that result in the formation of fours, but in quite a different manner from that used in the army, may however add interest to the drill; the change of direction of a column, the flankings, formations of line to the front, on right into line, etc., are executed by commands and means similar to those already explained or which follow in the Templar or Display Drill.

Fours in column wheel by twos to march by the flank or about, unless the distance between them is increased to admit of the wheel by fours.

**1. Twos right (or left). 2. MARCH.**

Being in single rank.

At the command *march* the twos wheel to the right on fixed pivots and take up the march; the Senior Warden steps

rty-two inches to the front, faces to the right, placing nself thirty-two inches in front of number two, and maries on a line parallel to the former front; the Junior Warden allows thirty-two inches in rear of the last number two in he column.

The Standard Guard wheels as a unit so that the Standard Bearer will be in the center of the column, or he may wheel as if on the marching flank of a rank of two, and closing to twenty-four inches from the two in his front; the Warden wheels as described for the Standard Bearer, and as soon as disengaged the Sword Bearer places himself on the right of the Warden, forming a rank of two about twenty-four inches in front of the two in their rear, and the same distance from the Standard Bearer.

*If in double rank*, at the first command the rear rank takes one backward step so as to place itself thirty-two inches from the front rank. At the command *march* the twos of both ranks wheel independently, uniting in fours, each four being thirty-two inches from the one in its front and rear, and takes up the march perpendicular to the former front of the Commandery. The Wardens lead and follow the left files of the leading and rear four at thirty-two inches dsitance. The Standard Guard wheels as a unit and occupies the center of the column, or the Captain General may order the Junior Warden on its right as chief, forming a rank of four.

*If in march*, the rear rank falls back to thirty-two inches, at the first command, and the movement is executed on fixed pivots as before.

#### To Form Line from Column of Twos or Fours.

1. *Twos left (or right).* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right (or left).*

Or, 3. *Commandery.* 4. HALT. 5. *Right.*

6. DRESS. 7. FRONT.

Being in single rank. The twos wheel on fixed pivots.



*If in double rank, or front of four, the front and rank twos wheel independently and the movement is completed as before; the rear rank closing to twenty-one inches, or if halted it closes to facing distance.*

If the Junior Warden is on the flank of the Standard Guard he quickly resumes his place as left guide.

**To March a Column of Twos or Fours to the Rear.**

This may be executed by facing as before explained, or:

1. *Twos right (or left) about.* 2. MARCH.

*If in column of twos* the twos wheel about on fixed paces and march to the rear as in column of threes. *If in column of fours* each two wheels about independently, re-form the fours as the *about* is completed, and the column then marches to its former rear; the Wardens taking their places in front and rear of the left files at the head and in rear of the column as in column of threes.

**To Form two Lines from Column of Fours.**

1. *Twos right and left.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left.*

At the command *march* the right twos wheel to the right and march forward with the Senior Warden as left guide; the left twos wheel to the left and march forward, the Junior Warden as left guide; the Standard and Guardsmen marking time in its place, then 1. *Twos left and right about.* 2. MARCH, will cause the lines to approach each other. At the command *march* the right twos wheel *left about*; the left twos wheel *right about*; the Wardens wheel in a circle so as to arrive on the flanks of the lines at the same instant the movement is completed. The lines advance towards each other and the Captain General commands 1. *Twos right and left* in time to add 2. MARCH the instant they are 54 inches from each other, when the twos wheel to the right and left, *right in front*, into column of fours and continue the march, the Wardens quickly resuming their places.

**To Form Column of Eights from Column of Fours.**

Being in march.

1. *Form octaves by the right (or left) flank.* 2. MARCH.
3. *By the left (or right) flank.* 4. MARCH.
5. *Guide left (or right).*

At the second command, given as the right foot is coming to the ground, the first, third and other odd fours march *by the right flank* as before explained;\* the second fourth and other even fours advance by short steps; the Standard Guard takes the *right side step*, and the Wardens gradually gain thirty-two inches forward. The Captain General immediately gives the third command adding *march* the instant the even fours are unmasked when the odd fours face and march to their former front and unite, in a column of eights, with the fours that were in their rear. The Captain General seeing the movement completed gives the command for the guide and all resume the full step; the Standard Guard marching so as to quickly gain its central position. Or,

1. *Form octaves.* 2. *Twos left (or right).* 3. MARCH.
4. *Guide left.*

Being in march.

At the third command the Wardens turn to the left, advance eighty-eight inches and turn to the right; the odd fours take one step straight forward and *mark time*; the even fours wheel, on fixed pivots, by twos to the left, take three lengthened steps, wheel to the right on fixed pivots, and each four march forward into line with the four that was in its front. As the fours are united, the Captain General gives the fourth command and all take the full step. The Standard Bearer and Warder wheel to the left, as a rank of two, the Sword Bearer closely following the Standard Bearer, and march

---

\*This being a movement for display it is not essential that any portion of the column should have a clear front, during its execution, if it were, the movement would be made by the even fours to the left.

forward opposite their places in column when they wheel to the right under direction of the Sword Bearer, who takes his place at the right of the standard, as the Guard gains its place.

**To Form Column of Fours from Column of Octaves.**

1. *Form fours by the right (or left) flank.* 2. MARCH.
3. *By the left (or right) flank.* 4. MARCH.
5. *Guide left (or right).*

Being in column of octaves, marching.

At the second command the right fours advance by shortened steps; the Senior Warden quickly places himself thirty-two inches in front of the left file of the first four; the even fours march by the *right flank* as soon as they are disengaged; the Junior Warden faces to the right and places himself in his position in the column; the Standard Guard takes the *right side step*. The Captain General gives the third command in time to add *march* the instant the left fours have gained their places in column: He then gives the fourth command and all take the full step, marching to the front. Or,

1. *Form fours.* 2. *Twos right (or left).* 3. MARCH.
4. *Guide left (or right).*

At the command *march* the Senior Warden turns square to the right and takes his place thirty-two inches in front of the left file of the first four, which marches three steps forward and *marks time*; the left fours wheel by twos to the right, advance to the rear of their leading fours and execute *twos left*; the Junior Warden places himself thirty-two inches in rear of the Knight on the left of the rearmost four; the Sword and Standard Bearers wheel to the right as a rank of two, and the Guard marches forward and wheels into its place in the column, the Warden placing himself on the left of the standard. As the movement is completed the Captain General commands *guide left* and all retake the full step.

**To Form Platoons from Column of Octaves and Fours.**

A front of sixteen Knights in line (two *octaves*) is, in this work, called a *platoon*.

The Senior Warden commands the leading platoon; the Junior Warden the one in rear of the column; the Sword Bearer commands the second and the Warder the third. If there are more than four, the Wardens command the leading and rear platoons; the Sword Bearer commands the right center and the Warder the left center platoons; the most competent Knights are detailed to command the others, or the Knight on the right commands a platoon not provided for.

1. *Form platoons.*
2. *Twos left (or right).*
3. MARCH.
4. *Commandery.*
5. HALT.

At the second command each chief places himself in front of the octave at the head of his platoon and commands *forward*. At the command *march* these octaves advance two steps, the Captain General giving the fourth command, immediately, in time to add *halt* as their right feet are coming to the ground; the others wheel by twos to the left and the chiefs of platoons placing themselves on the left of their leading octaves, facing the rear, command, 1. *Twos right.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Octave.* 4. HALT. 5. *Right.* 6. DRESS. 7. FRONT, giving the second command the instant the left octave is opposite, and is halted in rear of, its place in platoon. At the command *front* the chiefs place themselves two yards in front of the centers of their platoons.

The Standard Guard moves to the center of the column under direction of its chief.

The movement may be executed in *double time* by similar means or by a flank movement similar to the formation of octaves from fours.

*Double-platoons* (a front of thirty-two Knights) may be formed by similar commands and means.

**To Form Octaves from Column of Platoons.**

1. *Form octaves.*
2. *Twos right.*
3. MARCH.
4. *Twos left.*
5. MARCH.
6. *Octaves.*
7. HALT.
8. *Right.*
9. DRESS.
10. FRONT.

At the second command each chief of platoon, facing the right octave, cautions it to *forward*. At the third command the right octaves move forward and are halted, at three yards distance, by the chiefs of platoons; the others wheel by twos to the right and march straight forward into the column. The Captain General gives the fourth command in time to add *march* the instant the leading twos gain the rear of number two from the right of the octaves on their left. The Captain General immediately gives the sixth and seventh commands; the octaves are dressed to the right, being careful that the right files exactly cover the corresponding file in front and at octave distance. The chief of platoons superintend the alignment of the odd octaves and the Knight on the right of each of the others superintend the dressing of his octave. At the command *front* the Wardens take their places in front and rear of the column. The Standard Guard marches to its place as before described.

DOUBLE-PLATOONS may be formed from column of platoons, and column of platoons, or *double-platoons*, may be formed from column of fours, and the reverse, upon the same principles and by similar commands and means. Formations by the wheelings of twos are easy, attractive, and almost without limit, yet for reasons hinted (*vide* page 80) it is not deemed desirable to pursue them further at this point; enough has been given to establish the basis for an infinite variety of display movements.

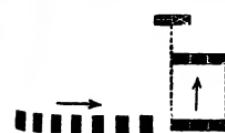
These movements are suggestions only; given to add interest to the drill, and are not to be understood as a part of the Knight Templar tactics.

**To Form Column of Threes by a Flank Movement from Column of Files.**

Being in march.

*1. Left (or right) flank by threes. 2. MARCH.*

At the first command the Senior Warden places himself twelve inches to the left of number three of the leading



three, faced in the direction toward which the column is marching. At the command *march* both the Senior Warden and the leading three march by the left flank; the others move forward until each three in succession has gained the ground from which the first three marched by the flank, when it executes the same movement, follows in trace of the three next in its front, and maintains its proper distance in the column. The Junior Warden turns to the left, following the left file of the rear three.

**To Form in Line Faced to the Rear from Column of Threes.**

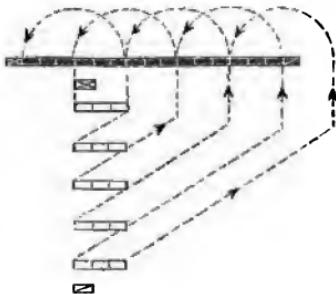
*1. Right (or left) front into line, faced to rear. 2. MARCH.*

*3. Commandery. 4. HALT. 5. Right (or left).*

*6. DRESS. 7. FRONT.*

The movement is executed as previously explained for *right front into line*, except that at the command *halt* the lead-three wheels *left about* on a fixed pivot and dresses toward the point of rest; the other threes successively wheel about on the same line and dress as before explained.

A similar movement may be made from column of sections, except that the sections do not halt until three



yards beyond the line; the sections are then wheeled, threes left about by the chiefs, who successively command ~~right~~ <sup>left</sup> dress; the Captain General verifies the alignment, and commands FRONT.

This will reverse the order of threes, but the following consecutive movements will place them in their original position in column of sections:

Form column of threes, by the commands *threes right* ~~or~~ <sup>left</sup>, *right forward threes right*, etc., then *form sections right oblique*, hereafter explained.

**To Form Line by two Movements from Column of Threes.**

A part of the column having changed direction to the right to form line to the left, the Captain General commands:

1. *Threes left.* 2. *Rear threes left front into line.* 3. MARCH.

Those threes which have changed direction execute *three left*, halt and dress to the right, at the command of the chief of the leading division, the rear threes execute *left front into line*, and dress upon the established line at command of the chief of the rear division; at the completion of the movement the Captain General commands *front*.

**To Form Line Faced to the Rear, by two Movements.**

A part of the column of threes, having changed direction to the right as before, the Captain General commands:

1. *Threes right.* 2. *Rear threes left front into line, faced to rear.* 3. MARCH.

The threes which have changed direction wheel to the right, halt and dress to the left at the command of the chief of the leading division, the rear threes execute *left front into line, faced to rear*, obliquing far enough to the left of their places in line that in wheeling about they shall come squarely up to their proper positions and dress on the new alignment,

At the completion of the movement the Captain General commands *front*.

If the column has changed direction to the left, the line is formed to the right by inverse commands, thus:

1. *Threes left.*
2. *Rear threes right front into line*, etc.

#### To Change Front.

Being in line.

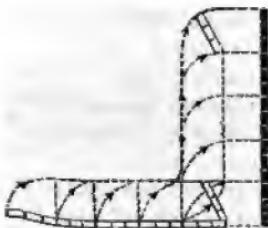
1. *Change front on right* (or *left*) *three.*
2. *Threes right* (or *left*).
3. MARCH.
4. *Commandery.*
5. HALT.
6. *Right.*
7. DRESS.
8. FRONT.

At the third command the threes wheel to the right; the Senior Warden quickly places himself on the right of the first three and, with it, moves straight to the front; the others oblique to the left and successively march to the front when opposite their places in line. The command *halt* is given when the leading three has advanced commandery distance, and the movement is completed as in *left front into line*.

1. *Change front forward on right* (or *left*) *three.*
2. *Threes right* (or *left*).
3. MARCH.
4. *Commandery.*
5. HALT.
6. *Right.*
7. DRESS.
8. FRONT.

At the command *march*, the threes wheel to the right; the first three advances a distance equal to its front and halts at

the fifth command; the other threes advance until they execute the same movement as in *right forward, threes right*, wheeling to the left from the ground traversed by the right three in its wheel to the right, and the movement then is completed as in *on right into line*.



**To Form Line on the Standard Guard from Column of Threes.**

1. *On Standard into line.*
2. *Threes right about.*
3. *Rear threes, left front into line.*
4. **MARCH.**

At the fourth command the threes in front of the standard wheel to the right about, and execute *left front into line* faced

*to rear*, obliquing to the left of their places in line a distance equal to their front, so that in wheeling about, after passing the new line, they shall be opposite their places and not lap over on the Standard Guard.

The rear threes execute *left front into line* as before explained.

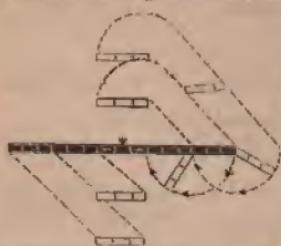
*If in march*, the Sword Bearer, at the fourth command, orders his guard to halt. Dress on the center.

**To Wheel about the Standard from Column of Files.**

Being in march.

1. *On Standard left wheel.*
2. *By the left and right flanks.*
3. **MARCH.**

At the command *march*, given as the left foot strikes the ground, the Standard Bearer advances, plants the right foot and *halts*; the Knights in his front execute *by the left flank*, and immediately commence the *left wheel* about him. The Knights in rear of the standard face to the right, into line, and commence the *left wheel* about the standard. Each wing being careful to preserve the alignment with the other. When the wheels are nearly completed the Captain General commands: 1. *Left wing to the rear.* 2. **MARCH.** 3. *Commandery* 4. **HALT.** 5. *Center.* 6. **DRESS.** 7. **FRONT.** At the command *halt*, given as the right foot strikes the ground, the right wing halts; the left wing executes *to the rear march*, bringing the left foot to the side of the right, and *halts*; the Standard



faces about and the line is dressed on the center, or flank.

**To Wheel in Line from Column of Threes.**

1. *Threes left (or right).*
2. *Left (or right) wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. *Commandery.*
5. HALT.
6. *Right (or left).*
7. DRESS.
8. FRONT.

The threes wheel to the left; and the instant they are united in line the Commandery wheels to the left on a movable pivot as before explained and is halted, or marched forward by the usual commands and means.

**To Form Column of Sections.**

From a halt, being in line.

1. *Sections right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Commandery.*
4. HALT.
5. *Left (or right).*
6. DRESS.
7. FRONT.

At the second command each section wheels on a fixed pivot; the Senior Warden moves to a place about forty-four inches in front of the point at which the left file of the leading section will rest, and faces to the left (rear of column); the Junior Warden marches straight forward, halts and faces to the right, on the prolongation of the line upon which the left files of each section will rest when the wheel is completed; the Wardens are now facing each other; the Standard Guard wheels to the center of the column, between the sections which were on its right and left before the movement commenced.

At the command *halt*, given as the sections approach the quarter circle, the left files step promptly up to the place where the left of their sections will rest and on a line between the Wardens, facing the Senior Warden, each opposite the chief of his section, perpendicular to its former position; the Wardens see that the guides cover each other; the chief of sections, without moving out of their places, superinte

the alignment of their sections, the commands being given by the Captain General.

At the seventh command the Senior Warden in front faces about and the Warden in rear closes up to forty-four inches from the left file of the rearmost section.

*If marching:* At the second command the Wardens hasten to their places in column; the pivots halt, mark time in their places, and conform to the movements of the marching flank. Chiefs of sections from their places on the right, without turning the head, see that in all movements their sections keep dressed and preserve the proper step and distance, the cautions being given in a low tone of voice and only when necessary.

**To Wheel into Column of Sections from Line and Advance without Halting.**

1. Continue the march.
2. Sections right (or left) wheel.
3. MARCH.
4. Forward.
5. MARCH.
6. Guide right (or left).

The sections wheel as before, except that the Wardens hasten to their posts in the column, and the Captain General gives the fourth command in time to add *march* the instant the sections arrive at the perpendicular from the former front.

**To Form Column of Sections from Column of Threes.**

Being in march.

1. Form Sections.
2. Left (or right) oblique.
3. MARCH.
4. Guide left (or right).

At the third command the odd numbered threes *mark time*; the even numbered threes oblique to the left until opposite their places in section, when they resume the *forward*. The Captain General gives the fourth command the instant the threes are united in sections, and all take the full step.

If the threes are reversed, that is, when the odd become the even threes in the column of threes, sections are formed

the same principles but to the right. The command is, 1. *Form sections.* 2. *Right oblique*, etc. Or, 1. *By on.* 2. *Threes right.* 3. MARCH, explained below.

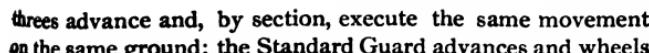
**o Form Column of Sections to the Left or Right, from Column of Threes.**

Being in column of threes marching the Captain General commands:

1. *By section.*
2. *Threes left (or right).*
3. MARCH.

At the second command the Senior Warden places himself on the left of the second three.

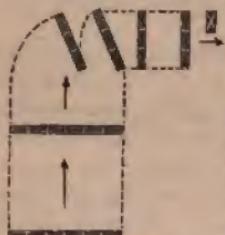
At the command *march* the Senior Warden advances and wheels in front of the file on his right; the leading and second three wheel to the left on movable pivots, uniting in section on the completion of the wheel and marching perpendicular to their former direction. The other threes advance and, by section, execute the same movement on the same ground; the Standard Guard advances and wheels to the left in rear of the center of the section in its front. The Junior Warden shortens his steps as the rear threes wheel and follows in the column of sections as explained before.



To halt after the formation of the column, the Captain General immediately commands after *march*, *Commandery*, and adds *halt* the instant the left files of the obliquing threes have gained the rear of the left files of the threes in their front. The column halts and those that obliqued face to the front.

**To Form Column of Threes to the Right or Left, from Column of Sections.**

Being in march.



1. *By section.*
2. *Threes right (or left).*
3. *MARCH.*

At the second command the Senior Warden quickly places himself twenty-one inches in front of the left file of the right three; at the command *march* he wheels to the right as if he was the marching flank of a rank of three leading the column; the threes of the leading section execute *threes right*, following the trace of the Warden; the rear sections march forward, and each in succession executes the same movement from the same ground. The Standard Guard wheels on the same ground to its place in the column; the Junior Warden closes to his place twenty-one inches from the left file of the three in rear.

**To March in Line.**

Before the movement by threes from column of section is completed, command:

1. *Threes left.*
  2. *Rear section forward*, and add 3. *MARCH.*
- the instant the rearmost section is about to wheel by threes; the threes that have changed direction execute *threes left*; the rear section marches straight forward, and as the line is formed, the Captain General commands, *guide right (or left).* The Standard Guard wheels as a rank of three.

If the column be a long one the line may be formed thus:

1. *Threes left.* 2. *Rear sections left front into line.*
3. *Double time.* 4. MARCH. 5. *Guide right.* Or,
6. *Commandery.* 7. HALT. 8. *Right.*
9. DRESS. 10. FRONT.

And the movement is executed upon the principles before explained; the seventh command being given when the right threes have advanced commandery distance.

**To Form Columns of Threes from Column of Sections, and March to the Rear.**

1. *Threes right and left about.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide center.*

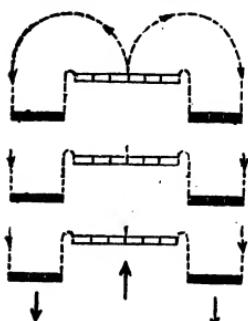
At the second command the right threes execute the *right about*, and the left threes the *left about*, on fixed pivots, the Standard Guard executes the movement *to the rear, march*, and regulates its steps so as to maintain its place; the Senior Warden turns to the right, and places himself directly in rear (after the *about*) of the Standard Bearer, advancing quickly until he is abreast of and between the rearmost threes. The Junior Warden also turns to the right and places himself on a line with the Senior Warden and Standard Bearer, and abreast of and between the leading threes. The Captain General marches two yards in front of the Junior Warden. The threes of each section carefully preserve section distance and the alignment with each other.

1. *Form sections.* 2. *Threes left and right about.* 3. MARCH.
4. *Guide left.*

At the command *march* the threes wheel about on fixed pivots, re-uniting the sections, the guard executing *to the rear, march* as before, the Wardens resume their places, and the guide is then announced. Or,

1. *By threes.* 2. *Front to rear.* 3. MARCH. 4. *Guide center.*
- Being in column of sections, marching

At the third command the threes of the leading section wheel from the center *right and left about* into columns of threes, the pivots describing circles whose radii are twelve inches; the others advance and the threes of each section in succession execute the same movement on the same ground.



The Standard Guard will advance and wheel about, on the same ground, into the column that wheeled to the right; the Wardens place themselves twenty-one inches in front of the left files of the leading threes, the Senior Warden in advance of the column

that wheeled to the right about, and the Junior Warden taking his place in lead of the other column as it passes. The Captain General marches between and on a line with the Wardens at the head of the column.

The Eminent Commander and Staff halt when the movement is commenced, and executing "to the rear" follow the column.

**1. Form sections. 2. Front to rear. 3. MARCH.**

This is given after the columns of threes are formed as just explained, as soon as the heads of the column have passed the rearmost section, or may be deferred for a short distance. At the third command the leading threes wheel about toward the center, unite in section and march toward their former rear; the others in succession execute the same movement on the same ground, following in column of sections; the officers resume their places, and the Standard Guard, after wheeling, obliques to its place in the center.

**To Close Sections to Half Distance or in Mass.**

Being in column.

*1. To half (or such) distance close column. 2. MARCH.*

At the command *march* the leading section stands fast, if at a halt, or halts if in march, at the caution of its chief; the others advance and successively halt at the given distance and are promptly dressed at command of the chiefs of the sections.

If in line, command:

*1. To half (or such) distance close column. 2. Sections right (or left) wheel. 3. MARCH.*

At the third command the sections wheel to the right and the leading section is halted and dressed by its chief; the others advance, on completing the wheel, and the movement is completed as before explained.

These movements may be executed in double time; then the leading section continues the march in quick time; the others close and successively take the step and cadence, from the guide in their front, at the command *quick time*, MARCH, by the chief of their section.

**To take Wheeling Distance from Column of Sections  
in Mass, etc.**

*1. Take wheeling distance. 2. MARCH.*

At the second command the leading section marches forward, at the caution of its chief; the others halt, if in march, or stand fast if at a halt, and successively take up the march, at the commands of their chiefs, when the designated distance is gained.

**To Form Column of Sections, Forward, from Line.**

*1. Center forward. 2. Threes right and left. 3. MARCH.  
4. Guide right (or left).*

At the Second command the Senior Warden places himself in front of the left file of the center section. At the com-

mand *march* the center section and Warden move straight forward; the threes of the right wing execute *left forward threes left*, and those of the left wing execute *right forward threes right*; the Junior Warden follows the column of threes on the left, falling back to his place in column of sections, all the rear threes unite in section.

If the Standard Guard is present the Senior Warden places himself in front of the Warden and the Guard and Warden lead the movement.

Column of sections is thus formed when the original right is the center of the line.

**To Form Line to the Front, from Column of Sections.**

1. *Right and left front into line.* 2. MARCH. 3. Commandery. 4. HALT. 5. On center. 6. DRESS.  
7. FRONT.

At the command *march* the Standard Guard (or center section) marches straight to the front; the right threes execute *right front into line*, and the left threes execute *left front into line*.

Line is formed in this way from column of sections when the original center of the Commandery is at the head of the column, and may be executed in double time as before explained.

**To Form Line by Two Movements, from Column of Sections at Half Distance.**

1. *Threes right (or left).* 2. *Left (or right) threes on right (or left) into line.* 3. MARCH. 4. FRONT.

At the command *march* the right threes execute *threes right*, move forward commandery distance and the Senior Warden commands, 1. *Right wing.* 2. HALT. 3. *Right.* 4. DRESS, and takes his place on the right. The left threes

execute on right into line, the Junior Warden quickly placing himself in front of the leading three commands, 1. *Left wing*, 2. HALT. 3. *Right*. 4. DRESS, giving the second command as the leading three of the left wing arrives in rear of the line, and places himself on the left, in prolongation of the line, facing the right. On the completion of the movement the Captain General commands *front*, and the Junior Warden takes his place on the left flank.

If the Standard Guard is present the right threes wheel to the right as before; when the wheel is completed the right threes that were in rear of the guard immediately oblique to the left by lengthened steps; the Senior Warden passes by their front to the right and commands *Forward*, adding MARCH the instant that those who are obliquing have united in line with the other right threes; gives the commands before explained, and places himself on the right. The Standard Guard and left threes march forward as before; the leading three advances seventy-one inches beyond the left of the right threes and wheels to the right on a movable pivot, leaving room between it and the right wing for the Standard Guard, which wheels to the right when opposite its place in line; the other left threes successively wheel to the right when opposite their places in line, and the movement is completed as before explained.

The movement may be executed without halting, thus:

1. *Threes right.* 2. *Left threes on right into line.* 3. *Double time.* 4. MARCH. 5. *Guide right.*

The left threes and Standard Guard execute the movement as before explained, but in double time, taking the step and alignment from the right wing as they successively arrive on the line. The Captain General commands *guide right* when the right threes have united in line, they then advance in quick time.

To Form Line by Three Movements from Column of Sections.

1. By section. 2. Threes right and left. 3. MARCH.

Being in column of sections at half distance. At the command *march* the left three of the leading section wheels to the left and the right three wheels to the right, marching in opposite directions; the other sections advance and, except the one in the rear, successively execute the same movements from the same ground. The Senior Warden is in lead of the right threes, and the Junior Warden quickly places himself in lead of the left threes as before explained, when the movement is commenced. [If the Standard Guard is in the column it does not wheel but marches straight to the front and *marks time* on a line with the marching flanks of the threes that wheeled into columns, right and left.] When the rearmost section approaches the point from which other sections broke into threes, the Captain General commands:

1. Into line. 2. Threes left and right. 3. MARCH  
4. Guide center.

At the second command the chief of the section that has not broken cautions it to *forward*, and at the command *march*, given the instant the rear section has gained the ground from which the others wheeled by threes, this section marches straight forward; the threes on its left wheel to the right, those on the right wheel to the left into line, the



Captain General announces the guide and places himself two yards in front of the center of the Commandery.

[If the Standard Guard is present the command *march* is given, so that the rearmost section may break and its threes oblique to the right and left of the Standard Guard.]

Column of sections is then formed by the commands:

1. *Center forward.*
2. *Threes left and right.*
3. **MARCH**, as before explained.

[If the Standard Guard is in line, and it is desired to cause it to occupy its central place in column, the command will be 1. *Center forward.* 2. *Threes left and right.* 3. *Standard Guard, post.* 4. **MARCH.** 5. *Guide left (or right).* At the command *march* the movement is executed as before, except that the Standard Guard steps backward to unmask the approaching columns; the threes of the leading section oblique toward the center until united in section, then march forward. The Standard Guard marks time and resumes the *forward march* as soon as the threes of the section originally in its front unite.]

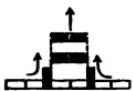
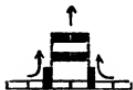
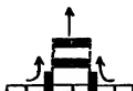
The column is now left in front with the original left threes still on its left, the Senior Warden in advance. To cause the threes to occupy their original position in column of sections, right in front, repeat the commands for the formation of line by three movements, and the formation of column of sections on the center forward as before; or consecutive movements indicated by the following commands: 1. *Threes right (or left) about.* 2. **MARCH.** Each three wheels on a fixed pivot and, re-uniting in section, the column marches to the late rear, then: 1. *By section.* 2. *Threes left.* 3. **MARCH.** (*Vide* page 94).

**To Form Column of Twos, from Column of Sections.**

1. *Center forward.*
2. *Files right and left.*
3. **MARCH.**

At the command *march* the left threes execute *right forward files right*, and the right threes execute *left forward*

*files left;* the Standard Bearer marches forward and the Sword Bearer and Warden form a rank of two in his rear, all maintaining the same distance apart. It now being a column of files, double rank, the leading files shorten the steps until the Captain General seeing that the rear files have closed to their places, commands *forward, march*, when all take the twenty-eight inch step.



To form into column of sections again, command:

1. *Right and left front into sections.*

#### 2. MARCH.

The right files of each section execute *right front into line*, and the left files of each section execute *left front into line*, thus re-forming each section; the rear sections shorten the step until each in succession has gained its proper distance. The Standard Bearer shortens his step and the Sword Bearer and Warden take their places at his right and left.

Similar movements from the center of double sections may be made by similar commands and means.

#### To Wheel in Circles for Display.

From column of sections.

1. *Threes in circle right and left wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left (or right).*

At the command *march* the Senior Warden takes two steps to the front and halts; the Junior Warden steps backward the same distance and halts; the right threes wheel on fixed pivots to the right, numbers one marking time, and conforming to the movement of the marching flank; the left threes wheel to the left in like manner on numbers three. When the circles are completed and the sections re-formed, the column moves forward at the command for the guide. The

Standard Guard marks time in its place until the sections are formed, then marches forward.

Great care should be taken in executing the wheels, so that the three will complete the quarter circle at the same instant; also in re-forming the sections and commencing the *forward march*, at the same instant.

**To Wheel One-half of the Sections at a Time.**

Being in march.

*1. Right threes in circle right wheel. 2. MARCH.*

At the command *march* the right threes wheel as just described, and when completed march forward as before; the Standard Guard by *right side steps* places itself in rear of the wheeling threes and marks time until the circle is completed, then follows the three in its front. When the wheel is nearly completed the Captain General commands, *1. Left threes in circle left wheel*, and adds, *2. MARCH*, so that the left threes will commence the wheel the instant the right threes resume the *forward march*. When the left threes complete the wheel the sections will be re-united, if the movement is executed properly; the column moves forward without command and the Standard Guard oblique to the left into its place.

Similar movements may be executed when marching in line, and by the similar commands and means.

**To Advance Even Sections to the Front of Odd Sections in Column.**

*1. Threes in circle, right and left wheel. 2. Even sections forward. 3. MARCH.*

At the command *march* the right threes of the first, third, and other odd sections wheel in circles to the right, and the left threes of the same sections wheel in circles to the left on movable pivots, each pivot Knight describing a circle whose radius is twelve inches; the second, fourth, and other even

sections march straight forward, passing between the threes of the section in their front as they complete the half circle. The Senior Warden shortens his steps and moves forward, the Junior Warden follows the rear section, if it be an even section, and halts when he has gained the distance of two yards from the section that is wheeling by threes; when the movement is completed he closes to fifty-four inches from the left file of the rear section and follows the column; if the rear be an odd section, he takes two backward steps and halts as before. When the wheeling threes have completed their circles and re-unite in sections, they march forward and are careful to re-gain the proper distance if lost.

To move the former odd, now the even, sections forward into their original places in column, the commands and movements are exactly similar to those just explained.

[If the Standard Guard is in the column it advances between the wheeling threes; the sections regulating the steps so as to maintain their position. The Captain General commands, 1. *To the rear.* 2. MARCH, repeats the movement just explained, and again executes *to the rear, march*, which brings the standard to its original position].

#### To Deploy Column of Sections.

Being at a halt.

1. *On first section deploy column.*
2. *Left.*
3. *FACE.*
4. *Forward.*
5. MARCH.
6. FRONT.

At the first command the Senior Warden faces about and places himself on the right of the first section, whose chief commands, *stand fast*, and immediately dresses it to the right. The other sections face to the left at the third command.

At the command *march* the Standard Guard and all the sections, except the first, being faced to the left, march straight forward; the chief of the second section commands, 1. *By the right flank*, and adds, 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right* the

stant he is opposite his place in line. This section halts in rear of the line at command of its chief, who immediately adds, 1. *Right.* 2. DRESS.

The Guides of the rear sections march abreast of each other and parallel to the second; each chief in succession marching his section by the right flank, and dressing it upon the line as described for the second section. The Junior Warden hastens to the point where the left of the line will rest; the Captain General superintends the alignment and commands front.

If marching command, 1. *On first section deploy column.* 2. *By the left flank.* 3. MARCH. At the third command the first section is halted and dressed by its chief; the rear sections and guard march by the left flank and the movement is completed as before.

1. *On fourth (or rear section, naming it) deploy column.*
2. *Right.* 3. FACE. 4. FORWARD. 5. MARCH.
6. FRONT.

Being at a halt.

At the first command the Senior Warden faces and marches to the right, halts and faces about in front of the chief of the first section; the Junior Warden hastens to place himself in the place vacated by the Senior Warden and faces him; the chief of the fourth section commands, *Fourth section stand fast.*

At the command face the other sections face to the right. At the fifth command the rear section marches straight forward, halts one yard from the Senior Warden and its chief dresses it upon the Wardens; the Senior Warden faces about, marches in prolongation of the line, halts where the right of the Commandery will rest, and again faces about exactly in front of the Junior Warden, facing him. In the mean time the other sections move forward, at the fifth command, led by their chiefs, at section distance, parallel with each other; the guide of the third section commands, 1. *Third*

*section.* 2. *By the left flank*, and adds, 3. MARCH. 4. *Get left* the instant the fourth section is unmasked. When within one yard from the established line its chief halts it and immediately commands, 1. *Third section.* 2. *Left.* 3. DRES when it dresses upon the line.

When the guide of the third section commands *by the left flank, march*, the second section advances section distance and then marches by the left flank in the same manner, as is dressed as described for the third section, and so on with the remaining section.

The Captain General commands *front* when the movement is completed, and the Wardens take their places in line.

*If marching* the commands would be, 1. *On fourth section deploy column.* 2. *By the right flank.* 3. MARCH. 4. FRONT.

The fourth section continues to march straight forward at the caution of its chief; the others march *by the right flank* and the movement is completed as before.

*It is of great importance in all deployments that commands be promptly given and distances accurately maintained.*

1. *On (such a) section (or Standard Guard) deploy column.*
2. *Right and left.*
3. *FACE.*
4. *Forward.*
5. MARCH.
6. FRONT.

Being at a halt.

At the command *march* the sections in front of the designated section deploy to the right; those in rear deploy to the left. The designated section, as soon as unmasked, is marched forward at command of its chief to the line established by the Wardens, as before described (p. 105), and is dressed to the right against the Wardens, who then face about and march in prolongation of the line, halt where the right and left of the line will rest, and each faces toward the other. The other sections are dressed towards the designated section, and the movement is completed upon principles before explained.

If in march the designated section is halted in rear of the line; the sections in front of the designated section are marched by the right flank; those in rear are marched by the left flank, and the movement is completed as before.

**To Form Double Sections from Column of Sections.**

*Remarks.*—The first and second sections form the first double-section; the third and fourth sections form the second double-section, and so on.

The Senior Warden is chief of the leading double-section, the Junior Warden chief of the one in rear. If there are three double-sections the Sword Bearer takes command of the second. If there are four double-sections the standard occupies the center of the second and the Sword Bearer commands it, the Warder commands the third. If more than four the Sword Bearer commands the center double-section having the standard; the Warder commands the one in its rear. The Knight on the right acts as chief of double-section unprovided for. When double sections are dissolved the chiefs resume their places. The Standard Guard may retain its identity and march between the double-sections that were on its right and left if desired; or it may form the left three of a section, in which event it will execute the movement with its section. Or the Standard Bearer alone may march as if the full guard was with him. These various positions are determined by the number of Knights in line.

Being at a halt the Captain General commands:

1. *Form double-sections.*
2. *Left oblique.*
3. **MARCH.**

At the second command the chiefs of the odd numbered sections command, 1. *Forward.* 2. *Guide right,* and the chiefs of the even numbered sections command *left oblique.* At the command *march*, repeated by the chiefs, the odd sections advance section distance, their chiefs command 1. *Section.* 2. **HALT.** 3. *Right.* 4. **DRESS.** The even sections

oblique to the left, their chiefs commanding, 1. *Forward* in time to add 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right* the instant each is opposite his place in line. When one yard from the line the chiefs command, 1. *Section*. 2. HALT. 3. *Right*. 4. DRESS. The chief of each double-section superintends the alignment of his double-section, commands *front*, and places himself two yards in front of its center.

The Standard Guard (or Standard Bearer alone if the "guard" be not with him) obliques to the center of the column between two double-sections; or the Standard Bearer hastens to place himself between the two sections in his front (or rear) as they unite; the Sword Bearer and Warder taking post on the flanks, or taking command as has just been explained, and as previously may have been directed by the Captain General.

If in march, double-sections are formed by the same commands and means except that the even sections are not halted and dressed; the odd sections, instead of halting at section distance, *mark time* at the command of their chiefs, and the chief of each double-section commands, 1. *Forward*, adding 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left* the instant the sections have joined.

#### To Break into Sections from Column of Double Sections.

1. *Right by sections*. 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left*.

At the first command each chief of double-section repeats *Right by section*, and resumes his place in column of sections, the chief of each right section turning his head towards it, but without moving out of his place, commands, *Right section forward*; the chief of each left section in like manner commands: 1. *Left section*. 2. *Mark time*, repeats the command *march*, immediately commands *right oblique*, and adds MARCH, so that each even section may commence the oblique as soon as it is disengaged, adding *forward, guide left* when it has gained its place in column.

To Wheel Subdivisions and the Commandery in Circles  
Consecutively without Halting.

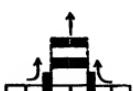
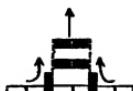
Being in line.

1. *Threes in circle right (or left) wheel.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Sections in circle left (or right) wheel.* 4. MARCH. 5. *Double-sections in circle right (or left) wheel.* 6. MARCH. 7. *Divisions in circle left (or right) wheel.* 8. MARCH. 9. *In circle right (or left) wheel.* 10. MARCH. 11. *Commandery.* 12. HALT. 13. *Left.* 14. DRESS. 15. FRONT; or, 11. *Forward.* 12. *Guide (right or left).* 13. MARCH.

At the second command each three wheels in a full circle to the right on a fixed pivot. When the circle is nearly completed the third command is given in time to add *march* the instant the threes are reunited in line, and each section, in like manner, wheels on a fixed pivot in full circle. The Standard Guard so conducts its wheel on a movable pivot that it will exactly unite with the sections as the line is formed each time. When the sections are united in line the second time, that is, having completed the circle, the sixth command is given (the preparatory commands in each case being given so as to add the command of execution as directed). At this each double-section wheels to the right in a complete circle, and on a fixed pivot, the Standard Guard wheeling as before but in larger circles. When the double-sections unite in line as the circle is completed, the eighth command is given and the divisions wheel as described for double-sections, the Standard Guard wheeling as before described. The line being again re-formed the Commandery is wheeled on a movable pivot by the ninth and tenth commands. In all the wheelings the command *march* is given the instant the line is re-formed, after the circle is completed, so that the smaller subdivisions re-form the line after the full about, instantly break with the next larger sub-divisions, continue the wheelings in the opposite direction and so on.

The Wardens do not wheel with the sub-divisions but face

*files left*; the Standard Bearer marches forward and the Sword Bearer and Warden form a rank of two in his rear, all maintaining the same distance apart. It now being a column of files, double rank, the leading files shorten the steps until the Captain General seeing that the rear files have closed to their places, commands *forward, march*, when all take the twenty-eight inch step.



To form into column of sections again, command:

1. *Right and left front into sections.*

2. MARCH.

The right files of each section execute *right front into line*, and the left files of each section execute *left front into line*, thus re-forming each section; the rear sections shorten the step until each in succession has gained its proper distance. The Standard Bearer shortens his step and the Sword Bearer and Warden take their places at his right and left.

Similar movements from the center of double sections may be made by similar commands and means.

#### To Wheel in Circles for Display.

From column of sections.

1. *Threes in circle right and left wheel.* 2. MARCH.

3. *Guide left (or right).*

At the command *march* the Senior Warden takes two steps to the front and halts; the Junior Warden steps backward the same distance and halts; the right threes wheel on fixed pivots to the right, numbers one marking time, and conforming to the movement of the marching flank; the left threes wheel to the left in like manner on numbers three. When the circles are completed and the sections re-formed, the column moves forward at the command for the guide. The

Standard Guard marks time in its place until the sections are reformed, then marches forward.

Great care should be taken in executing the wheels, so that each three will complete the quarter circle at the same instant; also in re-forming the sections and commencing the *forward, march*, at the same instant.

**To Wheel One-half of the Sections at a Time.**

Being in march.

**1. Right threes in circle right wheel. 2. MARCH.**

At the command *march* the right threes wheel as just described, and when completed march forward as before; the Standard Guard by *right side steps* places itself in rear of the wheeling threes and marks time until the circle is completed, then follows the three in its front. When the wheel is nearly completed the Captain General commands, 1. *Left threes in circle left wheel*, and adds, 2. **MARCH**, so that the left threes will commence the wheel the instant the right threes resume the *forward march*. When the left threes complete the wheel the sections will be re-united, if the movement is executed properly; the column moves forward without command and the Standard Guard oblique to the left into its place.

Similar movements may be executed when marching in line, and by the similar commands and means.

**To Advance Even Sections to the Front of Odd Sections in Column.**

**1. Threes in circle, right and left wheel. 2. Even sections forward. 3. MARCH.**

At the command *march* the right threes of the first, third, and other odd sections wheel in circles to the right, and the left threes of the same sections wheel in circles to the left on movable pivots, each pivot Knight describing a circle whose radius is twelve inches; the second, fourth, and other even

sections march straight forward, passing between the threes of the section in their front as they complete the half circle. The Senior Warden shortens his steps and moves forward; the Junior Warden follows the rear section, if it be an even section, and halts when he has gained the distance of two yards from the section that is wheeling by threes; when the movement is completed he closes to fifty-four inches from the left file of the rear section and follows the column; if the rear be an odd section, he takes two backward steps and halts as before. When the wheeling threes have completed their circles and re-unite in sections, they march forward and are careful to re-gain the proper distance if lost.

To move the former odd, now the even, sections forward into their original places in column, the commands and movements are exactly similar to those just explained.

[If the Standard Guard is in the column it advances between the wheeling threes; the sections regulating the steps so as to maintain their position. The Captain General commands, 1. *To the rear.* 2. MARCH, repeats the movement just explained, and again executes *to the rear, march*, which brings the standard to its original position].

#### To Deploy Column of Sections.

Being at a halt.

1. *On first section deploy column.*
2. *Left.*
3. *FACE.*
4. *Forward.*
5. MARCH.
6. FRONT.

At the first command the Senior Warden faces about and places himself on the right of the first section, whose chief commands, *stand fast*, and immediately dresses it to the right. The other sections face to the left at the third command.

At the command *march* the Standard Guard and all the sections, except the first, being faced to the left, march straight forward; the chief of the second section commands, 1. *By the right flank*, and adds, 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right the*

instant he is opposite his place in line. This section halts in rear of the line at command of its chief, who immediately adds, 1. *Right.* 2. DRESS.

The Guides of the rear sections march abreast of each other and parallel to the second; each chief in succession marching his section *by the right flank*, and dressing it upon the line as described for the second section. The Junior Warden hastens to the point where the left of the line will rest; the Captain General superintends the alignment and commands *front*.

*If marching* command, 1. *On first section deploy column.* 2. *By the left flank.* 3. MARCH. At the third command the first section is halted and dressed by its chief; the rear sections and guard march by the left flank and the movement is completed as before.

1. *On fourth (or rear section, naming it) deploy column.*
2. *Right.* 3. FACE. 4. FORWARD. 5. MARCH.
6. FRONT.

Being at a halt.

At the first command the Senior Warden faces and marches to the right, halts and faces about in front of the chief of the first section; the Junior Warden hastens to place himself in the place vacated by the Senior Warden and faces him; the chief of the fourth section commands, *Fourth section stand fast.*

At the command *face* the other sections face to the right. At the fifth command the rear section marches straight forward, halts one yard from the Senior Warden and its chief dresses it upon the Wardens; the Senior Warden faces about, marches in prolongation of the line, halts where the right of the Commandery will rest, and again faces about exactly in front of the Junior Warden, facing him. In the mean time the other sections move forward, at the fifth command, led by their chiefs, at section distance, parallel with each other; the guide of the third section commands, 1. *Third*

*section.* 2. *By the left flank*, and adds, 3. MARCH. 4. *Gas left* the instant the fourth section is unmasked. When within one yard from the established line its chief halts it and immediately commands, 1. *Third section.* 2. *Left.* 3. DRE when it dresses upon the line.

When the guide of the third section commands *by the left flank, march*, the second section advances section distance and then marches by the left flank in the same manner, as is dressed as described for the third section, and so on with the remaining section.

The Captain General commands *front* when the movement is completed, and the Wardens take their places in line.

*If marching* the commands would be, 1. *On fourth section deploy column.* 2. *By the right flank.* 3. MARCH. 4. FRONT.

The fourth section continues to march straight forward under the caution of its chief; the others march *by the right flank* and the movement is completed as before.

*It is of great importance in all deployments that commands be promptly given and distances accurately maintained.*

1. *On* (such a) *section* (or Standard Guard) *deploy column.*
2. *Right and left.* 3. FACE. 4. FORWARD.
5. MARCH. 6. FRONT.

Being at a halt.

At the command *march* the sections in front of the designated section deploy to the right; those in rear deploy to left. The designated section, as soon as unmasked, is marched forward at command of its chief to the line established by Wardens, as before described (p. 105), and is dressed to right against the Wardens, who then face about and maintain prolongation of the line, halt where the right and left meet the line will rest, and each faces toward the other. The other sections are dressed towards the designated section, and the movement is completed upon principles before explained.

If in march the designated section is halted in rear of the line; the sections in front of the designated section are marched by the *right flank*; those in rear are marched by the *left flank*, and the movement is completed as before.

**To Form Double Sections from Column of Sections.**

*Remarks.*—The first and second sections form the first double-section; the third and fourth sections form the second double-section, and so on.

The Senior Warden is chief of the leading double-section, the Junior Warden chief of the one in rear. If there are three double-sections the Sword Bearer takes command of the second. If there are four double-sections the standard occupies the center of the second and the Sword Bearer commands it, the Warden commands the third. If more than four the Sword Bearer commands the center double-section having the standard; the Warden commands the one in its rear. The Knight on the right acts as chief of double-section unprovided for. When double sections are dissolved the chiefs resume their places. The Standard Guard may retain its identity and march between the double-sections that were on its right and left if desired; or it may form the left three of a section, in which event it will execute the movement with its section. Or the Standard Bearer alone may march as if the full guard was with him. These various positions are determined by the number of Knights in line.

Being at a halt the Captain General commands:

1. *Form double-sections.*
2. *Left oblique.*
3. **MARCH.**

At the second command the chiefs of the odd numbered sections command, 1. *Forward.* 2. *Guide right*, and the chiefs of the even numbered sections command *left oblique*. At the command *march*, repeated by the chiefs, the odd sections advance section distance, their chiefs command 1. *Section.* 2. **HALT.** 3. *Right.* 4. **DRESS.** The even sections

oblique to the left, their chiefs commanding, 1. *Forward* in time to add 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right* the instant each is opposite his place in line. When one yard from the line the chiefs command, 1. *Section*. 2. HALT. 3. *Right*. 4. DRESS. The chief of each double-section superintends the alignment of his double-section, commands *front*, and places himself two yards in front of its center.

The Standard Guard (or Standard Bearer alone if the "guard" be not with him) obliques to the center of the column between two double-sections; or the Standard Bearer hastens to place himself between the two sections in his front (or rear) as they unite; the Sword Bearer and Warder taking post on the flanks, or taking command as has just been explained, and as previously may have been directed by the Captain General.

If in march, double-sections are formed by the same commands and means except that the even sections are not halted and dressed; the odd sections, instead of halting at section distance, *mark time* at the command of their chiefs, and the chief of each double-section commands, 1. *Forward*, adding 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left* the instant the sections have joined.

#### To Break into Sections from Column of Double Sections.

1. *Right by sections*. 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left*.

At the first command each chief of double-section repeats *Right by section*, and resumes his place in column of sections; the chief of each right section turning his head towards it, but without moving out of his place, commands, *Right section forward*; the chief of each left section in like manner commands: 1. *Left section*. 2. *Mark time*, repeats the command *march*, immediately commands *right oblique*, and adds MARCH, so that each even section may commence the oblique as soon as it is disengaged, adding *forward*, *guide left* when it has gained its place in column.

To Wheel Subdivisions and the Commandery in Circles  
Consecutively without Halting.

Being in line.

1. *Threes in circle right (or left) wheel.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Sections in circle left (or right) wheel.* 4. MARCH. 5. *Double-sections in circle right (or left) wheel.* 6. MARCH. 7. *Divisions in circle left (or right) wheel.* 8. MARCH. 9. *In circle right (or left) wheel.* 10. MARCH. 11. *Commandery.* 12. HALT. 13. *Left.* 14. DRESS. 15. FRONT; or, 11. *Forward.* 12. *Guide (right or left).* 13. MARCH.

At the second command each three wheels in a full circle to the right on a fixed pivot. When the circle is nearly completed the third command is given in time to add *march* the instant the threes are reunited in line, and each section, in like manner, wheels on a fixed pivot in full circle. The Standard Guard so conducts its wheel on a movable pivot that it will exactly unite with the sections as the line is formed each time. When the sections are united in line the second time, that is, having completed the circle, the sixth command is given (the preparatory commands in each case being given so as to add the command of execution as directed). At this each double-section wheels to the right in a complete circle, and on a fixed pivot, the Standard Guard wheeling as before but in larger circles. When the double-sections unite in line as the circle is completed, the eighth command is given and the divisions wheel as described for double-sections, the Standard Guard wheeling as before described. The line being again re-formed the Commandery is wheeled on a movable pivot by the ninth and tenth commands. In all the wheelings the command *march* is given the instant the line is re-formed, after the circle is completed, so that the smaller subdivisions re-form the line after the full about, instantly break with the next larger sub-divisions, continue the wheelings in the opposite direction and so on.

The Wardens do not wheel with the sub-divisions but face

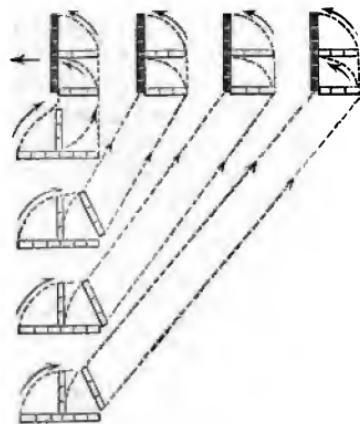
and march from the center in prolongation of the line, or close towards it and face to the proper front on the flanks, so that when the half circle is completed, in each wheel, except the last, they with the sub-divisions will, for the instant only, be in perfect line faced to the late rear; the Wardens marking time, the sub-divisions continuing the wheel; when they are disengaged the Wardens face and retrace their steps, again completing the line faced to the original front the instant the full circle is finished, and so on until the wheel is by Commandery front, when they remain on its flanks.

This may be executed in part, if desired, omitting such of the wheels as may be deemed expedient or desirable.

**To Change Direction of Column, of Sections (Double Sections or Divisions).**

1. *Change direction by the right (or left) flank.* 2. *Threes right (or left).* 3. *MARCH.*

At the second command the chief of the first section commands, 1. *First section.* 2. *Right forward.* 3. *Threes right.*



At the command *march* the first section executes *right forward, threes right*; when the rear three completes the wheel to the left the chief commands, 2. *Threes left.* 2. *MARCH.* 3. *Section.* 4. *HALT.* 5. *Left.* 6. *DRESS.* 7. *FRONT.*

The other sections wheel by threes to the right or half right, and are so conducted by the chiefs so as to enter the new column parallel to the first section. As each section arrives in rear of the one next preceding, it is formed in line to the left and

dressed to the left. The Wardens quickly gain their places in the column and assist in the alignment of the guides as heretofore explained.

If the column be of double-sections or divisions, each chief halts when near the point where the left of his division will rest in column and allows his division to march past him.

**To Advance by the Right or Left of Double Sections.**

Being in line.

1. *Double-sections.*
2. *Right (or left) forward.*
3. *Threes right (or left).*
4. MARCH.
5. *Guide (right or left).*

At the third command the Senior Warden places himself in front of the left file of the first three; the Junior Warden quickly places himself in front of the left file of the right three of the double-section on the left of the Commandery. The other chiefs of double-sections take the same relative position, and the movement is completed as explained for divisions.

Line or column is formed by similar commands and means as are described for divisions.

**To Break by Right of Subdivisions to the Rear into Column.**

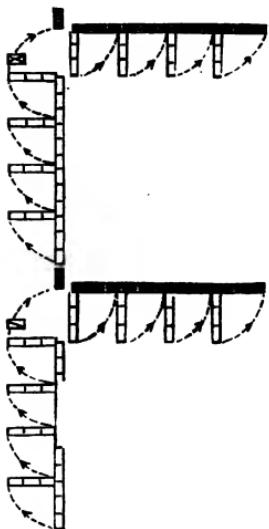
Being in line at a halt.

1. *Right of sections, rear into column.*
2. *Threes right.*
3. MARCH.
4. *Threes left.*
5. MARCH.
6. *Commandery.*
7. HALT.
8. *Left.*
9. DRESS.
10. FRONT, or 6. *Guide left.*

At the first command the chief of each section cautions the right three that it will have to *right about*. At the third command the threes will wheel to the right on fixed pivots. The right three of each section will then change direction to the right (late rear) on a movable pivot; the other three of each section moving forward and changing direction on the same ground as its right three. The

Captain General, seeing the movement nearly completed, commands, 4. *Threes left*, in time to add 5. MARCH, the instant the left of the left threes has reached the line lately occupied by the Commandery, and adds, 6. *Commandery*. 7. HALT. The left guides of sections exactly cover each other under direction of the Wardens and the chiefs of sections; at the tenth command the Wardens take their proper places in column. If the command for the guide is given the column moves forward without halting.

The Standard Guard wheels about and marches into its place in column, then wheels to the left, regulating its steps so as to maintain its place.



*Divisions (or double-sections)*

break to the rear into column from line, by similar commands and means, except that the chiefs of divisions, etc., at the first command, place themselves in front of their divisions and caution the first three as before, repeat the third command, place themselves on the marching flank of the leading three in their division, wheel with it and halt on the late line, so that the file on the marching flanks of the next threes, in passing to the rear, will graze the chief's right arm. When the rear three nearly completes the wheel each chief of division (or double-section) commands, 4. *Threes left*. 5. MARCH. 6. *Division (or double section)*.

7. HALT; the left guide of the division places himself so that his left arm will lightly touch the chief's breast, who then gives the eighth, ninth and tenth commands (in lieu

of Captain General, as explained for the same movement by sections), and places himself in front of the center of his division or double-section.

*Similar movements by files* without the wheelings of threes, being at a halt, are made thus:

The Captain General commands, 1. *Right of sections rear into column.* 2. *Right.* 3. *FACE.* 4. *Forward.* 5. *MARCH.* 6. *Commandery.* 7. *HALT.* 8. *Left.* 9. *FACE.* 10. *Left.* 11. *DRESS.* 12. *FRONT;* or, 6. *By the left flank.* 7. *MARCH.* 8. *Guide left.*

At the third command the Knights at the right of sections (chiefs) come to an *about face*, and at the fifth command move straight to the rear; the others follow, turning on the same ground. When the last Knight or file is about to turn to the rear the Captain General halts the Commandery, faces it to the left, and dresses it as explained, or marches it by the left flank into column.

1. *Right of sections rear into column.* 2. *By the right flank.* 3. *MARCH.* 4. *By the left flank.* 5. *MARCH.* 6. *Guide left.*  
Being in line marching.

At the third command the right file of each section executes *to the rear, march*, and marches straight to the rear; the others face and march to the right. On arriving at the point where the right file marched to the rear, each file of that section in succession follows in his trace, being careful to keep closed to facing distance, each section executing the same movement at the same instant. The fifth command is given the instant the last files are about to turn to the rear, so that they do not in fact turn but continue to march straight forward; or the command may be delayed until he turns to the rear so that all march by the left flank at that command.

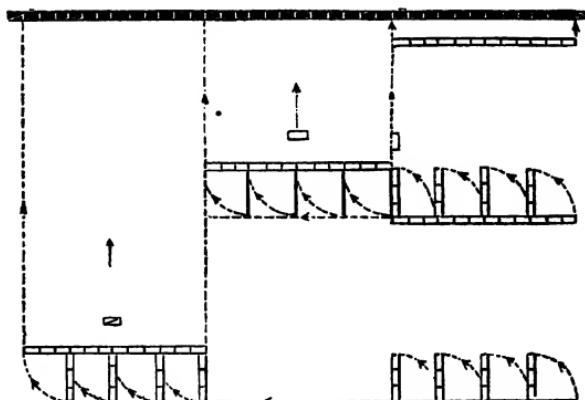
The officers take their positions as heretofore explained.  
Divisions and double-sections are formed into column by files from the right of divisions to the rear, by similar commands and means.

The Eminent Commander and Staff and Standard Guard conform to the movements, gaining their position in column by wheeling or by files, according to the commands.

**To Deploy Column of Double-Sections.**

Being at a halt.

2. *On first double-section deploy column. 2. Threes left (or right). 3. MARCH. 4. FRONT.*



At the first command the chief of the first double-section cautions it to *stand fast*, and places himself three yards in front of his place on the right; the left guide steps three yards straight to the front; the other chiefs repeat *threes left*, and quickly place themselves two yards in front of the left guides, facing the left. At the command *march* the chief of the first double-section commands, 1. *First double-section. 2. Right. 3. DRESS. 4. FRONT;* at the third command it dresses on the line between the chief and left guide. The other double-sections wheel by threes to the left, the chiefs repeating the command to *march*. The chief of the second double-section stands fast, and when the left of his double-sec-

tion approaches him, commands, 1. *Second double-section.* 2. *Threes right.* 3. MARCH. 4. *Guide right.* The third command is given the instant the front rank of the rear three (if there be two ranks, or if not, then when the rear three) arrives opposite the place of the right file when in line. On approaching the line the chief commands:

1. *Second double-section.* 2. HALT.

At the command *halt*, given at three yards from the line, the double-section halts, and its left guide quickly places himself on the line where its left will rest, and at the same time the chief, if his place in line is on its right, places himself at the side of the Knight on the left of the first double-section, and immediately commands, 1. *Right.* 2. DRESS. 3. FRONT. The guide of the third double-section marches abreast of and parallel to the second; its chief having advanced two yards, after the command *threes right, march* from the chief of the second, halts in his own person, and when the right of his double section approaches him commands, 1. *Third double-section.* 2. *Threes right.* 3. MARCH. 4. *Guide right,* and, marching in front of its center, conducts it to within three yards of the line, when he halts and dresses it to the right, as just explained for the second double-section.

If there are more than three double-sections the others execute the movement as described for the second and third.

If *marching* the chief of the first double-section halts it at the command *march*, and the movement is executed as before.

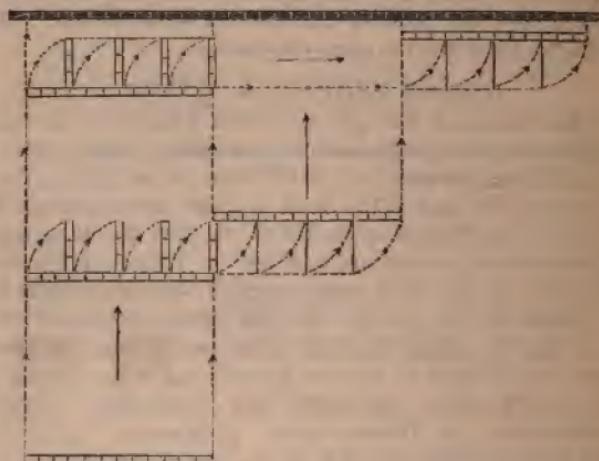
1. *On third double-section deploy column.* 2. *Threes right (or left).* 3. MARCH.

Being at a halt.

At the second command the chief of the third double-section cautions it to stand fast.

At the command *march* all the double-sections, except the third, wheel by threes to the right, the chiefs repeating the

second and third commands; the chief of the first double-section conducts his double-section to the right in prolongation of its former front; the chief of the section halts oppo-



site the right of the third, and when the rear of his double-section approaches, commands, 1. *Second double-section*. 2. *Threes left*. 3. MARCH. 4. *Double-section*. 5. HALT. The third command if given the instant the third double-section is unmasked.

The chief of the third double-section when he sees it nearly unmasked, commands, 1. *Third double-section*. 2. FORWARD. 3. *Guide left*. 4. MARCH. When this double-section reaches the ground from which the first one moved to the right, the chief commands, 1. *Third double-section*. 2. HALT. At the command *halt* the chief and left guide quickly place themselves three yards in front of their places in line, and the chief commands:

1. *Third double-section*. 2. *Left*. 3. DRESS. 4. FRONT.

If there are more than three double-sections each conforms to what is explained for the second, and each is conducted to the line and dressed as explained for the third.

The chief of the first dresses his double-section to the left as soon as the command *front* is given to the second double-section.

*If in march* the chief of the third double-section halts it at the command *march*; the movement is executed as before.

*To deploy the column faced to the rear* on the first or third double-section without first causing it to wheel about by threes, the Captain General adds, *faced to the rear* after *deploy column*. The movement is executed as already explained, except each double-section marches three yards beyond the line, then wheels about by threes and halts, after which it is dressed toward the double-section upon which the deployment is made.

#### Deployments on Interior Double-sections.

1. *On (such) double-section (division or Standard Guard) deploy column.* 2. *Threes right and left.* 3. MARCH.

At the command *march* the double-sections in front of the one designated deploy to the right; those in rear deploy to the left. The designated double-section, as soon as unmasked, is conducted on the line of the first double-section with the guide right, and is dressed to the right. The other double-sections are dressed towards the designated double-section.

#### To Deploy Column of Threes in Open Order.

Being in march.

1. *On right three (so many yards) take distance.* 2. MARCH.

At the second command the leading three marches straight forward; the others *halt*. When the second three has gained six yards (if the number is not given in the command) from the three in front, it resumes the full step at the command *forward, march*, by its chief, and so on in succession to the rear of the column.

The Captain General then commands:

1. *On center deploy.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide center.*



The Knight in the center of each three and the Standard Bearer march straight to the front, shortening the steps. The Knights on the flanks oblique to the right and left until an interval of three yards from the center is gained, when all turn and march straight forward, taking the full step. The guides are the center Knights who are careful to preserve their intervals and distances.

The Wardens place themselves in front and rear of the center on a line with the guides, and three yards (or one-half the given distance) from the advance and rearmost three.

#### To Deploy Column of Sections, etc.

Distance from the right is gained as just explained.

1. *On right (or left) center deploy.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide center.*

The movement is executed as in column of threes, except that the Knights on the right of the center, according to the command, march straight forward, the others oblique right and left as commanded. The Standard Bearer marches forward so as to occupy, as near as practicable, the center of the column; the Sword Bearer and Warder oblique to the right and left to the given interval. The Wardens are in front and rear of the center as before, and on a line between them is the standard. The guides are the Knights on whom, or from whom, the deployment was made.

#### To Close into Column Again.

1. *To full distance close column and intervals.*
2. MARCH.

The Knights on the flanks oblique toward the center, and when they have gained their places in threes (or other sub-

divisions from which deployment was made), again march to the front, being careful to preserve the alignment and exactly cover the corresponding Knights in front, closing to wheeling distance immediately; the leading threes shorten the steps, as do each three in succession, when they have gained the proper distance. At the command *forward, march*, all resume the twenty-eight inch step; the Wardens also regain their places, so as to be ready to step off with the column at the command.

#### To Close on the Center only

Without disturbing the distance between the threes the Captain General commands:

1. *On center close intervals.*
2. MARCH.

The Knights gradually regain their positions on the center, re-forming threes, by oblique steps gaining ground forward, keeping the shoulders square to the front and maintaining the alignment.

#### To Close Threes to Wheeling Distance

Before or after closing the intervals between the Knights of each three the Captain General commands:

1. *To wheeling* (or such) *distance close column.*
2. MARCH.

The files in front shorten their steps, and when the threes are closed to the designated distance, as before explained, the Captain General commands *forward, march*, and all take the twenty-eight inch step.

If the command be *double time* the leading three continues the march in *quick time*, those in rear close in *double time*, until having gained the distance indicated, each in succession marches in quick time, taking the step from the guide in front.

#### To Deploy Line by Files to the Front.

1. *On Standard* (right or left file) *deploy;*
2. MARCH.
- or, 2. *Double time.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command the Standard Bearer advances by short steps straight to the front; the Knights on his right

oblique to the right, those on his left oblique to the left until each in succession has gained an interval of three yards from the standard or the Knight next to them towards the Standard Bearer, when they turn and march to the front dressing toward the center, which should never be passed. When all have arrived in line the Captain General commands, *forward, march*, and all take the full step.

If the command be *double time* the Standard Bearer advances with the full step; the others oblique as described, but in double time, taking the step from the Standard Bearer as they arrive on the line,

**To Deploy Line in Open Order by the Flank.**

1. *By the right (or left) flank take intervals.* 2. MARCH.
3. Commandery. 4. HALT; or, 3. *By the left (or right) flank.* 4. MARCH. 5. Guide right (left or center).

Being in line, single rank.

At the second command the Commandery faces to the right and, if in march, halts; the Senior Warden alone continues the march in prolongation of the former line, the others follow successively at the distance of three yards, each steadily in trace of his predecessor until the Knight, or Junior Warden, in rear of the column has his interval, when at the fourth command all halt, pause the ninetieth of a minute, and face to the former front. Or,

The line is re-formed and moves to the front, at the command *by the left flank, march.*

1. *On Standard (right or left center).* 2. *By the right and left flanks take intervals.* 3. MARCH. 4. Commandery.
5. HALT; or, 4. *By the left and right flanks.*
5. MARCH. 6. Guide center (right or left).

Being in line, single rank.

The Captain General points with his sword to the center file on which the movement is to be made, and at the third

command those on its right face to the right; those on its left face to left, and the movement is executed upon the principles before explained.

#### To Extend Intervals.

1. *By the right (or left) flank to (so many) yards extend intervals.* 2. MARCH. 3. Commandery. 4. HALT; or, 3. *By the left (or right flank.* 4. MARCH.

The movement is executed as before explained.

If desired to deploy from line or column to a greater interval than three yards, the number of yards is stated in the command and the movement is executed on the same principles.

#### To Close the Intervals by the Flank.

1. *By the left (or right) flank close intervals.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march* the left guide stands fast (or if in march, halts), the others march by the left flank and successively halt and face to the front upon closing to their places.

#### To March Files to the Rear from Column of Threes at Open Order (Deployed).

Being in march.

1. *To the rear.* 2. MARCH; or,
1. Counter-march. 2. *By files right (or left).* 3. MARCH.



At the second command the Senior Warden faces to the right, and having arrived opposite the center, between numbers one and two, again faces to the right and marches to the rear. As he turns to the rear the Captain General commands *march*, at which the leading number two faces to the right, and when in rear of the Senior Warden, turns and follows in his trace; number three of the leading three turns to the right, and

when he arrives at a point half way between the place from which he turned and the place just occupied by number two, he faces and marches to the rear. Number one executes the same movements, turning to the rear when he has gained ground to the right equal to one-half the distance between his own position and that of number two before the movement commenced. The others advance and follow exactly in trace of their fraters in front, turning on the same ground.

The alignment and intervals should be carefully preserved. The movement to the left is similarly executed.

#### Order in Echelon.

Being in line at a halt.

1. *Threes (or sections) on center (right or left), front into echelon.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide center (right or left).*

At the first command the Sword Bearer cautions the Standard Guard to 1. *Forward.* 2. *Guide center,* and the chiefs of other threes caution, in a low tone: *stand fast;* at

the command MARCH the Standard Guard marches straight forward; when it has advanced fifty-four inches the threes next on its right and left, at the caution of their chiefs, given in a low tone, take



up the march, and so on until the entire line is in march.

The Knight on the right and left of each three toward the center is the guide of his three, and is careful to preserve the designated distance from the standard or preceding three, and exactly opposite his place in line, as well as to keep dressed on the three opposite to him.

The Wardens also take up the march at the prescribed distance, and the Captain General places himself in front of

the standard at the same distance, or may march in rear of the standard on a line with the Wardens.

If the Captain General desires the distance to be greater or less he adds to the first command, after the word "center," *at (so many) yards distance*, and the movement is similarly executed.

Sections in echelon is similarly executed.

1. *Threes (or files) on right (or left) of divisions front into echelon.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right (or left).*

Being in line.

Each division executes the movement as explained for the Commandery, the right three of each division marching forward at the second command; the second three of each division moving forward as explained when the first has gained fifty-four inches, and so on. The Senior Warden places himself on the right of the leading three of the first division; the Junior Warden quickly places himself on the left and abreast of the rear three of the left division.

The Standard Guard maintains its place in the center abreast of the leading threes.

#### To March in Echelon to the Rear.

1. *Threes right (or left) about.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide (right or left).*

The Wardens wheel as number three of a rank of three into their places *in echelon.*

#### To March in Echelon by the Flank.

1. *Threes right (or left).* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide (right, left or center).*

The Wardens wheel so as to gain the same relative position when the movement is completed.

Sections may be wheeled to the right or left, changing direction in echelon.

**To Re-form the Line.**

1. *On center* (or such a subdivision) *front into line.*
2. **MARCH.**
3. *On center.*
4. **DRESS.**

At the first command the Sword Bearer, or chief of the leading subdivision, cautions it that it will have to halt; the chiefs of other threes or subdivisions, to the right and left in rear of the center, command *forward*, and repeat the command *march*, at the same time the Sword Bearer, or chief of the leading subdivision, commands it to halt; the three on each side of the center halt and dress toward the center on arriving in rear of the line, so that the threes opposite each other *in echelon* will halt and dress at the same instant. When the last has dressed the Captain General commands *front*.

**To Form Sections in Echelon from Threes in Echelon.**

Threes being in march at four yards distance in echelon, command:

1. *Odd threes in circles right wheel.*
2. **MARCH.**

At the command *march* the first, third and other odd threes wheel to the right, on fixed pivots, completing full circles; the even threes continue the march and unite in sections with the odd threes the instant they have completed the circle, and the sections move forward in echelon without halting. The sections may be wheeled by similar commands and means forming double-sections in echelon, which may also be wheeled in like manner forming divisions, and so on, until the line is formed. Or,

Line is formed by commands and means before explained.

**To Form in Echelon from Column of Files.**

Being in march, double ranks.

1. *Files right and left into echelon.*
2. **MARCH.**

At the command *march* the two leading Knights place themselves about one foot apart, and then by short steps march

straight forward; the other left files oblique to the left, and each in succession will resume the forward, without command, when his right shoulder shall exactly cover the left shoulder of the Knight next in front. The right files gain ground to the right in a similar manner, the left shoulder of each exactly covering the right shoulder of the Knight next in front. The Standard Guard forms in line and marks time at command of its chief until it gains its proper place in the center and on a line with the rearmost Knights (Wardens) in the columns; the Senior Warden quickly places himself at the right and rear of the right column, and the Junior Warden at the left and rear of the left column of files *in echelon*.

The Captain General commands *forward*, adding MARCH the instant the movement is completed, and places himself in front of the leading files.

If the lines are small, ground is gradually gained to the right and left, the Knights keeping the shoulders square to the front, as they may have been previously instructed by the Captain General; or he may indicate it by giving as the first command, *files bear right and left into echelon*.

#### To Re-form Column of Files.

1. *Files right and left into column.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command the Senior Warden takes his place at the head of the column.

The leading Knight advances by shortened steps; the others oblique toward the center, regulating the step so that each double file will successively re-unite, then, turning to the front, will follow in trace of those immediately in their lead. The Standard Guard marches forward to its place.

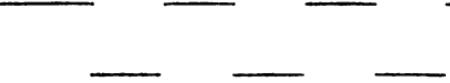
#### To Open and Close Ranks in Echelon from Line.

1. *By turns.* 2. *Threes front into echelon.* 3. MARCH.

At the third command, given as the right foot strikes the ground, the left threes of each section *mark time*, the right

threes advance until the right foot has been planted the third time (*i. e.* six steps), when they too mark time; the rear threes having planted the right foot the third time, step off with the left foot, pass between the threes in their front, and advance six steps in front of them, being twelve steps from their first position, when they mark time again, and so on by turns until the Captain General desires the line to advance together, when he commands, 1. *Forward*. 2. *Guide right* (or *left*). 3. **MARCH**; the third command being given the instant the line is re-formed.

The Wardens successively advance with the threes in front.



Or, he commands, *odd threes in circle right wheel*, adding **MARCH** the instant the line is formed, when the odd threes wheel full about; the even threes march between the wheeling threes, which advance as soon as they complete the circle.

If the Captain General desires the threes to march in column, he commands *threes right* (or *left*) in time to add *march* the instant the threes are united in line. Or the line may be halted the instant it is re-united and is dressed by the usual commands.

**To form Line Obliquely and Files in Echelon from Threes in Echelon, or Sections in Column.**

Being *on right in echelon*, marching, (represented by the left half of plate, page 122) command:

1. *Threes half left into line*. 2. **MARCH**. 3. *Guide right*.

At the command *march* the threes wheel to the left one-eighth of a circle. The leading three having wheeled, marches straight forward shortening the steps a little; the Senior Warden places himself on its right; the others oblique to the right, preserving the line with the right three, until each in

succession has closed the interval, when it marches to the front and dresses to the right. As the last three, with the Junior Warden on its left, faces to the front the Captain General commands *forward, MARCH*, and all take the full step.

If the line is a short one the leading three takes the full step, the rear threes, if so instructed, may lengthen their steps until the intervals are closed, the command to forward march being omitted.

If the threes are in echelon, center in front, as represented in the plate (page 122), the command is:

1. *Threes half right and left into line.*
2. *Rear threes by the left and right flanks close intervals.*
3. **MARCH.**
4. *Left and right oblique.*
5. **MARCH.**

The Standard Guard being in front, as a set of three.

At the third command the leading three halts; its flank files face half right and left, outwardly, and take one twenty-two inch side step to their right and left, from number two; the right threes wheel to the right forty-five degrees, then face and march to the left, successively closing the intervals towards the center of the Commandery (now the apex of a triangle with two sides) halt and face to the right into line; the left threes half wheel to the left, face and close the intervals to the right, and *left face* into line, both lines dressing upon the Knights at the apex of the triangle; the Wardens close on the rear, or flanks farthest from the center of the Commandery.

At the fourth command both lines *half face* toward the center; that is, to the same front as when the movement was commenced, and at the fifth command all march forward, preserving the distance and triangular form of the echelon movement.

*Column of sections* may be formed into echelon of files by similar commands and means (omitting the second command); the leading section breaks by threes half right and

left and halts; the others wheel in like manner and advance obliquely into lines and halt; they are then marched to their former front by the last two commands. The Senior Warden may form the angle in front or goes to the rear as before according to previous instructions.

#### General Remarks, Apropos.

In the formations of figures, etc., no rigid rules can be given, as the number of officers or Knights, the presence of the Standard Bearer alone, or of the full guard, would necessitate some modification in each case by the officer in charge, or interminable explanations in the tactics.

The *commands* of the chiefs of threes are in fact merely cautions to enable the threes to move together, and may be dispensed with if so instructed by the Captain General. *This rule is general* and may be applied to sections at the discretion of the officer in charge.

#### To Form Column Again.

##### 1. Form column. 2. MARCH.

At the command *march* numbers one and three of the Standard Guard take their places at the side of the Standard Bearer, and the guard marches forward by short steps; the leading files of the right threes face to the left and march to the center, followed by their comrades of the same three; the leading files of the left threes face and march to the right, followed by the others of their threes. The threes of each section unite at the center, face toward the head of the column, and regulate the steps so as to gain their proper distance. When all the sections have united, the Captain General commands, 1. *Forward.* 2. *MARCH.* 3. *Guide left (or right).*

Column of threes may be formed by similar commands and means when the right or left is in front, *in echelon*.

**To Form Line from Files in Echelon.**

Line to the front is formed by means and commands similar to those explained on page 124; the files obliquing opposite their places then march straight to the front, halting in rear of the line and dressing toward the point of rest.

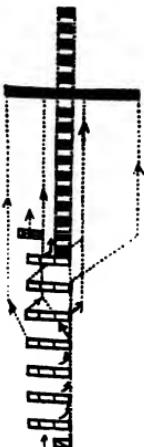
**To Form Cross from Column of Threes.**

Being in march, single rank.

1. *Form cross.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Forward.*
4. MARCH.
5. *Guide center.*

At the second command the Senior Warden places himself in front of the right file of the leading three and shortens his steps; the first three executes *right forward files right*, closing upon the Warden; the third three takes one oblique step to the right and marches forward so that its number two will close upon the rear file of the first three; the second three takes four lengthened oblique steps to the right and marches forward, forming in line with the third three; the fourth three takes two oblique lengthened steps to the left and marches forward, forming in line with the second and third three; the fifth, sixth and seventh three execute *right forward files right*, closing in column of files upon number two of the third three. The threes shorten their steps upon arriving in their places. The J. W. follows in rear of the column. Seeing the movement completed the Capt. Gen. gives the concluding commands, and places himself at the head of the cross.

If there be but five threes the movement is similarly executed, the third three forming the left arm of the cross.



If there are eight threes, with the Standard Guard in the column, the first and second threes form the upper arm of the cross; the third three oblique to the right; the fourth three oblique to the left, the Standard Guard oblique twenty-two inches to the right and marches straight forward; the four threes in rear form the lower arm of the cross, upon principles explained before. At the command *mark* the Senior Warden quickly places himself on the right of the third three, and the Junior Warden quickly places himself on the left of the fourth three; so that the Wardens will be on the flanks of the horizontal arm of the cross and the standard at the angles in its center. The Captain General marches about four yards to the left and abreast of the Junior Warden or at the top as before.

Cross from column of sections is formed by similar commands and means.

Supernumerary threes close in column as the base of the cross, or may form in triangle, etc., as hereafter explained, the command being: *Four threes form triangle, etc.*

#### To Reduce Cross to Column

Or like subdivisions from which it was formed.

*1. Form column. 2. MARCH. 3. Guide left.*

At the command *mark* the threes that are in column of files execute the *left front face line*; the first three continue the march; the second three *left oblique* into column; the third three *marks time*, until it is disengaged when it oblique into its place in column; the fourth three *right oblique* to its place. The threes having re-formed the column *mark time*, when their guides are in trace of the guide in front, and successively advance as each gains its distance.

The Captain General gives the third command as soon as the movement is completed.

**To Form Greek Cross from Column of Sections, etc.**

The arms of a Greek Cross are so nearly equal that the difference it not readily perceived. The same number of threes, sections, etc., form each arm of the cross; usually the Standard Guard is in the center, the Senior Warden at the top (in advance), and the Junior Warden in rear at the base. These may be changed when necessary to equalize the limbs of the cross.

*1. Form Greek Cross. 2. MARCH. 3. Guide center.*

At the first command the sections execute the following movements, the chiefs giving the commands if necessary to insure prompt action: First and fourth sections, *right forward files right*, forming the advance and rear arms of the cross; second section and Standard Guard, *right oblique*, forming the right arm and center; third section *left oblique*, forming the left arm, as described before for the Passion Cross.

Greek Cross from column of threes and double-sections is formed by similar means, the chiefs giving the commands for their double-sections, causing them to take the short step, to march forward, etc., at the proper time. As the cross is completed the chiefs promptly take their places and the cross moves forward at the command of the Captain General.

**To Reduce Greek Cross to Column**

From which it was formed, command,

*1. Form column. 2. MARCH. 3. Guide left.*

At the first command the following movements are executed as indicated by the commands, viz.:

First and fourth sections. *Left front into line.*

Second section and Standard Guard. *Left oblique.*

Third section. *Right oblique.*

And the movement is completed as explained for the Passion Cross.

If there are eight threes, with the Standard Guard in the column, the first and second threes form the upper arm of the cross; the third three oblique to the right; the fourth three oblique to the left; the Standard Guard oblique twenty-two inches to the right, and marches straight forward; the four threes in rear form the lower arm of the cross, upon principles explained before. At the command *march* the Senior Warden quickly places himself on the right of the third three, and the Junior Warden quickly places himself on the left of the fourth three; so that the Wardens will be on the flanks of the horizontal arm of the cross and the standard at the angles in its center. The Captain General marches about four yards to the left and abreast of the Junior Warden or at the top as before.

Cross from column of sections is formed by similar commands and means.

Supernumerary threes close in column as the base of the cross, or may form in triangle, etc., as hereafter explained, the command being, 2. *Rear threes form triangle*, etc.

#### To Reduce Cross to Column

Of like subdivisions from which it was formed.

1. *Form column.* 2. *MARCH.* 3. *Guide left.*

At the command *march* the threes that are in column of files execute the *left front into line*; the first three continue the march; the second three *left oblique* into column; the third three *marks time*, until it is disengaged when it oblique into its place in column; the fourth three *right oblique* to its place. The threes having re-formed the column *mark time*, when their guides are in trace of the guide in front, and successively advance as each gains its distance.

The Captain General gives the third command as soon as the movement is completed.

**To Form Greek Cross from Column of Sections, etc.**

The arms of a Greek Cross are so nearly equal that the difference is not readily perceived. The same number of sections, etc., form each arm of the cross; usually the Standard Guard is in the center, the Senior Warden at the front (in advance), and the Junior Warden in rear at the base. The may be changed when necessary to equalize the limbs of the cross.

**. Form Greek Cross. 2. MARCH. 3. Guide center.**

On the first command the sections execute the following movements, the chiefs giving the commands if necessary to insure prompt action: First and fourth sections, *right front files right*, forming the advance and rear arms of the cross; second section and Standard Guard, *right oblique*, forming the right arm and center; third section *left oblique*, forming the left arm, as described before for the Passion Cross.

Form Greek Cross from column of threes and double-sections is effected by similar means, the chiefs giving the commands for double-sections, causing them to take the short step, to march forward, etc., at the proper time. As the cross is completed the chiefs promptly take their places and the cross marches forward at the command of the Captain General.

**To Reduce Greek Cross to Column:**

1 which it was formed, command,

**1. Form column. 2. MARCH. 3. Guide left.**

On the first command the following movements are executed as indicated by the commands, viz.:

First and fourth sections. *Left front into line.*

Second section and Standard Guard. *Left oblique.*

Third section. *Right oblique.*

and the movement is completed as explained for the Passion Cross.

**To Form Greek and Passion Cross from Column of Threes.**

The Wardens, Standard Guard and eight threes being in the column marching.

- |     |  |  |
|-----|--|--|
| [2] |  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Form Cross.</i></li> <li>2. <i>Leading threes form Greek Cross.</i></li> <li>3. <b>MARCH.</b></li> <li>4. <i>Guide center.</i></li> </ol> |
|-----|--|--|

At the command *march* the four threes, nearest to the head of the column, form Greek Cross; the first and fourth threes executing *right forward files right*; the second three oblique to the right and the third three oblique to the left, forming the several arms of the cross, as before explain the Senior Warden quickly placing himself in its center; the Sword Bearer places himself forty-four inches to the front and shortens his steps; the Standard Bearer quickly takes the place thus vacated, and the Warden places himself between the two; the Junior Warden quickly places himself in front of the Sword Bearer, and the cross is formed as before explained with the standard in its center.

The Captain General places himself at the head of the Passion Cross and commands *forward*, **MARCH**, and all move forward.

Care should be taken to preserve the proper distance between the two crosses, which will result from the same step being taken by the Knights at the heads of both.

The cross is reduced by commands and means similar to those before explained.

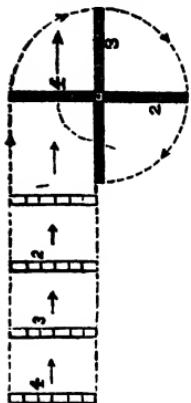
Supernumerary threes may form at the base as shown in illustration (2), or may form a second Greek Cross. In the latter case the second command would be, 2. *Leading and rear threes form, etc.*

The crosses are reduced by the commands, etc., as before.

#### To Display Greek Cross and Reduce it to Column again.

Being in column marching.

1. *Display Greek Cross.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide center.*



At the command *march* the Senior Warden continues the march full two yards straight forward and halts; the leading section wheels to the right (or left, according to previous instructions) in a complete circle, the pivot Knight taking short steps, so as to describe a circle of about one yard in diameter; the three sections in its rear march forward until each in succession has gained the ground from which the first section commenced the wheel, when each wheels, following exactly in trace of the preceding section. The chief of the leading section commands *forward*, in a low tone, in time to

*add march* the instant it has gained the ground from which it commenced the wheel, and this section marches straight to the front; the others follow it in column from the same point. These commands should be loud enough to be heard only by the section to whom they are addressed, that the cross may appear to dissolve without command.

The guide is then on the same flank that it was before the movement commenced, and without command.

The Junior Warden places himself on the left of the fifth section, and during the display the rear sections *halt* at his command, given the instant before the fourth section commences, and resume the forward march when that section completes the wheel, so that they may not be too close during the display of the cross, and may move forward and keep the proper distance as soon as it is reduced.

The sections, in wheeling, form right angles with each other, and the alignment must be perfect.

If the Standard Guard is between either of these four sections, it oblique to the center as soon as the section in its front is about to commence the wheel, and quickly forms a close group facing each other (inward), the standard supported in the center by the three; it resumes its place in column when the same section begins the forward march. If so instructed the Standard Bearer may be detached and, along with the standard, occupy the center of the cross; or the Captain General may do so.

If there are eight sections (or threes) two crosses will be displayed at the same moment and in the same manner, the Senior Warden filling the center of the leading cross, the Junior Warden that of the one in the rear, the Standard Guard oblique to the center, between the two crosses, and halts. Or, the rear sections form square, triangle, etc., and reduce them as the cross is reduced. These combinations are numerous, and when well executed have a fine effect. It is not so well, however, in the *display* as in the *formation* of Greek and other crosses.

The object in wheeling to the right is that the left guides may be on the marching flanks. If so instructed, the cross may be displayed to the left, and in absence of the Standard Guard the Captain General, with the Wardens, may place themselves in the center, back to back, thus: ∴. They resume their places in column as soon as the leading section commences the *forward*.

**To Form Greek Cross from Line.****Greek Cross. 2. MARCH. 3. Forward. 4. MARCH.****5. Guide Center.**

sections being in line, marching, with the Standard in the center.

first command the officers command as follows:

Warden—**1. First section. 2. Threes left.**

Warden—**1. Fourth section. 2. To the rear. 3. Threes**

**Standard Bearer—1. Center sections and Standard Guard. time.**

command **march**, given as the right foot is coming round, the first section wheels by threes, on movable to the left and marches in column of threes, parallel to of the second section, towards the center; the center and Standard Guard **mark time**; the fourth section **to the rear, march**, and immediately wheels by on movable pivots, to the left, then marches in column s across the rear of the third section to the center. he leading three of the first section reaches the front standard Bearer it executes **by the right flank**, forming of files in front of the standard; the second three s and executes the same movement from the same the first section forming the upper limb of the cross, S. W. at the top.

leading (being the first) three of the fourth section column of files in rear of the Standard Bearer, by **by the left flank**, and **marking time**; the second the fourth section **right oblique** to the rear of its first and executes **by the left flank**, forming with it the mb of the cross, with the Junior Warden in its rear.

Captain General gives the fourth command, and the oves forward.

instructed, the flank sections may wheel by section m the upper and lower parts of the cross without g by threes, and the commands of the Wardens are

changed accordingly to, 1. *First section.* 2. *Left wheel*, etc.

Similar formations are made by double sections, threes, etc. to form Passion and other crosses, with or without the Standard Guard.

**To Reduce Greek Cross to Line.**

1. *Form line.*
2. *MARCH.*
3. *Forward.*
4. *MARCH.*
5. *Guide right (or left).*

At the first command the Senior Warden, placing himself on its right, commands : 1. *First section.* 2. *By the right flank.*

Junior Warden, placing himself on its left : 1. *Fourth section.* 2. *By the left flank.* Sword Bearer : 1. *Center sections and Standard Guard.* 2. *Mark time.*

At the command *march* the first section executes *by the right flank*, forming line, and is conducted by the Senior Warden to the right of the second section, caused to wheel on a movable pivot to the right, then executes *to the rear, march*, and *marks time* in its place on the right of the line, in the mean time the lower limb of the cross (fourth section) executes *by the left flank*, is conducted by the Junior Warden to the left of third section, and caused to *right wheel*, (on a movable pivot) to its place on the left.

The Wardens take their places on the right and left as soon as their sections have gained their positions, and the Captain General immediately commands *forward*, etc.

If desired, the cross is reduced into column of sections, as before explained; or cross, formed from column of sections, may be reduced into line, as just explained.

**To Form Patriarchal Cross.**

Being in column of threes.

**1. Form Patriarchal Cross. 2. MARCH. 3. Forward.****4. MARCH. 5. Guide center.**

At the second command the first three executes *right forward files right* and takes the short step, when its leading file has advanced two steps; the fourth,

— fifth and eighth threes execute the same movement and close upon the first three in column of files; the second three oblique to the right and marches forward, forming the right half of the horizontal limb of the cross, as explained for cross, with number one of the fourth three on its left; the third three oblique to the left, then marches forward, and

the second three and number one of the fourth three, as the upper horizontal arms of the cross; the sixth three executes the movement as described for the second three, forming the right half (or arm) of the lower horizontal portion of the cross, with number three of the fifth three; the seventh three executes the movement described for the third three, being in line with the sixth three and number three of the first three; the Wardens place themselves on the right and flanks of the lower horizontal limbs; and the Captain General places himself at the head of the cross and gives the eighth command.

If the Standard Guard is present the Standard Bearer quickly places himself in the center of one of the horizontal portions of the cross; the Sword Bearer and Warder taking outer flanks or moving with the Standard Bearer; the Wardens leading and following the column, and the Captain General marches four yards from the left flank and abreast of the leading horizontal line. These various positions are defined by the number in ranks in order to preserve the

proper proportions of the cross, and upon principles explained].

Cross is formed from column of sections, etc., by similar commands and means.

#### To Reduce Patriarchal Cross.

1. *Form column.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left.*

This is executed by means similar to the reduction of the Passion Cross, before explained.

#### To Form Cross of Salem.

Being in column of threes.

1. *Form Cross of Salem.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide center.*

Cross of Salem is a Patriarchal Cross, with an additional cross at its base, like the one at the top, and is formed by similar means; the rear cross forming, as has been explained, for the upper part of Patriarchal Cross, closing up and uniting with the lower limb of the Patriarchal Cross.

The officers take their places, so as to effect the proper proportions of the different limbs of the cross, depending upon the number of threes (or sections) in the column.

#### To Reduce Cross of Salem.

1. *Form column.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left.*

The cross is reduced by means similar to the reduction of other crosses, as before explained.

#### To Form Cross of St. Andrew from Column of Divisions or Double Sections.

1. *Form Cross of St. Andrew.* 2. *Left and right half wheel.*  
3. MARCH. 4. *Right and left oblique.* 5. MARCH.  
6. *Forward.* 7. MARCH. 8. *Guide center.*

**At the second command** the Senior Warden commands:

- 1. *First division [or double-section, etc.,] 2. left and right. inward, half wheel.* Junior Warden.—1. *Second division. 2. Right and left, outward, half wheel.*
- At the command *march* the leading division (half) wheels inwardly on fixed pivots, forming a letter V; the second division (half) wheels outwardly on movable pivots, forming an inverted A; the Standard Bearer retains his place, at the angle of the leading V, and the Sword Bearer and Warder place themselves, abreast, twelve inches in his rear and about six inches apart.

The Captain General gives the fourth command in time to ~~add~~ *march* the instant the half wheels are completed; at which the leading division faces to its former front and shortens the step a little; the second division faces in the same direction, and advancing obliquely toward the center without deranging the positions of the shoulders, closes the interval between its leading files and the distance between them and the Standard Guard, so as to form a letter X with the Standard Bearer in its center. The Wardens quickly place themselves, in echelon, at the heads of the cross (the Senior on the right) which marches with full step to its present front, late front of the column, at command of the Captain General, who places himself in front of the Standard and on a line with the Wardens.

If there be no Standard Guard the Captain General occupies the center, and the Wardens take the Sword Bearer's and Warder's places.

#### To Reduce Cross of St. Andrew.

1. *Form column. 2. Right and left front into line. 3. MARCH.*
4. *Guide left.*

At the second command the officers quickly place themselves in front of the several arms of the cross and command:

Senior Warden—(To upper right arm). 1. *First section.*  
2. *Left front into line.*

Junior Warden—(To lower left arm.) 1. *Fourth section.*  
2. *Left front into line.*

Sword Bearer—(To lower right arm). 1. *Third section.*  
2. *Right front into line.*

Warder—(To upper left arm). 1. *Second section.* 2. *Marsch time.*

[If the arms of the cross are more or less than a section, change the command to suit; thus: "Right wing, first division. Left front into line," etc.]

At the command *marsch* the several sections of the cross execute the commands, and the leading section, having formed line, marches forward at command of the Senior Warden; soon as the second section is unmasked it executes *right front into line* at command of the Warder, and by his command obliques into its place in column. The other sections are marched into their places by similar commands and means, regulating the step so as to immediately gain their position in column, and the officers take their places.

### TRIANGLES.

#### From Column of Files.

Station two markers two yards apart opposite each other, near the apex, and one at each angle at the base of triangle to be formed. The column being in march, command:

1. *Form triangle.* 2. *Column half left and right.* 3. *MARCH.*

The third command is given when the column is about three yards from the markers at the apex.

The S. W. conducts the column *half left*, parallel to the line of the markers on that side, halts his division when its

head has reached the point opposite the place where it will rest, and faces it to the right; the Sword Bearer follows, conducting his center division until nearing the point where the first division inclined to the left, when he marches it *column half left* in rear of the first division beyond the marker at the "S. W. angle," marches it *column right* three yards in rear of and opposite the base of the triangle, halts and faces it to the right; the J. W. follows, with the third division, to the ground from which the first division changed direction, then by *column half right* marches it parallel to the line of markers on that side, halts it opposite its place, and cause it to *left face*.

Each chief, having faced his division toward the center, as soon as it arrives opposite its place, places himself, at his proper angle, against the marker, and dresses his division up to the line toward himself, leaving room for the E. C. Gen. and C. G. to form the apex with the Prelate inside the triangle.

The Warder hastens to place himself in front of the second division, when it first changes direction, near the apex of the triangle.

#### To Reduce the Triangle.

1. *Column of files.*
2. *Right and left.*
3. *FACE.*
4. *Forward.*
5. *MARCH.*

At the second command the Senior Warden and Sword Bearer command: 1. — *division.* 2. *Right;* the Junior Warden, 1. *Third division.* 2. *Left,* and the chiefs repeat the third command. At the command *forward*, the Senior Warden commands, 1. *First division.* 2. *Stand fast.* At *mark* the Junior Warden conducts his division back, left in front, over the ground it traversed in forming the triangle; the Sword Bearer conducts the second division past the rear of the first division, retracing its steps to the point where it executed *column half left*, and there unites in *column of files*.

with and in rear of the Junior Warden's division, and resumes his own place; (the Warder takes his place as soon as the second division commences the forward march); the Senior Warden causes his division to move forward in rear of and uniting with the second division as it passes, and takes his place in rear of the column.

When the divisions are joined in column of files the Captain General halts and faces it to the right, continues the march left in front; or he commands *to the rear, march*, or uses such other method to bring the right in front as he desires, and the Commander and Staff resume their places.

**To Form Triangle from Column of Threes about a Grave or Delta.**

*1. Form triangle. 2. Column half right and left. 3. MARCH.*

If the Standard Guard occupies the center of the column, the Sword Bearer and Warder immediately place themselves in front and rear of the center column, and at the command *march*, the two left divisions (columns) march together, *column half left*, and the right division marches *column half right*, conducted by their chiefs to their places, as before.

**To Reduce the Triangle.**

*1. Column of threes. 2. Right and left. 3. FACE.*

*4. Forward. 5. MARCH.*

The divisions step off together, retrace their steps, conducted by their chiefs, and each is halted when its rear reaches the ground from which it changed direction at the apex of the triangle to march out of the column. The Warder takes his place in the second division as soon as it commences the forward march; the chiefs of division resume their places as the column is re formed.

*If it be desired to form column of files*, the commands are given as before explained, and the movement is similarly executed.

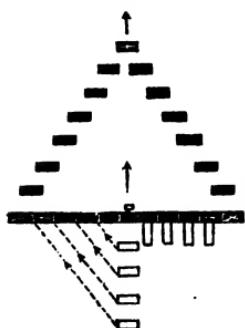
**To Form Triangle from Column of Threes.**

Being in march.

1. *To half distance, close column.* 2. MARCH. Executed as before explained.

**1. Form triangle. 2. MARCH.**

At the first command the Warden hastens to place himself in rear of the rear file of the middle column; the Senior



Warden, passing by the right to rear, commands: 1. *Files.* 2. *Right into echelon.* The Junior Warden, stepping to the left of the column, commands: 1. *Files.* 2. *Left into echelon,* and both Wardens quickly go to the rear of their columns; the Sword Bearer, without moving from his place, commands: 1. *Center files.* 2. *Mark time.*

At the command *march* the center column of files *marks time*; the leading files of the right and left column shorten the step. When these columns have passed about half their length the Sword Bearer commands: 1. *Center column.* 2. *Forward.* 3. *Column right.* 4. MARCH, which it executes; and the Sword Bearer immediately commands: 1. *By the left flank.* 2. *Rear files.* 3. *Left front into line;* adding 4. MARCH the instant before the Standard Bearer would have turned to the right.

The Knights, who have changed direction to the right, face to the left and advance in line by short steps; the rear files execute *left front into line*; the Sword Bearer quickly takes his place on the right of his division; the Wardens form the last files of their respective divisions; the rear division, when formed, closes up on the other two with the full step, and

the Captain General commands: 1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide center,* and places himself in front of the leading files, thus completing the triangle.

The triangle may be formed at open order (threes distance) if desired, by omitting the command for closing to half distance.

The center column may form the base of the triangle by wheeling around the standard, as before described for similar movement, if so instructed.

#### To Reduce Triangle.

1. *Column of threes.* 2. *Mark time.* 3. MARCH.

At the first command the Senior and Junior Wardens command their respective divisions to *mark time*; the Sword Bearer steps in front of his division, and commands, 1. *Right wing.* 2. *Left wheel,* and the Warder, facing the left wing of the second division, commands, 1. *Left wing.* 2. *To the rear.* 3. *Left wheel.* At the command *march* the right and left divisions and the Standard Bearer *mark time*; the half of the second division, which is at the right of the Standard Bearer, wheels to the left describing a quarter circle about him; the left half of the division executes *to the rear, march,* and immediately commences the left wheel similar to the movement of the right wing. The Sword Bearer commands, 1. *From right take distance by the right and left flanks,* and adds *march* the instant the wings have wheeled perpendicular to their late line, when both wings face towards the apex of the triangle, and, except the leading file, halts; the leading file marches forward and each Knight in succession resumes the forward march at the distance of fifty-four inches from the one in front.

Seeing that the head of the center column is nearly up to its place, the Captain General commands, 1. *Form threes.* 2. MARCH. The Sword Bearer and Warder quickly take

their places on the right and left of the Standard Bearer, and Knights in the outer columns face and march directly to their places in column of threes; the Wardens take their posts at the head and rear of the column.

#### **Threes in Triangles.**

Being in column of threes, at section distance,

##### **1. Threes in triangles. 2. MARCH.**

At the command *march*, given as the right foot strikes the ground, numbers one and three of each three *mark time* and numbers two take two short steps, and then all resume the full step.

- - - *If in column of threes, at wheeling distance*, it is executed as described, the leading three marching forward on the third step, and the others *halt*; each three in succession marching forward, at caution of its chief, when it has gained section distance from the three in its front.

The Wardens lead and follow the column at half distance (54 inches).

The Standard Guard forms triangle as other threes.

##### **1. Form threes. 2. MARCH.**

At *march*, the Knight forming the apex of each triangle marks time, the others advance by the short step, and the threes, united, march forward.

#### **To Form Triangle from Column of Sections.**

Being closed to half distance.

##### **1. Form triangle. 2. Threes half right and left. 3. MARCH.**

At the second command the chief of third section commands *forward*; the right three of the leading section wheels, on a movable pivot, *half right*, and upon completion of the wheel of one-eighth of a circle, each Knight faces to the late

front, and by oblique steps, shoulders square to the front, close the apex of the triangle (to within twelve inches) with the left three, which executes the same movements to the left, and both *mark time*; the right and left threes of the second section wheel as described, advance obliquely, and unite in echelon with the threes of the first section, at the caution of their chiefs; the Wardens take their places in echelon at the rear; the third section marches forward, (breaking in the center sufficient to admit the Standard Bearer, who halts when the movement is commenced), and the Sword Bearer and Warder place themselves on the flanks at the base of the triangle. The Captain General forms its apex in front.

The length of the steps and acuteness of the angles necessary will be seen and readily determined on once executing the movement.

If there are more than three sections, those in rear form a second triangle, a cross, square, etc., as may be indicated by the commands and as they may have been before instructed.

*Double sections* may be formed into triangle by similar means, the commands being, 1. *Form triangle*. 2. *Sections right and left half wheel*, etc.

#### To Re-form Column of Sections.

1. *Form sections*. 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide center*.

At the command march the S. W. takes his place at the head of the column; the leading Knights take the short step while the others of the first section march forward to their places, and the section takes the twenty-eight inch step; the threes of the second section march obliquely towards each other, unite, face to the front, re-form the section as just described, and march forward when at section distance; the rear section marks time, until it gains its place in column, and marches forward; the Standard Bearer and other officers promptly take their proper places by the shortest line.

**To Form Square from Column of Sections.**

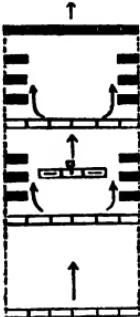
Being in march.

**1. Form square. 2. MARCH. 3. Forward. 4. MARCH.**

At the first command the chiefs of sections command as follows, viz.:

First section, *Mark time*. Second and third sections, **1. Right and left forward. 2. Files right and left.** Fourth section and Standard Guard, *Forward*.

At the second command the first section *marks time*; the right threes of the second and third sections execute the *right forward files right*, and close in column of files on the chief of first section and *mark time*; the left threes of the same sections execute the *left forward files left*, closing up and marking time in rear of the left guide of section one; the Standard Guard marches forward to the middle of the square, and the C. G. gives the fourth command the instant the fourth section closes the square in rear.



The C. G. and Wardens dart into the square as it is forming and form a line in front of the Standard Guard, the Captain General on the right, the Junior Warden on the left; or, if so instructed, the Wardens may place themselves on the flanks of the first section, and the Sword Bearer and Warden place themselves on the flanks of the rear section (to increase the front); the sides of the square will oblique so as to cover the Wardens instead of the chief and guide of the leading section; the C. G. and standard only occupying the center, or the standard alone doing so.

Formation of square from double sections is similarly executed, and the officers, with the Standard Guard, form line, double rank, or triangle within the square. Any odd sections in rear form as the Captain General shall indicate by com-

mands, thus; 1. *Form square.* 2. *Rear sections form triangle,* etc., and are formed and reduced as explained. This applies to nearly all the formations of like character.

**To Reduce Square.**

1. *Column of sections.* 2. *Right and left front into line.*
3. MARCH. 4. *Guide left.*

At the first command the Senior Warden, approaching near to the right side of the square, commands, in a low tone, *Left front into sections;* the Junior Warden approaches near to the left side of the square and commands in a low tone, *Right front into sections;* the chief of the fourth section, *Mark time.* At the command *march* the first section moves forward; the second and third sections are re-formed as indicated by the commands, until each in succession has gained section distance, when, at command of their chiefs, they take the full step *forward*, and so with section four. The officers immediately resume their proper posts; the Standard Guard regulates its step so as to regain its place as soon as the second section advances.



## School of the Battalion.

**N**O manual or drill for a battalion of Knights Templars has heretofore been published; yet uniformity and precision of movement, certainty as to the commands and the particular thing to be done, or that is required of the officers and commanderies, are essential in public parades.

A battalion of Templars is composed of two or more commanderies not exceeding eight. In emergencies the number may be increased, but it is better for the commanderies to be consolidated and equalized, or formed in two or more battalions.

Independent commanderies, of marked difference in size, formed into column, with bands at irregular distances, detract very much from the beauty that would be the result of a more systematic formation.

*The first important thing is promptness.* This cannot be too strongly emphasized.

The details of this drill are given as full as the limit of space admits.

In describing the movements, "at one" is sometimes used to indicate the first command; "at two" for the second command, and so on. Plain abbreviations are also used.

### Who Commands.

"When commanderies appear in public, in their own State or out of it, they are under the immediate authority of the Grand Commander, if he chooses to assume the command. If he is not present, an officer upon whom under the consti-

tution his duties devolve may act in his place. But all are under the authority of the Grand Commander in whose jurisdiction they may at the time be." [Digest].

It is the custom for the Grand Captain General to have immediate charge; he is of course under the special or general instructions of the Grand Commander, who cannot be deprived of personal command if he chooses to exercise it. Indeed, it is difficult to see why the Grand Captain General does not, with equal propriety, assume the gavel of authority in the asylum as well as the sword of command in the field. [This remark applies with equal force to the officers of a subordinate commandery].

An officer properly in command, and present, may detail any Knight Templar under him to assist or to give the oral commands; but it would be courteous first to obtain the acquiescence of the next in rank.

*The Grand Commander* is recognized, in this work, as the chief in command of battalion.

If he divides his command into two or more battalions the Grand Officers, according to rank, should command them, the Grand Commander directing the several movements.

The Grand Generalissimo commands in the absence of his official superior and "performs such duties as may be assigned him, or are traditionally appropriate to his station."\* He is treated as second in command, unless he should "be assigned" to the traditional duties of *Aid*.† There is no such office as adjutant known to Templar law; it is therefore "appropriate" for him to perform the duties of adjutant when occasion requires such an officer.

It may be remarked *en passant* that, for similar reasons, and that his duties are somewhat assimilated thereto, the Treasurer might be utilized as Quarter Master when Templars go into camp or on a pilgrimage.

\* Const. Gr. Encamp.      †"Aids-de camp are ex-officio Assistants Adjutant General," p. 21 Mil. Dic. Col. Scott, Insp. Gen. U. S. A.; act March 2, 1821.

*The Grand Recorder* does the writing at Head Quarters; but as few Grand Recorders have the taste or time to indulge in holiday soldiering, the Grand Wardens are recognized as Adjutant and Sergeant Major.

#### When Commands are Repeated and Executed.

Officers in command of wings repeat commands whenever necessary; chiefs of commanderies repeat those, different from the others, which are to be immediately executed by their commanderies. In successive movements each chief of commandery gives the command necessary to insure the execution of the movement by his commandery at the proper time. Commands are executed on hearing them from the Grand Commander.

#### Rank and Position of Commanderies.

"Commanderies—Grand and Subordinate—take rank according to the dates of their several organizations, unless they voluntarily waive their proper rank." [Digest.]

They form in order of rank from right to left, and in battalion movements are designated, numerically, from right to left, when in line, and from front to rear when in column, as *first commandery, second commandery*, and so on.

A SQUADRON is properly two mounted commanderies, but the nomenclature of the order forces the use of *division* (in U. S. infantry battalion drill, two companies) in the sense of a military platoon; hence we use *squadron* to indicate two commanderies in the Templar battalion drill, if more than two are present, whether mounted or on foot.

In column of squadrons commanderies are designated from the head of the column, and from right to left of each squadron, as *first commandery, second commandery—first squadron*, and so on.

The numbers of commanderies and squadrons change when, by facing in the opposite direction, the left becomes

the right of the line, and the rear the head of the column. ~~If~~ in passing from line into column, or the reverse, the designation is changed, they hold their last designation until the movement is completed, when the chiefs immediately assume (such) commandery; so with the squadrons.

The ranking officer of the squadron commands it in column of squadrons, having regard to the rank of the officer himself, as well as his commandery (unless he waive his right.)

FOR PRACTICE DRILL large commanderies can treat double-sections, or sections, as commanderies, placing the best drilled Knights in command.

#### Equalization of Commanderies.

In drill it is important that the commanderies should be equal. Large commanderies may, for this purpose, be divided into two or more; one of which occupies its place according to rank, and the others on its left according to the direction of the commander. Small commanderies might be consolidated and take rank from the oldest commandery in the consolidation, according to the equities of the case. That is, if a senior commandery, taking the right, had one or more supernumeraries, it would not be just for these to be consolidated with the junior commandery so as to give it fictitious rank.

#### The Standards.

Unless every commandery has its standard and guard, those present could be grouped and form a Battalion Standard Guard, which occupies the center of the battalion, with the Grand Standard Guard on its right. Its chief is the Grand Sword Bearer on its right, unless its number (always the multiple of three) exceed six, when its chief may be detached, the same as a chief of commandery.

Its numerical strength never exceeds that of the commanderies. It would doubtless prove satisfactory for the Standard

Bearer, as left file of the right center division of each commandery, to carry a light Beausant with the "Coat of Arms" of his commandery emblazoned upon it.

When the Grand Standard Bearer is referred to in this drill, it will be understood as the St. B. nearest the center of the battalion.

When chiefs of commanderies are referred to, the term applies as well, generally, to the chief of the Bat. St. Gd.

#### **Post of Officers.**

The Grand Commander, Grand Generalissimo and Grand Captain General are (supposed to be) mounted, and will be called *Field Officers*.

*The Grand Commander* is posted in front of the center of the line at a distance equal to about half its front, not exceeding thirty yards. He goes wherever his presence is necessary.

\* Gr. Com.

Gr. C. G. \*

\* Gr. Gen.

Chief of C.: \*      \*      \*      \*      \*      \*      \*  
 Gr. J.W.\* —————— —————— —————— † —————— —————— —————— \*Gr. S.W.

*The Grand Generalissimo* and *Grand Captain General* are on a line in front of the centers of the right and left wings, at a distance equal to about half the front of the wing.

*The Grand Senior and Junior Wardens*, in maneuvers of the battalion, may act as Adjutant and Sergeant Major respectively, and also as right and left general guides; they are posted on the right and left of the battalion, except when acting as Adjutant and Sergeant Major, when they are three yards from the flanks, and aid the Gr. Gen. and Gr. Capt. Gen.

*Officers in charge of Commandery*, and the chief of the Battalion Standard Guard, if he is not a part of the Guard itself, are two yards in front of the centers of their respective commands.

#### The Markers

Should, if practicable, be Knights temporarily detatched from the Battalion Standard Guard or flank commanderies, and their intervals left for them; otherwise they retire, after the line is formed, behind the flanks of the Battalion Standard Guard [abbreviated Bat. St. Gd.]; or, in maneuvers, are one yard in rear of the right and left flanks of the battalion commanderies in line, and the same distance from the leading and rear subdivisions on the opposite side from the guide, in column.

#### To Form the Battalion.

The commanderies form on their parade-grounds at the sound of the *assembly* [in army, at *adjutant's call*], and the Grand Senior and Junior Wardens, each covered by a marker, march to the battalion parade-ground, when each posts a marker, facing the other, at a distance apart a little less than the front of a commandery; each standing three yards in rear of the marker nearest to him, the Gr. S. W. being toward the right of the line. The Gr. S. W. then takes a side step to the left, the Gr. J. W. to the right, draw swords, face about, and each proceeds commandery distance toward the right and left of the line, when they halt and face about, and again cover the markers. The line is prolonged in the right wing by the Senior Wardens, (as right guides) who precede their commanderies on the line by about fifteen yards and establish themselves facing the markers, each at commandery distance from the marker or Warden in front of him. The Gr. S. W. assures the position of the right guides, placing himself in their rear (as before described) as they successively arrive. The line is similarly prolonged in

the left wing by the Junior Wardens as left guides; the Gr. J. W. assuring their position as they successively arrive.

The guides invert their swords in front of the center of the body, cross hilt above the chapeau, flat of the blade next to them.

The Bat. St. Gd. is the first established and is conducted by its chief, so as to arrive from the rear, parallel with the markers. When it arrives in rear of the line it is halted and its chief, placing himself facing to the front, near the left marker, dresses the guard to the left—[or if there is no Bat. St. Gd., then the right center commandery is so dressed by its chief] the breasts of the Knights opposite the markers, resting against their arms. The commanderies of the right wing form successively from left to right, each being halted three yards from the line and dressed to the left, as explained for the Bat. St. Gd. The commanderies of the left wing form successively from right to left, and are dressed to the right. In alignments the Wardens on the flank toward which the alignment is made, if not employed to mark the line, step back to enable the chiefs of commanderies to align their commanderies.

Each chief commands : 1. (such) *Commandery*. 2. *Support*. 3. *SWORDS* as soon as the chief next succeeding him in his own wing commands *front*; the flank commanderies *support swords* as soon as dressed.

THE BAND forms (at the place designated by the acting adjutant) at the sound of the *assembly of musicians*, which precedes the *assembly*, and marches at the same time with the commanderies, playing in quick time, to its position in line.

The Field Officers take their places, the Grand Commander only facing the line.

The Gr. S. W., having assured the position of the Senior Warden of the right commandery, faces about, marches three yards to the right of the front rank, faces to the left, moves

two yards to the front, halts and faces to the left; and when the last commandery arriving on the line is brought to *support swords*, commands: 1. *Guides*. 2. *Posts*.

At this command the Gr. J. W., chiefs of commanderies, Wardens and markers take their posts in line; the markers passing through the intervals, made by the Wardens near them stepping one yard to the rear, who then resume their places; the Gr. J. W. takes his position on the left flank.

(The chief of Bat. St. Gd. occupies the same relative position, if not forming a part of the guard itself, and is included when chiefs of commanderies are referred to).

The Gr. S. W. then passes along the front, in rear of the chiefs of commanderies, to the center, turns to the right, halts midway between the chiefs of commanderies, and the Grand Commander faces about, brings the battalion to a *carry* and a *present swords* (which the Gr. C. acknowledges by raising his chapeau), resumes his front, salutes the Grand Commander, and reports: *Right Eminent Sir, the battalion is formed.*

The Grand Commander returns the salute with the right hand, directs the Grand Senior Warden to *take your post*, *Sir Knight*, draws his sword, and commands: 1. *Carry*. 2. *SWORDS*.

The Gr. S. W. faces about, retraces his steps, and takes post on the right flank.

*If Eminent Commanders are in charge of Commanderies* they occupy the positions and perform the duties of "Chiefs of Commanderies," in lieu of the Capt. Generals, who are supposed to be in command, agreeable to custom. The Generalissimos and Captain Generals then take the Wardens' places, and the Wardens may form the left and right guides of interior subdivisions.

There is no provision made for the E. C. and staff in battalion drill; they should perform their official duties or fall in as other Knights. Nor is there provision made for the Treas-

urer, Recorder or Sentinel in any drill, as the strength of commanderies does not admit of it.

**To Open Ranks.**

**Being at a halt.**

**1. Rear open order. 2. MARCH.**

At the first command the Gr. S. W. places himself three yards in rear of the right of the right flank, facing to the left; the Gr. J. W. places himself three yards in rear of the left of the left flank, faces toward the right, and inverts his sword; the Senior Wardens of the right, and J. W's of the left commanderies, step back three yards opposite their places in line to mark the new alignment of the rear rank; they are aligned by the Gr. S. W. on the Gr. J. W.

At the command *march* the front rank dresses to the right and the rear rank steps to the rear, passes a little in rear of the established line, and dresses forward on the Senior Wardens, who verify the alignment of their respective commanderies.

*The chiefs of commanderies* place themselves three yards in front of the center of their commanderies, dress to the right and cast their eyes to the front as soon as their alignment is verified.

The Grand Commander superintends the alignment of the commandery officers and front rank, and the Grand Generallissimo the rear rank.

At the command *front*, the Gr. Gen. and Gr. Capt. Gen. take their places and the Wardens place themselves on the line of the chiefs of commandery in front of the centers of the right and left wings of their commanderies; the Grand Wardens step straight to the front and dress on a line of commandery officers; the Grand Commander, passing to the center in front of the line of commandery officers, places himself facing to the front, six yards in advance of the line of the Gr. Gen. and Gr. Capt. Gen.

**To Close the Ranks.****1. Close order, 2. MARCH.**

At the second command the officers face about and return to their places in line; the rear rank closes to facing distance.

**To Open Order in Single Rank.**

The same rules and commands apply except that numbers two step to the rear, as before explained (School of the Commandery).

At the command, **1. Close order, 2. MARCH**, the rear rank resumes its place in the front rank, and the movement is completed as before.

**To Dismiss the Battalion.**

*Dismiss your commanderies.* At this order each chief of commandery marches his commandery to its parade-ground, where it is dismissed.

**To March in Line.****1. Forward, 2. Guide center, 3. MARCH.**

At the second command the right and left general guides (Gr. Wardens) advance six yards to the front; the Standard Bearer of the center commandery, (or Grand Standard Bearer, or Standard Bearer of the senior commandery if there be a Bat. St. Gd.) advances abreast of the Grand Wardens, and the commander of the Battalion Standard Guard takes his place in the line. The chiefs of commanderies place themselves in the front rank on the right of their commanderies, and the Senior Wardens step back two yards straight to the rear; or, if there are two ranks, step back into the rear rank and cover their chiefs.

The Bat. St. Gd. forms the basis for the alignment, its chief following in trace of the standard in its front. If there be no Bat. St. Gd. the right center commandery is the basis of the alignment. The chiefs of commanderies occasionally turn their heads slightly towards the basis of alignment.

(shoulders square to the front) in order to maintain themselves on the same line, each regaining his position, if lost, by almost insensible degrees.

The Grand Generalissimo and Grand Captain General place themselves in rear of the battalion, opposite their places in line, and superintend the march of the right and left wings, from the rear of their centers; Gr. W's 3 yds. in rear to assist.

Similar rules govern the battalion movements as are prescribed for commanderies.

**To Face the Battalion to the Rear and March it to the Rear.**

Being in line.

1. *Threes right* (or *left*) *about*.
2. *MARCH*.
3. *Battalion*.
4. *HALT*. Or, 3. *Guide center*.

At one, the Grand Standard Bearer and general guides, if not already there, return to their places in line; the battalion wheels about by threes at the second command. If halted, the chiefs of commanderies, placing themselves on the flanks of their commanderies towards the center, dress them in that direction; the Wardens on that flank step to the rear. In wheeling about by threes, when marching in line, each chief of commandery describes a semi-circle, whose radius is twenty-two inches, and thus places himself on the flank of his commandery, according as before the movement he was on its right or left.

If the march be continued, after wheeling about by threes, at the command *Guide center*, the G. St. B. and general guides advance six yards in front of the line and assume the direction of the march; the chiefs of commanderies, if not already there, place themselves on the flanks of their commanderies farthest from the standard.

When a battalion in line wheels about by threes the Field Officers, unless otherwise directed, place themselves in rear by passing around its flanks. The battalion is then maneuvered by the same commands and means as when facing in the opposite direction.

To march the battalion a few yards to the rear, command:

1. Battalion.
2. ABOUT.
3. FACE.
4. Forward.
5. Guide center.
6. MARCH.

Or, if in march, command :

1. To the rear.
2. MARCH. Guide center.

The officers retain their relative positions until it is again faced to the front.

#### To Oblique in Line and Resume the Forward.

1. Right (or left) oblique.
2. MARCH.

Executed as before explained.

To resume the direct march : 1. Forward. 2. MARCH.

#### To Halt the Battalion.

1. Battalion.
2. HALT.

If the direct march is not to be resumed,

1. Standard and general guides.
2. POSTS.

The order is obeyed and chiefs of commanderies resume their places in front as the guides step into their intervals.

#### To Rectify an Alignment.

*Commanders rectify the alignment.*

The chiefs of commanderies place themselves on the flanks of their commanderies towards the standard (the guides, or files, stepping to the rear) and successively dressing towards the center, when the preceding chief commands *front*. Each returning to his place in line after commanding *front*.

#### To Give General Alignment.

The Gr. Commander places himself outside one flank of the battalion and commands:

1. Standard and general guides on the line.
2. Guides on the line.
3. Center.
4. DRESS.
5. Standard and guide.
6. POSTS.

At one, the Grand Standard Bearer and Grand Wardens place themselves on the line and face to the Grand Command-

er, who establishes them by motion of the sword in the direction he wishes to give the battalion.

At two, the Senior Wardens of commanderies to the right of the Gr. Standard and Junior Wardens of commanderies to the left, face toward the standard, and each places himself at commandery distance in rear of the one next before him, and aligns himself on the Standard Bearer and the Gr. Warden beyond.

The chiefs of the commanderies hasten to place themselves on the flanks of their commanderies toward the standard, and the Warden on that flank quickly passes by the rear and occupies the interval left by the guide on the line.

The left file of Bat. St. Gd. places himself in the interval left by the Gr. St. B., and the chief occupies the interval so made for him.

The Field Officers on the right and left wings place themselves outside the Gr. Wardens and assure the position of the guides in their own wings.

At four, the commanderies move up in quick time against the guides, and each chief of commandery commands, 1. *Left* (or *right*). 2. DRESS. 3. FRONT, according as he is on the right or left of the standard.

If the new line be oblique and at considerable distance from the battalion, the chiefs of commanderies conduct their commands so as to arrive parallel to their places in the line, then dress, as before explained.

At the sixth command the officers and guides resume their places in line. If the new direction of line be such that commanderies find themselves in advance, the Gr. Com. before establishing guides, causes these commanderies to move to the rear.

#### To Change Direction in Line.

1. *Battalion.* 2. *Right* (or *left*) *wheel.* 3. MARCH.

At two, the Gr. St. Grd. and Gr. Wardens place themselves six yards in front, as before explained; the chiefs of com-

manderies place themselves on the flanks of their commanderies farthest from the Bat. St. Gd.; the field officer of the left wing places himself on the left of the left general guide, and the field officer of the right wing on the right of the front rank.

At the command *march* the chief of the right commandery stands fast, or, halts, and is the pivot; the left general guide takes the full step, wheels as if on the marching flank; the chief of left commandery follows in his trace, preserving distance; the Gr. St. Br. preserves his distance on the line with left general guide and pivot, or slightly in rear of it.

The field officers superintend the movements of the general guide and wing nearest them.

1. *Battalion.* 2. *HALT.* Or 1. *Forward.* 2. *MARCH.* 3. *Guide center,* Is given when wheeled sufficiently.

At *forward* the Gr. Standard Bearer advances to the line of the general guides. At the second command resume the direct step; the field officers return to their posts.

**To March by the Flank, from Line.**

1. *Threes right* (or *left*). 2. *MARCH.*

The Gr. Commander marches on the side of the guide about thirty yards from the center of the column. The Gr. Gen. and Gr. Capt. Gen. on the same side, about six yards from the head or rear of the column, each in his own wing, the Gr. Wardens between them and the column.

In all movements on the march, from the order in line to the order in column, the Gr. Standard Bearer, at the preparatory command, resumes his position in line.

The battalion may be faced to the right or left from line and marched forward, or marched by the flanks by the usual commands for a commandery.

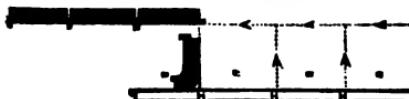
**To Break into Column of Threes from the Right or Left, to March to the Right or Left.**

Being in line at a halt.

1. *Column of Threes.* 2. *Break from the right* (or *left*) *to march to the left* (or *right*). 3. *MARCH.*

**At two, the chief of the right commandery orders, 1. Right forward. 2. Threes right.**

At the command **march**, repeated by the chief, the commandery moves in column of threes to the front; the chief commanding, 1. **Column left**, adding 2. **MARCH** the instant the



leading three has advanced commandery distance; the Warden then directs his march

parallel with the front of the battalion. The chief of the second commandery orders, 1. **Right forward**. 2. **Threes right**, adding 3. **MARCH** when the leading guide of the first commandery arrives opposite his right three; the commandery advances and changes direction as explained for the first commandery, following in its rear.

The other commanderies successively conform to what is explained for the second.

*Being in column of threes*, the battalion is halted, put in march, obliques, changes direction, marches to the rear, forms files, sections or divisions, etc., the same as a commandery, substituting *battalion* for *commandery*.

#### To Form Line to the Right or Left from Column of Threes.

1. **Threes right** (or **left**). 2. **MARCH**. 3. **Battalion**. 4. **HALT**.  
Or, 3. **Guide center**.

The **halt** is given the instant the threes unite in line. Each chief of commandery places himself on the left of his commandery (the Wardens stepping back, as before explained), dresses his commandery to the left, commands *front*, and places himself in front of its center.

If the third command be for the guide (on completion of the wheel) the Gr. Standard and guides advance six yards in front of the line, and the chiefs place themselves on the flanks of their commanderies farthest from the standard, as before explained.

**General Rules for Successive Formations.**

That is, when several subdivisions arrive successively on the line.

In all such, except formation into line by two movements, the field officer at the head of the column or nearest the *point of rest* (where right of battalion is to rest if movement be to left, or where left will rest when movement is to right) establishes his two markers (facing point of rest) on the line opposite the right and left files of the subdivision first to arrive on the line. If formation be central, markers are placed on line in front of leading subdivision, facing each other.

In all formations from halt, markers are established at preparatory command, indicating direction in which line is to extend; if marching, they hasten toward the point of rest and are established at command *march*. In formations on right (or left) into line, first marker is established subdivision distance to right (or left) of head of column.

Formations front into line, they are established subdivision distance in front of head of the column.

Line is prolonged as explained in formation of battalion. When line is formed facing to rear, markers permit leading subdivisions to pass between, after which second marker closes to little less than commandery distance from the first; if formation be central, both markers close toward each other. Each guide so posts himself that his subdivision may cross line between him and guide next in front, then closes to subdivision distance.

When principles are well understood markers may post themselves without aid of field officer, or Wardens act when practicable.

**To Form Column of Threes on Right or Left into Line.**

1. *On right (or left) into line.*
2. *MARCH.*

*From a halt.* At one, repeated by chief of first commandery, the other chiefs of commandery order: *forward.*

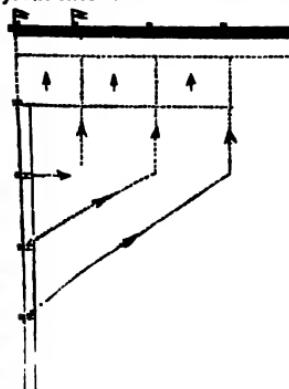
At *march*, repeated by all the chiefs of commanderies, the leading commandery executes *on right into line*; the leading three arriving at three yards from line, the chief halts the commandery and dresses it to right against markers. The other chiefs successively command, 1. *On right into line*, adding *march* when opposite the right of their places in line, halt their commanderies and dress them, as just explained.

If *marching*, the command to put the commanderies in motion is omitted.

#### To Form Column of Threes Front into Line.

1. *Right* (or *left*) *front into line*.
2. *MARCH*.

*From a halt.* At one, chief of first commandery: 1. *Right front into line*. 2. *Double time*; chief of second commandery:



1. *Forward*. 2. *Column right*; chiefs of other commanderies:

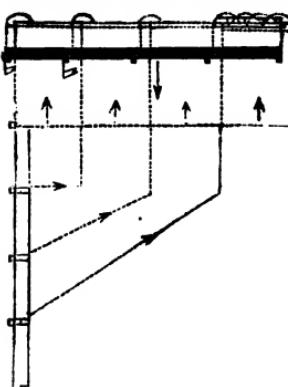
1. *Forward*. 2. *Column half right*. At *march*, repeated, first commandery executes *right front into line* in double time; is halted at three yards from line and dressed against markers. Chief of second commandery conducts it opposite the left of its place in line, changes direction to the left, and chief commands: 1. *Right front into line*. 2. *Double time*, adding 3. *MARCH*, when at com-

mandery distance from line, places himself in front of its center, and when at three yards from the line, halts the commandery and dresses it to the left. The other chiefs conduct their commanderies to a point twice commandery distance in rear of the left of their places in line, change direction half left, and when at commandery distance from the line, conform to what has been explained for the second commandery.

*If marching omit the command forward.*

**To Form Front into Line Faced to Rear.**

1. *Right (or left) front into line, faced to rear.*
2. MARCH.



Executed as before explained, except commanderies are not halted till three yards beyond the line; all the threes having arrived in line, where the commanderies execute *threes left about*, halt and dress to the right.

In forming line, faced to rear, threes wheel about towards the *point of rest*.

**Formation of Column of Threes into Line by two Movements.**

A part of the column having changed direction to the right.

1. *Threes left.*
2. *Rear commanderies left front into line.*
3. MARCH.

Chiefs whose commanderies have changed direction, repeat one and three, halt their commanderies as threes unite in line, then dress to right, remaining on line till *Guides Post*.

*March* is given as head of a commandery is about to change direction. Rear commanderies execute *left front into line*.

*To form line faced to rear.* Column having changed direction as before, 1. *Threes right.* 2. *Rear commanderies left front into line faced to rear.* 3. MARCH.

This and like formations to the left are executed similar to those explained.

**To Form Column of Sections from Line.**

1. *Center forward.*
2. *Threes left and right.*
3. MARCH.
4. *Guide (right or left).*

At two, chief of right center commander orders;

1. *Left forward.*
2. *Threes left.*

Chief of left center

commandery orders: 1. *Right forward.* 2. *Threes right.* Other chiefs: *Threes left or right*, according as they are in the right or left wing.

At *march*, repeated, column of sections is formed. The Gr. Commander marches at twelve yards from center of column. The field officers of each wing six yards from flank of the column, abreast of his leading guide; Grand Wardens abreast of the guides in rear of the column.

[The Bat. St. Gd. may lead this movement, if present.]

**To Form Line from Column of Sections.**

1. *Right and left front into line.* 2. MARCH.

Executed by each wing, as before explained. The markers are established for the Bat. St. Gd. [or right center commandery, if there be no Bat. St. Gd.]

**To Form Line to the Right or Left from Column of Sections.**

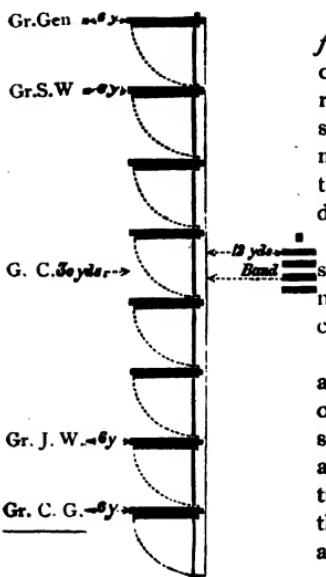
1. *Threes right (or left).* 2. *Left commanderies on right (or left) into line.* 3. MARCH.

The chiefs of right commanderies repeat the first and third commands, halt their commanderies as they unite in line, dress them to the left and remain on the left until the command *guides, posts.* The Bat. St. Gd. and commanderies of the left wing execute *on right into line.* The field officer of left wing assures position of guides of the left commanderies.

**To form Column of Commanderies from Line.**

1. *Commanderies right (or left) wheel.* 2. MARCH.

At one, the chiefs of commanderies repeat *right wheel.* At *march* each commandery wheels as before explained, each chief halting and dressing his commandery to the left.



The chiefs having commanded *front*, the guides, although some of them may not be in the direction of the preceding guides, stand fast, in order that the error may not be extended through the column; the guides not in direction come into it in march.

The band is on the flank, as shown in the cut, in the drill; or may march at the head of the column if so directed.

*If the battalion be in march,* at the first command, the chiefs of commanderies place themselves before the centers thereof; at *march* pivots halt and then turn gradually in their places; the wheel is completed as from a halt.

In column the field officers and Grand Wardens take their places, as shown in the plate, and change to the designated flank when the guide is changed. [So band changes if not at head of column].

#### To Form Column and Move Forward without Halting.

1. Continue the march.
2. Commanderies *right* (or *left*) *wheel*.
3. MARCH.
4. Forward.
5. MARCH.
6. Guide (*right* or *left*).

Wheel as before; chiefs remain in front of centers. At fifth command march forward, or in the direction the field officer at head of column indicates for leading guide, and others follow in his trace, preserving distances.

*The battalion breaks into column of squadrons, etc., in the same manner, substituting squadrons for commanderies. The chief of squadron performs the same duties as chief of com-*

mandery, the junior chief places himself in the interval between the two commanderies, if not already there. The guide on the right or left of the squadron is its guide.

In wheel by squadron, if there be an odd commandery its chief commands: 1. *Forward*. 2. *Guide right* (or *left*), according as the wheel is to the right or left, repeats the command *March*, adding 1. *Right* (or *left*) *wheel* in time to add 2. *MARCH* when the commandery has advanced commandery distance, when it wheels on a fixed pivot, is halted and dressed as before explained.

#### To Form Column of Commanderies to the Rear from Line.

1. *Right of Commanderies, rear into column.*
2. *Threes right.*
3. *MARCH.*



Being at halt. At the first command each chief places himself four feet in front of the right file of his commandery facing to the right; at *threes right* cautions the right three to wheel to the right about. The movement is executed as in divisions, q. v.

Squadrons are formed in column to the rear by similar commands and means.

#### To Break From the Right or Left, to March to the Left or Right from Line.

1. *Commanderies break from the right (or left) to march to the left (or right).*
2. *MARCH.*



Being at a halt.

At one, the chief of the first commandery orders, 1. *For-*

*ward.* 2. *Guide left.* At *march*, repeated by its chief, the right commandery moves forward, the chief commanding, 1. *Left turn*, adding 2. **MARCH** when the guide has advanced commandery distance; the left guide then marches on a line parallel with the front of the battalion. The second commandery executes the movement by the same commands and means; its chief putting it in march when the first commandery arrives opposite its left; the guide, after turning, follows in trace of the left guide of the first. The others successively execute the same movement. Don't lose distance.

**To March Column Forward, Halt it, Face it to the Rear, etc.**

Executed by commands and means similar to like movements of a commandery.

**To Change Direction in Column.**

1. *Column right* (or *left*). 2. **MARCH.**

Being in march. At the first command a marker places himself abreast of the guide, on the left of the leading subdivision. The chief of this subdivision commands: *Right wheel*, repeats the **MARCH**, and on completion of the wheel, commands :



1. *Forward.* 2. **MARCH.**

The marker, at the command *march* by the Gr. Com. halts and faces to the column, remains until rear has passed, and returns to his place in rear of first subdivision. Other subdivisions change direction on same ground by same commands and means.

To put column in march and change direction at the same time: 1. *Forward.* 2. *Guide (left or right).* 3. *Column right* (or *left*). Or 3. *Column half right*, etc.

**To Form Line to the Left or Right from Column.**

1. *Left (or right) into line wheel.* 2. **MARCH.** 3. *Guides.*  
4. *Posts.*

Being at a halt. At the first command chiefs of command-

eries caution, *left wheel*; the right guide of the leading commandery places himself facing the leading guide of the column at nearly commandery distance in front of him, so as to be opposite one of the right files of the commandery when the wheel is completed; the guide is assured in his position by field officer at head of the column.

At *march* the commanderies wheel to the left on fixed pivots. Each chief of commandery faces his command to observe the wheel; moves toward the point where its marching flank is to rest, and when it is near the line commands: 1. *Commandery*. 2. *HALT*. At *halt* the chief of commandery places himself on the line, by the side of the left file of the commandery next on the right, then commands, 1. *Right*. 2. *DRESS*. 3. *FRONT*. At *dress* the commandery dresses up between its chief and its left file; the file of the right commandery, who finds himself opposite its right guide, rests his breast lightly agaiust the left arm of their guide.

If marching, line is similarly formed, guides halt, and wheel is on fixed pivot.

#### To Correct Alignment.

Being at a halt. The Gr. Commander, placing himself in front of leading guide, and facing him, establishes himself and guide next in rear, then commands.

##### 1. *Right* (or *left*) *guides*. 2. *COVER*.

Right guides exactly cover those in front at subdivision distance; field officers in front and rear of column facing guides assist.

##### 1. *Right* (or *left*). 2. *DRESS*.

Chiefs repeat, align their subdivisions, and command, *FRONT*. If a commandery is out of place, chief gives necessary preparatory (*forward*, *backward* or *side step*) adding *march* at command *dress* by Gr. Commander. When it approaches guide, chief halts and dresses it up to the guide.

**To Form Line and Move Forward.**

1. Continue the march.
2. Left (or right) into line wheel.
3. MARCH.
4. Forward.
5. MARCH.
6. Guide center.

Wheel on fixed pivots, which mark time as explained, guide remains on flank of leading commandery. At the sixth command standard and general guides step six yards to front of line, and chief of commandery places himself in front rank, as before explained.

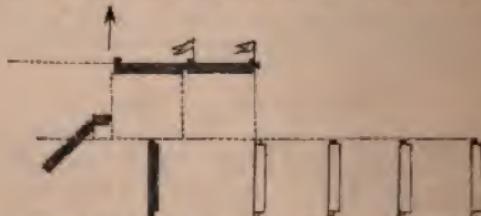
*Column of Squadrons* is formed in line similarly; the chiefs of squadrons command, 1. Right. 2. DRESS, then (to commandery on his left), 1. (such) commandery, 2. FRONT, the junior chief of commandery, 1. (such) commandery 2. FRONT (to commandery on his left). Odd commandery moves up to commandery distance, its guide covering guide in front, if not there.

Practice these without equalizing commanderies; put column in march; commanderies gain trace and distance of guides by obliques at command of chiefs. Gr. Commander assists to gain distance by causing column to *mark time or take short step*; those not at proper distance, etc., gain it.

**To Form Column on Right or Left.**

Being in march, change guide, if not there, to flank towards which movement is to be made.

1. On right (or left) into line.
2. MARCH.



At one, chief of first commandery commands. *Right turn*.

and repeats *march*; arriving at three yards from markers, chief halts and dresses it to the right. The other commanderies continue the march, each chief giving command, 1. *Right turn*, adding 2. *MARCH* upon arriving opposite the right of its place in line, and are halted and dressed as explained for first commandery.

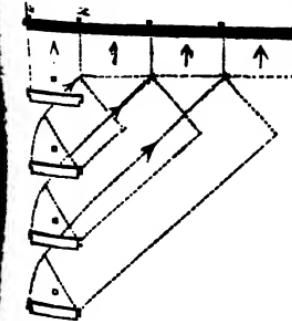
**To Form Column Front into Line from a Halt.**

1. *Right* (or *left*) *front into line*.
2. *Commanderies right* (or *left*) *half wheel*.
3. *MARCH*.
4. *Forward*.
5. *MARCH*.
6. *Guide left* (or *right*).

At one, chief of first commandery, 1. *Forward*. 2. *Guide left*; at second command all other chiefs of commanderies caution *right half wheel*; at third command, repeated by chiefs, the first commandery advances, and when three yards from line, is halted and dressed to left against markers; the other commanderies wheel half right on fixed pivot, chiefs repeating fourth, fifth and sixth commands. At fifth command, given the instant the eighth of circle is completed, they cease to wheel and march forward. At sixth command the left guides of commanderies march directly to their front.

The left of second commandery arriving nearly opposite the right of the first, its chief commands, 1. *Left half turn*. 2. *MARCH*, the instant left of company is opposite its place in line, and its chief commands, 1. *Commandery*, adding 2. *MARCH* at three yards from the line, then dresses his commandery.

When left of third commandery arrives opposite right of the second it turns half left, is halted and dressed as just pre-

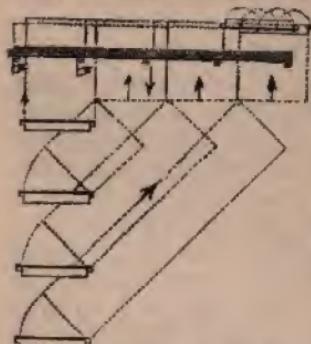


scribed, and other commanderies execute successively what is prescribed for the third.

In march the movement is similarly executed, the leading commandery approaches markers with guide toward point of rest, at command of chief of commandery, if necessary, at preparatory command.

**To Form Column Front into Line, Faced to Rear.**

Executed as before, except commanderies march three yards beyond the line; wheel about by threes, halt, and are dressed toward the point of rest.



**To Form Column of Commanderies into Line by two Movements.**

The column having partly changed direction to the right,

1. *Left into line wheel.*
2. *Rear commanderies left front into line.*
3. MARCH.

At one, chiefs of commanderies caution *left wheel*. At second command chief of each commandery, except leading one, commands, *Left half wheel*. At *march*, repeated by chiefs of rear commanderies, those which have changed direction to right execute *left into line wheel*, rear commanderies *left front into line* as before described, the chiefs of rear commanderies, upon completing the half wheel, adding 1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right.*

Column having partly changed direction to the left, line is formed by similar commands and means.

**To Advance by Flank of Subdivisions from Line.**

1. *Commanderies (or squadrons).* 2. *Right (or left) forward.* 3. *Threes right (or left).* 4. MARCH.
5. *Guide (right, left or center.)*

Each commandery (or squadron) executes *right forward*

*threes right.* The Gr. Com. marches abreast of chiefs of leading subdivisions, twelve yards from flank, on the side of guide; or if guide be center, then on either flank, other field officers six yards outside of column abreast of chiefs of subdivisions; they are covered by Grand Wardens, who march abreast of rear guides.

**To Form Line from Subdivisions when Marching by the Flank of Subdivisions.**

1. *Commanderries* (or *squadrons*) 2. *Right* (or *left*) *front into line.* 3. MARCH. 4. *Battalion.* 5. HALT.

Each commandery (or squadron) executes the second command and is dressed to the right.

If executed in double time, the Gr. Commander commands: *Guide center*, immediately after the command MARCH; the standard and Gr. Wardens advance at six yards in front of line, and chiefs of commanderries place themselves on the flanks of their commanderries farthest from the Bat. St. Gd., the guides on that flank stepping back, as before explained, except the guides on the flank commanderries of the battalion.

**To Form Column of Subdivisions when Marching by the Flank of Subdivisions (and the reverse).**

1. *Threes right* (or *left*). 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide (right or left)*, etc.

**To March by the flank of Subdivisions from Column of Threes, etc.**

1. *Commanderries* (or *squadrons*, etc.) 2. *Column right* (or *left*). 3. MARCH. 4. *Guide (right, left or center)*.

The same command, omitting the fourth, re-forms column of threes; each chief of commandery goes to the head of his commandery; the squadrons unite in column of threes.

**To Form Column of Threes from Column of Commanderries and Squadrons and to Form again in Column.**

1. *Commanderries* (or *squadrons*). 2. *Right (or left) forward.* 3. *Threes right* (or *left*). 4. MARCH.

To form again in column:

1. *Commanderies* (or *squadrons*). 2. *Right* (or *left*) *front* into line. 3. MARCH. 4. Battalion. 5. HALT.  
Or 4. *Guide left* (or *right*).

The subdivisions execute these movements simultaneously. Or these movements may be executed by commanderies successively, if so ordered, by designating them. They may also be executed in like manner by any subdivision of battalion.

#### To Close Column to Half Distance.

Being at a halt.

1. *Close column to half distance.* 2. *Forward.* 3. MARCH.  
4. *Guide left* (or *right*).

At two, the chief of the leading squadron (or commandery) commands, 1. *First squadron* (or *commandery*). 2. STAND FAST. The other squadrons march forward and are successively halted and dressed to the left by their chiefs when they arrive at commandery (or division) distance.

#### To Deploy Column.

See School of the Commandery.

#### To Form Line to the Right or Left from Column of Squadrons, etc., at Half Distance.

1. *Right* (or *left*) *into line wheel.* 2. *Left* (or *right*) *commanderies on right* (or *left*) *into line.* 3. MARCH.

At one, the chiefs of right commanderies caution, 1. (Such) commandery. 2. *Right wheel;* the left guide of the leading



right commandery places himself on the line of the right guides, facing them, and so as to be opposite one of the three

lies on the left of his commandery; chiefs of left commanderies: 1. *Forward*. 2. *Guide right*. At *march*, repeated by chiefs, the right commanderies wheel into line to the right; the left commanderies move forward, and when the leading one is opposite its place, executes *on right into line*. The field officer of the left wing assures the position of the guides of the left commanderies.

If marching, the Grand Commander orders guide on flank towards which movement is to be made, if not there, and chiefs of left commanderies omit the *forward, march*.

**To Form Column of Commanderies from Column of Squadrons, and the reverse.**

1. *Right* (or *left*), by commanderies. 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left* (or *right*).

Being at a halt. At the first command chiefs of right commanderies: *Forward*; chiefs of left commanderies: *Right oblique*. At *march*, repeated by chiefs, right commanderies move forward, chiefs repeating command for guide; the chiefs of left commanderies command MARCH the instant their commanderies are disengaged, at which they oblique to right, shortening the step slightly. When they are in rear of right commanderies their chiefs command, 1. *Forward*. 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left*; the second command is given the instant the left guide arrives in trace of the left guide of the right commandery.

1. *Form squadrons left* (or *right*) *oblique*. 2. MARCH.
3. *Battalion*. 4. HALT.

Being in column of commanderies.

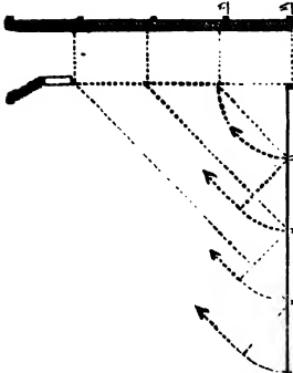
At one, chief of right commandery of each squadron: 1. *Forward*. 2. *Guide left*; chief of the left commandery: *Left oblique*. At *march*, repeated by the chiefs, leading commanderies move forward; rear commanderies oblique to left. The fourth command, repeated by chiefs of leading commanderies, is given when they have advanced command-

ery distance; each chief dresses his commandery, being careful that guides cover, and places himself in front of its center.

**To Change Front of Battalion.**

1. *Change front on first (or eighth) commandery.*
2. *Commanderies right (or left) half wheel.*
3. **MARCH.**
4. **Forward.**
5. **MARCH.**
6. *Guide right (or left).*

At one, chiefs, if not there, place themselves in front of centers of their commanderies.



At two—chief of right commandery: *Right wheel*; other chiefs caution *right half wheel*. At *march*, repeated by chiefs, right commandery right wheels on fixed pivot, and its chief commands, 1. *Forward.* 2. **MARCH.** 3. *Guide right*, and having arrived at three yards from the line, its chief halts it and dresses it to right against the markers.

The other commanderies make half wheels to right on fixed pivots, and movement is completed similar to left front into line from column of commanderies. The chiefs of rear commanderies command, 1. *Right half turn*, adding, 2. **MARCH**, when their right guides are opposite their places in line.

(See cut.)

*Oblique change of front on first (or eighth) commandery,* is similarly executed.

Change of front on right or left commandery and face to rear is executed by adding *faced to rear* to the first command, and similar to front into line faced to rear from column of commanderies.

## School of the Mounted Knight.



EARNING "how to set a horse" and ride are the objects of this school.

Gaining confidence in the walk, take the slow trot. To make good horsemen, exercise about an hour daily, and for at least two months is desirable, the drill being varied by combinations of the simple movements.

Give the elementary instruction to one, or at most, three at a time, and without swords or spurs, until the Knights have confidence in their seats and are able to ride fairly.

Quiet well trained horses should be first used. All mounted exercises are begun and ended at a walk.

The mounted drill is almost identical with the army practice, and "squad" is used in lieu of "Sir Knights."

### LEAD OUT.

At this command each Knight grasps both reins with the right hand, nails down, six inches from the bit, and conducts the horse, without looking at him, to the place designated.

The horses are formed in line from right to left, each Knight on the left side of the horse, his breast on a line with the lower jaw, takes the *position* of a Knight, as before explained, except that his right hand grasps the reins as explained. *This is the position of STAND TO HORSE.*



numbers (two having been counted), lead their horses four yards to the front dressing to the right, all then face to the right, drop the right rein from the hand, take two side steps to the right, sliding the hand along the left rein, make a half face to the left, so as to bring the right side toward the horse's flank; car-

If necessary to align the horses, command:

1. Right.
2. DRESS.
3. FRONT.

The Knights look along the line and the horses are moved forward or backward as required. At the command *front* resume the position of *Stand to horse*.

(Threes are counted, sections, etc., indicated, as in the School of the Knight, but lines are formed facing to the front, and an interval left for standard guard, explained hereafter).

1. Prepare to mount.
2. MOUNT.

At the first command, the odd



ry the right foot three inches to the rear; take the reins in the right hand, aided by the left, and place the right hand on the cantle, the reins coming into the hand between the thumb and forefinger and held so as to feel lightly the horse's mouth. *Second motion.* Place a third of the left foot in the stirrup, with the assistance of the left hand, if necessary, and support it against the fore leg of the horse; rest upon the ball of the right foot; place the left hand on top of the neck, well forward, and grasp a lock of the mane, the lock coming out between the thumb and forefinger.

At the command *mount* spring from the right foot, holding firmly to the mane, keeping the right hand on the cantle; bring the heels together, the knees straightened and resting against the saddle, the body erect. *Second motion.* Pass the right leg, extended, over the croup of the horse without touching him; let go the mane, insert the right foot in the stirrup, pass the reins into the left hand and adjust them.

1. *Form.* 2. *RANK.*

The even numbers move forward and dress to the right on numbers one.

**Position of a Knight Mounted.**

The weight of the body bearing equally upon the saddle and as far forward as possible; the thighs turned upon their flat side without effort, embracing the horse equally and stretched only by their own weight and that of the legs; the knees bent without stiffness; the legs and feet free and falling naturally, the feet parallel with the horse; the body erect and unconstrained; the shoulders equally thrown back; the arms free, the elbows falling naturally; the head erect, square to front and without constraint. The reins coming into the left hand on the sides of the little finger and leaving it between the thumb and forefinger; the little finger between the reins, the other fingers closed, the reins firmly on the second joint of the forefinger; the left forearm horizontal, the fingers six



inches from the body and turned toward it; the little finger somewhat nearer the body than the upper part of the hand; the right hand behind the thigh, the arm falling naturally, the feet inserted one-third of their length into the stirrups, the heels slightly lower than the toes. If the reins are not double they enter the hand from one (lower) side of the little finger.

#### The Stirrups

Should support the weight of the legs only, and be of such length, that when the Knight rises in them, there should be a space of not more than four or five inches between his crotch and the saddle.

**To Dismount.**

1. *Prepare to dismount.* 2. **DISMOUNT.** 3. *Form.* 4. **RANK.**

At the first command the odd numbers (counted by twos) move forward four yards, regulated by the right; all the Knights seize the reins with the right hand, in front of and near the left; place the right hand on the pommel; let go with the left hand, place it on top of the neck; grasp a lock of the mane, as before, and take the right foot out of the stirrup, keeping the body erect.

At the command **DISMOUNT**, rise upon the left stirrup, pass the right leg, extended, over the croup of the horse without touching him; bring the right heel to the side of the left; descend lightly to the ground; remove the left foot from the stirrup, and place it by the side of the right, keeping the body erect; let go the mane; pass the end of the reins over the pommel of the saddle with the right hand, which then seizes the rein. *Second motion.* Face to the left, take two short steps, left foot first; slip the right hand along the left rein, and take the position of *stand to horse*.

At the commands *form*, **RANK** the even numbers lead up, as before explained.

1. *Squad.* 2. **DISMOUNT.**

At the second command the Knights execute, at the command *dismount*, all that has been just described at the commands *prepare to dismount* and *dismount*.

*This rule is general*, the command Division, Commandery, etc., being substituted for the command *Sir Knights* or *Squad*.

1. *Squad.* 2. **REST.**

Being in line, the Knights are dismounted, as explained, and the *rest* is executed as on foot, except that hold of the reins is retained and horses kept in place.

1. *Squad.* 2. **ATTENTION.**

At the second command each Knight assumes the position of *Stand to horse*.

*1. By the right (or left) file off. 2. MARCH.*

At the command *march*, the Knight on the right leads his horse (or if mounted, rides) four yards to the front, the hand high up near the bit and firm, turns to the right and marches to the stable or picket line. Each executes successively the same movement when the one who precedes him has moved four yards to the front.

**To Dismiss the Squad.**

The Senior Warden may then cause the Knights to *fall in*, march it to the commandery parade ground, and there dismiss. *This rule is general.*

**Use of the Reins and Legs.**

Before undertaking movements the Knights are mounted and the use of the reins and legs explained.

*The reins* serve to prepare the horse for the movements, to guide and to halt him; their action should be gradual and in harmony with that of the legs. In using them the arms should be moved with ease and from the wrist to the shoulder. In riding, the hand should be kept steady and ought not to move with the body; at the same time it must be kept *light*, for the bit causes pain if pressed constantly on the mouth, destroys its sensibility, and makes the horse hard-mouthed.

*The legs* serve to urge the horse forward, to support him, and to guide him in executing changes of direction and of gait; when closed without pressure they tend to steady the horse in his position; when both legs are closed equally, pressing the horse, they tend to move him forward; when closed, the right more to the rear than the left, they tend to turn him to the right; when closed, the left more to the rear than the right, they tend to turn him to the left.

*To gather the horse.* Close both legs lightly and raise the hands gently until the horse feels the bit. This serves to attract the attention of the horse, prepares him for the movement, and prevents its execution being too abrupt or too slow.

*To open the right rein.* Carry the hand to the right.

*To open the left rein.* Carry the hand to the left.

*To wheel the horse to the right (or left).* Open the right (or left) rein and close the right (or left) leg, pressing slightly with the left (or right) knee, the right (or left) leg more to the rear than the other.

#### To March.

The squad is drilled at a walk and halted upon the completion of each movement after marching a few yards.

Being in line at a halt: 1. *Forward.* 2. *MARCH.*

At the command *forward*, gather the horse; at the command *march*, lower the hands slightly, and close the legs equally, increasing their pressure by degrees until the horse steps out, when the hands are gradually replaced and the legs relaxed.

At the command *march* the hands are lowered first to let the horse move forward with freedom, and the legs closed equally to make the horse move straight to the front, and by degrees to cause him to obey without irregularity.

#### To Halt.

Marching in line: 1. *Squad.* 2. *HALT.*

At the command *squad*, gather the horse without slackening the gait. At the command *halt*, raise the hands by degrees, move them toward the body until the horse obeys, holding the legs near to keep him straight and prevent him from backing; then replace the hands gradually and relax the leg.

#### To March by the Flank from Line with Intervals.

1. *By the right (or left) flank.* 2. *MARCH.*

At the first command, gather the horse; at the command *march*, open the right rein and close both legs, the right leg a little more to the rear than the other; wheel to

the right by moving the horse over a quarter of a circle, whose radius is two yards; when the wheel is nearly ended, diminish the effect of the right rein and leg, using the left rein and leg to straighten the horse; when the wheel is completed, close both legs and move off at right angles to the original direction.



The squad, having been marched by the flank, is now in *column of files* with the distance of one yard from the head of each horse to the croup of the one before him. Each Knight should so conduct his horse that the one immediately preceding him may hide all the other men in his front.

#### To Halt Column of Files and to Resume the March.

1. *Squad.* 2. *HALT;* and 1. *Forward.* 2. *MARCH.*

Since each horse with his rider occupies a space of three yards in length by one in breadth, the squad, if again marched by the flank, is brought back to its original position in line with intervals of three yards between the files.

#### To March to the Rear.

Being in line with intervals, or in column of files, 1. *Right (or left) about.* 2. *MARCH.*

Executed as the march by the flank, except that each describes a half circle whose radius is two yards, and then moves off in the new direction.

*To halt* upon the completion of the about, command: 1. *Squad.* 2. *HALT.*



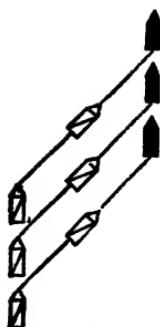
#### To Oblique.

Being in line with intervals, or in column of files: 1 *Right (or left) oblique,* 2. *MARCH.*

Executed as the march by the flank, except that each Knight makes a half-wheel to the right, describing the eighth

of a circle, whose radius is two yards, and then moves off in the new direction.

*1. Forward. 2. March.*



At the command *march*, the Knights make a half-wheel to the left and then move forward in the original direction.

In obliquing, the movement may be arrested for the purpose of correcting faults by the commands, *1. Squad*, *2. HALT*; and the oblique march resumed by the commands, *1. Squad*, *2. MARCH*.

*This rule is general, the command, *threes*, *platoon*, *commandery*, etc. being substituted for *squad*.*

**To Change Direction Marching in Column of Files.**

*1. Column right (or left), or 1. Column half right (or half left). 2. MARCH.*

At the first command the leading Knight gathers his horse; at the command *march* he executes the wheel, or half wheel, to the right as just explained, and moves off in the new direction; the others execute in succession the same movement upon arriving on the same ground.

**To Rein Back.**

Being in line at a halt.

*1. Backward. 2. MARCH. 3. Squad. 4. HALT.*

At the command *backward* gather the horse. At the command *march* keep a firm seat; hold both legs close; raise the hands so that the horse steps backward to regain his balance, then replace the hands gradually; when he stops backing raise the hands; when he steps back lower them; continue this movement until the command *halt*, which should be given when a few steps backward have been taken.

If the horse throws his haunches to the right, ease the left

leg and close well the right leg; if to the left, ease the right leg and close well the left. If this be not sufficient to put the horse in proper position open the rein on the side toward which he throws his haunches, supporting him at the same time with the other rein.

If the horse bring his legs too much under him, the Knight closes the legs well and then lowers the hands to make him regain his balance forward.

The legs are always closed before the hands are raised, so that the horse will not throw his weight on his hind legs before he begins to move.

#### Alignment.

*Remarks.*—To give a general alignment to the squad the instructor orders any Knight to move forward or rein back so as to be in line.

For the sake of convenience the instructor may cause the Knights, upon leading out, to form line with horses one foot apart, and teach them *to mount and dismount in line, to march by the flank from line, and to form line from column of files*, only employing these movements to begin and end the drill, the interval of three yards being maintained, as before, during the instruction.

#### To March by the Flank from Line.

Being at a halt.

1. *By file.* 2. *By the right (or left) flank.* 3. **MARCH.**

At the second command, the Knight on the right gathers his horse; at the command *march*, he wheels to the right and moves forward in the new direction. The second Knight from the right gathers his horse as soon as the first begins to move, wheels to the right, and follows him at the distance of one yard from head to croup. The movement is executed in succession by the other files, as explained for the second.

If marching, all halt at the command *march*, except the Knight on the right. The movement is then executed as before.

**To Form Line to the Right or Left, from Column of Files.**

1. *Left* (or *right*) *into line*. 2. MARCH. 3. *Squad*. 4. HALT.

At the first command the leading Knight gathers his horse, and at the command *march*, wheels to the left and moves forward in the new direction, halting at the fourth command, given after he has advanced at least five yards. The others move forward until nearly opposite their places in line, when each wheels to the left, closes in to the Knight who preceded him, and halts on the line.

**To Trot.**

Being at a walk: 1. *Trot*. 2. MARCH.

At the command *trot*, gather the horse; at the command *march*, lower the hands a little and close the legs, by degrees, until the horse obeys, when the hands are gradually replaced and the legs relaxed.

The gait is slow at first, and the instructor sees that the Knights feel lightly their horses' mouths without bearing upon the reins. Explain that the necessary ease and stability are acquired by sitting well down on the horse (or saddle) and partially relaxing the body, thighs and legs.

The movements already taught, at open intervals at a *walk*, are repeated at a *trot*. In wheeling by Knight, to the right or left, see that the trot is neither slackened nor increased.

**To Pass from the Trot to the Walk.**

1. *Walk*. 2. MARCH.

At the command *walk*, gather the horse; at the command *march*, raise the hands by degrees and hold the legs close to prevent the horse from coming to a halt; as soon as he walks, replace the hands gradually and relax the legs.

**To Pass from the Head to the Rear of the Column.**

Being at a walk, to teach the Knights to control their horses, and to use the reins and legs, command: 1. *First file from front to rear*. 2. MARCH.

At the first command the leading Knight gathers his horse, at the command *march* he leaves the column by a right or left about, according as he is marching to the right or left hand, moves parallel to the column, and enters it again at the rear by another *about*.

**To Pass from the Rear to the Head of the Column.**

Being at a halt: 1. *Last file from rear to front.* 2. *Trot.* 3. **MARCH.** At the command *trot* the Knight in rear gathers his horse; at the command *march* he leaves the column by an oblique, takes the trot, moves parallel to the column, enters it again at the head by another oblique, and resumes the walk.

Repeat the command until all the files have passed in succession from front to rear, or from rear to front.

**To Increase and Diminish the Rapidity of the Trot.**

Being at a slow trot. **TROT-OUT.**

At this command lower the hands and close the legs by degrees until the horse increases the gait to a fast trot. As soon as the proper gait is attained, see that the horses are kept up to it, and pay particular attention to the positions of the Knights; if their seats become too much deranged, he brings the squad to a slow trot or to a walk.

**SLOW-TROT.**

At this command raise the hands, by degrees, until the horse moderates the gait, closing the legs to prevent his taking the walk.

**To Pass from a Halt to a Trot.**

1. *Forward.* 2. *Trot.* 3. **MARCH.**

At the command *forward*, gather the horse; at the command *march*, pass at once to the trot, as explained, from a walk.

**To Halt from a Trot.**

1. *Squad.* 2. **HALT.**

Executed as explained from a walk; the Knights stop their horses together, but not abruptly.

**The Spur.**

The spur is used to punish the horse when he will not obey the legs, and to quicken his pace if lagging. It should be used vigorously and at the moment the horse commits the fault. To apply the spurs, hold firmly to the horse with the legs, turn the toes a little out, give the reins slightly, and press firmly with the spurs behind the girth, without moving the body, until the horse obeys. The spurs must never be used unless absolutely necessary, and then both are applied at the same moment.

**To Gallop.**

At first do not dwell upon the mechanism of the gait, but let each Knight accommodate himself to the motion of the horse without losing his seat.

Marching at a trot, increase to three yards the distances from head to croup, and command: 1. *Gallop*. 2. MARCH.

At the command *gallop*, gather the horse, keeping him perfectly straight; at the command *march*, carry the hand slightly forward, and to the left, to enable the right shoulder to move in advance of the left; close the legs behind the girth so as to urge the horse forward, causing him to feel the left leg most. When the horse obeys, keep the hand light that the gallop may be free and regular, and hold the legs close, to keep him at the gait.

To keep a horse true the rider must accommodate himself to all his motions, particularly in changing direction; keep the horses steady; when able to manage them properly at a gallop, the distance of one yard from head to croup is gradually resumed.

**To Pass from the Gallop to the Trot.**

1. *Trot*. 2. MARCH.

At the command *trot*, gather the horse; at the command *march*, raise the bridle-hand by degrees and hold the legs close; as soon as the horse trots, replace the hand gradually and relax the legs.

**Instruction of a Squad with Closed Intervals.**

The Knights, having acquired ease and steadiness in the management of their horses, any convenient number may now be united, and exercised in all the preceding movements.

A well instructed Knight is placed on each flank to act as a guide or conductor, and attention is paid to precision in drill.

All the movements are first executed at a *walk*; as the instruction progresses the gait is gradually increased. *This rule is general.*

**Changes of Gait.**

The squad, being sufficiently instructed at a *walk*, the instructor repeats the movements at a *trot*, passing frequently from a walk to a trot, and from a trot to a walk. He then drills at a trot from a halt, and at halting while marching at a trot, making the Knights understand that this is an exceptional movement, and that great care must be taken never to check a horse so suddenly as to injure his mouth or throw him on his haunches. The squad is next drilled at the *gallop*, the instructor causing it to pass to the *trot*, and then to the *walk*, before halting.

Whenever the change is made from a slow gait to one more rapid, as from the *walk* to a *trot*, begin slowly and increase it gradually to the degree prescribed; whenever the change is made from one gait to a slower one, as from the *trot* to the *walk*, slacken the gait gradually. *This rule is general.*

## School of the Platoon.



### Being Division Mounted.

**I**N the chivalric orders the term *division* is used in lieu of *platoon*, to make the dismounted drill harmonize with asylum movements, (which uniformly designates one-half or one-third [or one-fourth] of the commandery a "division"). In the mounted drill, the same reason does not so strongly apply and the army terms *squad* and *platoon* are therefore used, which will distinguish a mounted detachment or subdivision of Templars from the dismounted.

The platoon is formed in single rank of not less than three nor more than six threes, and in this school an instructor is presumably in command.

One of the three principal officers is the instructor, who moves wherever his presence is necessary. One of these, or a Warden, the Sword Bearer or Warder, acts as chief of platoon, and assists in the movements as the instructor may direct.

### To Mount.

The platoon being in line, the Knights standing to horse, the chief of platoon, mounted ten yards in front of the center of the platoon, facing it. After the mounting is completed (if not done before), threes should be counted.

1. Count.
2. Twos.
3. Prepare to mount.
4. MOUNT.
5. FORM.
6. RANK.

At the command *rank*, the chief of platoon moves forward, turns to the left about and takes his post in front of the center of the platoon, the croup of his horse one yard in front of the heads of the horses in the rank.

**ALIGNMENTS.**

The instructor places himself on the flank of the platoon, facing to the left or right, according as the alignment is to the right or left, and commands: 1. *Right* (or *left*). 2. DRESS. 3. FRONT.

At the command *dress* the chief of platoon moves forward to his position in front of the new line.

To calm the horses short marches are occasionally made between the alignments.

**By File.**

First teach the Knights to dress by file; to this end, move two or three files, from the right or left, a few yards to the front, see that they are in line, and command:

1. *By file.* 2. *Right* (or *left*). 3. DRESS. 4. FRONT.

At the second command the Knight on the right gathers his horse, and, at the command *dress*, he moves forward; when near the line he slackens the gait, moves up slowly, casts his eyes to the right so as to see the buttons on the breast of second Knight from him, (if wearing the single-breasted coat, buttoned to the throat, as should be worn by Knights in ranks), sits squarely on his horse, keeps his horse straight in rank, and touches lightly with his boot the boot of the Knight on his right.

The other Knights dress in the same manner, each moving off when the preceding one halts; see that the Knights move steadily, and keep the shoulders square without turning the head too much; that they halt on the same line, and dress as they arrive, without delay; that they do not open the knee in order to feel the boot, and that they give the hand and relax the legs as soon as they have dressed.

At the command *front*, given when the last Knight is aligned, all cast their eyes to the front.

In successive movements the Knights, who are to move at the command of execution, gather their horses at the prepara-

ory command, the others gather their horses just before they begin the movement; in simultaneous movements, all gather their horses at the preparatory command.

To teach the Knights, when dressing, to approach the line perpendicularly, the two or three files, which are advanced as a basis of alignment, move forward, make a half wheel to the right, and march a few yards in the new direction. The remainder of the movement is executed as just described, observing that each file moves straight to the front, until, by making a half wheel to the right and moving forward, he can come up squarely to his place in line.

#### By Twos or Threes.

The alignment is next executed by twos or by threes. Having established the right (or left) two or three, command:

1. *By twos (or threes).*
2. *Right (or left).*
3. DRESS.
4. FRONT.

At the command *dress*, the twos (or threes) align themselves successively, as prescribed for the alignment by file, the Knights of each two (or three) taking care to move together.

#### By Platoon.

Being in line, the instructor establishes the Knight, on the flank toward which he wishes to dress the platoon, in such a position that no Knight will have to rein back, and commands:

1. *Right (or left)*
2. DRESS.
3. FRONT.

At the command *dress*, all the Knights align themselves promptly and steadily on the one established as a basis.

To align the platoon to the rear, cause two files from the right or left to rein back a few yards, align them parallel to the line and opposite their places, and command:

1. *Right or (left) backward.*
2. DRESS.
3. FRONT.

At the command *dress*, all the Knights rein back, keeping

their horses straight, pass a little to the rear of the line, and then dress up to the Knights already established.

The alignment to the rear is not habitually used.

#### To Rest the Platoon.

Cause the platoon to *dismount* and *form rank*, and then command:

1. *Platoon.* 2. REST.

To call the platoon to attention, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon.* 2. ATTENTION.

and then causes the platoon to *mount*.

The chief of platoon moves forward at the preparatory command for mounting and dismounting, so that he will be at the proper distance in front when the rank is again formed.

#### To March in Line

The platoon being at a halt and aligned, the instructor places himself in the rear of the Knight on the right or left, who is to be the guide, indicates to him a fixed point on a line perpendicular to the front of the platoon, and then commands:

1. *Forward.* 2. *Guide right (or left).* 3. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the guide, selecting points on the ground on which to direct himself, marches straight to the front at an even gait. All the other Knights move forward at the same gait as the guide, keep their horses straight in ranks, feel lightly the boot of the man on the side of the guide to preserve the alignment, keep their heads to the front, yield to pressure coming from the side of the guide, and resist pressure coming from the opposite side. If in advance of the line, the Knights check their horses gradually; if in rear they move up, increasing the pace a little; if too near, or too far from the one on the side of the guide, they move from or approach him by degrees, gaining more ground to the front than to the side.

If the guide be thrown out of his direction by pressure, he

indicates it by extending his arm to the front. The Knights then carry the bridle-hand toward the opposite side, glance toward the guide, and straighten their horses as soon as the pressure is relieved.

**To Halt the Platoon and Align it.**

**1. Platoon. 2. HALT. 3. Right (or left). 4. DRESS. 5. FRONT.**

Without giving the commands for dressing the instructor may rectify the alignment by directing such files as are out of the line to move up or back.

**To Oblique in Line.**

**1. Right (or left) oblique. 2. MARCH.**

At the command *march*, each Knight executes a quarter-wheel to the right, so that the head of his horse may be opposite the lower part of the neck of the horse on his right, and that his right knee may be in rear of the left knee of the Knight on his right. The Knights then move in the new direction, regulating themselves upon the Knight on the right,

who is the guide; the front of the platoon remains parallel to its original position.

When the Knights are not sufficiently closed in obliquing, they increase gradually the gait, in order to approach the side toward which they march. If they are too much closed, or more advanced than the flank toward which they oblique, they gradually slacken the gait. In the oblique march more ground is gained to the front than to the side, the angle of obliquity in line being twenty-two and a half degrees.

**1. Forward. 2. MARCH.**

At the command *march*, the Knights make a quarter wheel to the left and move forward, dressing toward the guide, resuming the direct march.



In obliquing, the guide is always, without indication, on the side toward which the oblique is made. On resuming the direct march, the guide, without indication, is on the side it was previous to the oblique.

#### To Rein Back the Platoon.

Being in line at a halt.

1. *Backward.*
2. *Guide right (or left).*
3. MARCH.

At the command *march*, all the Knights rein back, dressing on the guide. After a few steps, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon.*
2. *HALT.*
3. *Right (or left).*
4. DRESS.
5. FRONT.

#### WHEELINGS.

##### Wheeling on a Fixed Pivot.

Being in line, at a halt, for instruction, command:

1. *In circle right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the platoon wheels in circle to the right; the Knight who forms the pivot turns his horse upon his forefeet, without advancing, reining back, or passing to the right or left; he frequently casts his eyes toward the marching flank and moves in conformity with it.

The Knight on the marching flank casts his eyes from time to time toward the pivot, gradually increasing or decreasing his circle, according as he sees crowding or opening between the files; the other Knights turn the head slightly toward the marching flank, feel lightly the boot on the side of the pivot, yield to pressure from the pivot flank, and resist pressure from the marching flank. If the Knights open, they glance alternately toward the pivot and the marching flank, and close toward the pivot by gradually diminishing their circles and gaining more ground to the front than to the side. If too much closed they increase their circles and gradually gain ground from the pivot.

After wheeling around the circle several times command:

**1. Platoon. 2. HALT. 3. Left (or right). 4. DRESS. 5. FRONT.**

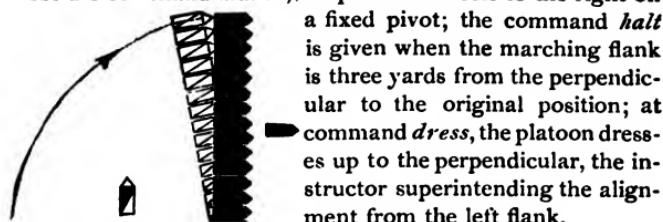
In dressing, the Knight on the marching flank is so placed that the pivot is not moved forward or backward.

#### To Wheel to the Right or Left.

Being in line at a halt.

**1. Right (or left) wheel. 2. MARCH. 3. Platoon. 4. HALT.  
5. Left (or right). 6. DRESS. 7. FRONT.**

At the command *march*, the platoon wheels to the right on



a fixed pivot; the command *halt* is given when the marching flank is three yards from the perpendicular to the original position; at command *dress*, the platoon dresses up to the perpendicular, the instructor superintending the alignment from the left flank.

To continue the march, upon completion of the wheel, command: **3. Forward. 4. MARCH. 5. Guide (right or left);** the third command is given when the marching flank is three yards from the perpendicular, the fourth as the wheel is completed, and the fifth immediately after.

As horses cannot be stopped instantly, the command *halt* is so given that the horses may be halted at the time or place prescribed. The same principle applies to the command *march*.

The *wheel on the fixed pivot* is executed on the march in the same manner, except that, at the command *march*, the pivot Knight halts and then turns in his place. The marching flank moves at the same gait as before the wheel.

In *wheeling by subdivisions* on a fixed pivot, when the subdivisions are halted, the command *halt* is given when the

marching flank has three yards to march to complete the wheel; when the forward march is taken up on the completion of the wheel, the commands are so given that the forward march is taken up the instant the wheel is completed.

#### To Make a Half Wheel.

1. Right (or left) half wheel.
2. MARCH.
3. Platoon.
4. HALT.
5. Left (or right).
6. DRESS.
7. FRONT.
- Or, 3. Forward.
4. MARCH.
5. Guide (right or left).

Executed as just explained, except that the marching flank moves over an arc of only forty-five degrees.

#### To Execute the About by Platoon.



1. Platoon right (or left) about.
2. MARCH.
3. Platoon.
4. HALT.
5. Left (or right).
6. DRESS.
7. FRONT.

At the command *march* the platoon wheels about on a fixed pivot.

To continue the march, upon the completion of the about, command: 3. Forward. 4. MARCH. 5. Guide (right or left).

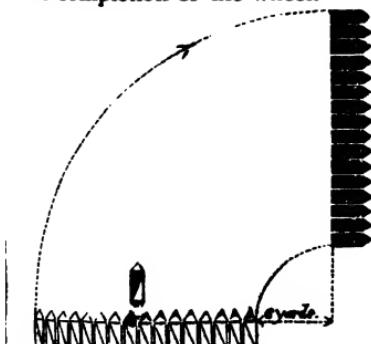
#### To Wheel on a Movable Pivot.

*In column of twos, threes or sections* the pivot Knight passes over an arc of a circle whose radius is three yards, so as to leave the ground on which the movement commenced, and not obstruct the march of the subdivisions in rear. The

pivot preserves the original gait, or the gait designated in the command; the Knights toward the marching flank increase the gait during the wheel in proportion to their distance from the pivot, and resume the original gait on the completion of the wheel.

*In the wheel by platoon*, the pivot Knight passes over the arc of a circle whose radius is six yards; the Knight, who is at one-third the distance from the pivot to the marching flank, preserves the original gait; from this Knight to the marching flank the Knights progressively increase the gait, decreasing it in the same manner from the designated Knight to the pivot; the Knights touch with the boot toward the pivot, and dress toward the marching flank; the Knight on the marching flank casts his eyes from time to time toward the pivot, and decreases or increases his circle according as there is opening or crowding among the files. Upon the completion of the wheel, all the Knights resume the original gait, and move forward in the new direction, the guide, without indication, being on the same flank as before the movement.

In wheeling on a movable pivot at a gallop, the file on the marching flank preserves the gait; the others reduce the gait progressively to the pivot, and resume the original gait on the completion of the wheel.



The wheel on a movable pivot, except in column of files, twos, threes and sections, is always executed on the march.

Being in march.

1. Right turn.
  2. MARCH.
  3. Forward.
  4. MARCH.
- At the command *march*, the platoon wheels on a movable

pivot, as just explained; the third command is given when the marching flank is near the perpendicular to the original direction; and the fourth command is given as the wheel is completed.

In wheeling by subdivision on the movable pivot, the commands *forward, march*, are so given that the platoon moves forward the instant the wheel is completed.

**Marching in Line to effect a slight Change of Direction.**

*Incline to the right (or left).*

The guide turns his horse slightly to the right and advances in the new direction; the other Knights turn their horses slightly to the right and conform to the movements of the guide, increasing or decreasing the gait, according as the change is toward the side of the guide or the side opposite.

**To March by the Flank.**

*1. Threes (or twos) right (or left). 2. MARCH.*

Being in line.

At the command *march*, each three wheels to the right on a fixed pivot, and moves forward in the new direction, each three dressing to the left and preserving the distance of one yard from head to croup. The chief of platoon places himself on the left of the leading three.

In wheeling by threes the *forward march* is taken up on completion of the wheel, unless the command *halt* be given.

**To Form Column of Threes or Twos and Halt.**

*1. Threes right (or left). 2. MARCH. 3. Platoon. 4. HALT.*

The threes are halted on completion of the wheel, and the ranks dress toward the marching flank.

**To March Column of Threes to the Front from Line.**

*1. Right (or left) forward. 2. Threes right (or left).  
3. MARCH.*

Executed similar to the like movement dismounted. *The*

chief of platoon placing himself on the left of the leading three.

**To Halt the Column and Put it in March.**

1. *Platoon.* 2. HALT, and 1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

**To Oblique in Column of Threes and to Resume the Direct March.**

1. *Right* (or *left*) *oblique.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march* the Knights open out slightly and each Knight executes a half wheel to the right, and then moves in the new direction, the threes preserve their parallelism; the right Knight of each three is the guide of the rank; the right Knight of the leading three is the guide of the column.

In column of threes, twos, and files, the angle of obliquity is forty-five degrees.

**To Resume the Direct March.**

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march* the Knights resume the direct march, by making a half wheel to the left, closing to, and dressing on the Knight toward whom they dressed before the oblique commenced.

In obliquing in column, the guides keep on a line parallel to the original direction.

**To Change Direction in Column of Threes.**

Being in march, the instructor commands:

1. *Column right* (or *left*). 2. MARCH.

At the command *march* the leading three wheels to the right on a movable pivot. The other threes move forward and wheel on the same ground as the first.

*Column half right* (or *left*) is similarly executed.

1. *Forward.* 2. *Column right* (or *left*). 3. MARCH.

Puts the column in march and changes the direction at the same time.

**To March the Column of Threes to the Rear.**

1. *Threes left (or right) about.*
2. MARCH.

The threes wheel about to the left on fixed pivots; the chief of platoon wheels about to the left and hastens to place himself on the right of the leading three.

In column of threes the about is executed toward either side, there being no file-closers to interfere with the movement.

**To Form Line from Column of Threes to the Right or Left.**

1. *Threes right (or left).*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide (right or left),*  
or, 3. *Platoon.*
4. HALT.
5. *Left (or right),*
6. DRESS.
7. FRONT.

The threes wheel on fixed pivots and move forward, or halt, according to the command. The platoon is halted or the guide is announced as the three unite in line. The chief of platoon places himself in front of the center of the platoon. This forms line by groups of threes at one yard intervals.

**To Form Line to the Left or Right without Interval.**

1. *Left (or right) into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Platoon.*
4. HALT.
5. *Right (or left).*
6. DRESS.
7. FRONT.

The movement is executed as described for twos or files.

**To form Line on the Right or Left.**

1. *On right (or left) into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Platoon.*
4. HALT.
5. *Right (or left).*
6. DRESS.
7. FRONT.

At the command *march* the leading three wheels to the right on a movable pivot and moves forward, dressing to the right; the other threes march three yards beyond the wheeling point of the three next preceding, and wheel as just explained; at the command *halt*, given when the leading three has advanced thirty yards in the new direction (or less if necessary), it halts, and at the sixth command, given immediately after, it dresses to the right; the other threes halt and

dress successively upon arriving in line. The chief of platoon takes his place in line, in front of its center.

At the seventh command, given when the left three completes its dressing, all the Knights cast their eyes to the front.

#### To Form Line to the Front.

1. *Left (or right) front into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Platoon.*
4. HALT.
5. *Right (or left).*
6. DRESS.
7. FRONT.

At *march*, first three moves straight forward, dressing to right; other threes oblique to left till opposite their places in line, when each marches to front. At *halt*, given when leading three has advanced thirty yards, (or less if necessary), it halts, and sixth command is given immediately afterwards; each of other threes halts upon arriving in rear of the line and dresses to the right. The chief of platoon takes his place in line. The seventh command is given when the left three is dressed.

If *marching at a trot* or at a walk and the command be *trot*, the instructor commands, *guide right* immediately after the command *march*; the leading three moves at a walk, the others oblique at a trot, each taking the walk and dressing to the right on arriving abreast of the leading three.

If *marching at a gallop*, or at a trot, and the command be *gallop*, the same principle applies, the leading three moving at a *trot*.

#### To Face to the Rear and March to the Rear.

1. *Threes right (or left) about.*
  2. MARCH.
  3. *Platoon.*
  4. HALT.
  5. *Left (or right).*
  6. DRESS.
  7. FRONT.
- or 3. *Guide right (or left).*

At the command *march* the threes wheel about on fixed pivots, and halt or move forward, according to the command. The chief of platoon wheels about in the same direction as the threes and takes his post, passing quickly between the heads of one three and the croups of the pre-

ceding three, or if necessary passes around the flank of the platoon.

**To Break Threes to the Rear.**

1. (So many) *threes from right (or left) to rear.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the designated threes execute *left forward threes left* on the three next on their left which remains in line.

**To Form the Rear Threes into Line.**

1. *Rear Threes right (or left) front into line.* 2. *Trot (or gallop).* 3. MARCH.

The rear threes form front into line at the increased gait.

**To Form Column of Files from Column of Threes or Two's.**

1. *Right (or left) by files.* 2. MARCH.

Being at a halt.

At the command *march* the right file of the leading three moves forward, the chief of platoon placing himself on his left; the second and third files of the leading three keep their horses straight, and when the croup of the horse of the right file is opposite the head of his horse, the second file oblique to the right and follows the leading file, preserving the distance of one yard. The third file oblique in like manner. When the left file of the leading three commences the oblique the right file of the second three moves forward, and so on.

If marching at a walk, the right file of the leading three continues the walk; the others halt at the command *march*, and then execute the movement as before.

If marching at a trot, or at a walk and the command be trot, the right file of the leading three moves at a trot; the other files of the leading three march at a walk till severally disengaged, when they successively oblique at a trot; the other threes move at a walk and break successively at a trot, as explained for the first three.

*If marching at a gallop, or a trot and the command be gallop, the same principles apply, the threes moving at a trot, and breaking successively at a gallop.*

*Column of files from column of threes* is similarly executed.

The instructor commands *right* (or *left*) *by files*, according as the right or left is in front.

**To Form Column of Twos from Column of Threes.**

1. *Form twos.*
2. *Right* (or *left*) *oblique.*
3. MARCH.

This is executed on the principles just explained. The right two of the leading three moves forward, followed by the right file of the second (even) three; the left file of the leading three oblique to the right, when the croups of the horses of the right two are opposite his horse's head, and forms a two with the right file of the second three. The left two of the second three oblique together when the croup of their right file is opposite their horses' heads, and so on. The chief of platoon places himself on the left of the left Knight of the leading two, who is the guide.

**To Form Column of Threes from Column of Files.**

1. *Form threes.*
2. *Left* (or *right*) *oblique.*
3. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the leading file of the first three moves three yards to the front and halts; the second and third file oblique to the left until uncovered, and then successively march to the front, and each halts upon arriving abreast of the first file; the other files march forward and form threes successively, as explained for the first, the second and third files of each three obliquing when the leading files arrive at three yards from their position.

*If marching at a trot, or a walk and the command be trot, the leading file moves at a walk; the second and third files of the leading three oblique to the left at a trot and take the walk on arriving abreast of the leading file; the other files*

move at a trot, the threes successively forming and taking the walk as the leading file closes upon the three preceding.

*If marching at a gallop*, or a trot and the command be *gallop*, the same principles apply, the leading file moving at a trot.

**To Form Column of Threes from Column of Twos.**

1. *Form threes.*
2. *Left oblique.*
3. MARCH.

This is executed upon principles similar to those explained; the leading two move forward three yards and halt; the left file of the second two oblique to the left until uncovered, then marches to the front, halting when abreast of the leading two; the right file of the second two moves forward and the third two oblique together and move forward, or take the increased gait, and so on.

**Movements in Columns of Twos.**

The column changes direction, is halted and put in march by the same commands and means as column of threes, or files. It is marched to the rear by the commands:

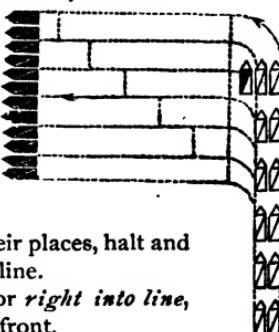
1. *Twos right (or left) about.*
2. MARCH.

**To Form Line from Column of Twos or Files (or Threes) to the Right or Left.**

1. *Left (or right) into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Platoon.*
4. HALT.
5. *Right (or left).*
6. DRESS.
7. FRONT.

At the command *march* the leading two (or file) wheel to the left and move forward, the command *halt* being given when they have advanced thirty yards, or less if necessary, the other twos (or files) move forward and successively wheel to the left upon arriving opposite their places, halt and dress to the right upon arriving in line.

The instructor commands *left* or *right into line*, according as the right or left is in front.

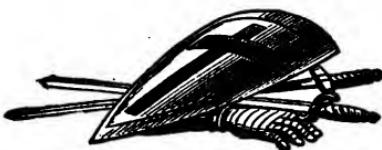


**To Form Line on the Right or Left.**

Executed by the same commands and means as in column of threes, the instructor commanding, *on right or left into line*, according as the right or left is in front.

**To Form Line to the Front**

Executed by the same commands and means as in column of threes, the instructor commanding, *left or right front into line*, according as the right or left is in front.



pivot, as just explained; the third command is given when the marching flank is near the perpendicular to the original direction; and the fourth command is given as the wheel is completed.

In wheeling by subdivision on the movable pivot, the commands *forward, march*, are so given that the platoon moves forward the instant the wheel is completed.

**Marching in Line to effect a slight Change of Direction.**  
*Incline to the right (or left).*

The guide turns his horse slightly to the right and advances in the new direction; the other Knights turn their horses slightly to the right and conform to the movements of the guide, increasing or decreasing the gait, according as the change is toward the side of the guide or the side opposite.

**To March by the Flank.**

1. *Threes (or twos) right (or left).* 2. MARCH.

Being in line.

At the command *march*, each three wheels to the right on a fixed pivot, and moves forward in the new direction, each three dressing to the left and preserving the distance of one yard from head to croup. The chief of platoon places himself on the left of the leading three.

In wheeling by threes the *forward march* is taken up on completion of the wheel, unless the command *halt* be given.

**To Form Column of Threes or Twos and Halt.**

1. *Threes right (or left).* 2. MARCH. 3. PLATOON. 4. HALT.

The threes are halted on completion of the wheel, and the ranks dress toward the marching flank.

**To March Column of Threes to the Front from Line.**

1. *Right (or left) forward.* 2. *Threes right (or left).*  
3. MARCH.

*Executed similar to the like movement dismounted. The*

The Standard Bearer, with a small black and white guidon, is on the left of the first platoon. If bearing the standard, the guard forms as before explained, or as the left three of the first platoon.

The Sword Bearer on the right of the second platoon, and the Warder is the right of the second section, if not with the standard guard.

*If the commandery is divided into four platoons* the Wardens command the center platoons and are one yard in front of their respective platoons; their places are filled by the Sword Bearer and Warder on the right and left of the line, and the Standard Bearer forms the left file of the second platoon.

*When there are three platoons* the Senior Warden commands the second; the Junior Warden takes his place on the right; and the Sword Bearer or a well drilled Knight takes the left of the line.

*The Trumpeter*, in line, is two yards from the right flank, or accompanies the commander in the drill.

Other officers, whose duties are in the asylum, etc., only take place in the ranks as other Knights.

#### **Formation.**

In whatever direction the commandery faces, the platoons are designated from the right when in line, and from the head when in column, *first platoon, second platoon*, and so on.

At the *assembly* the commandery is formed, and the Senior Warden marches it to the horses, which are prepared to be led out. At the command

#### *Lead Out,*

The Knights lead out and form in line, single rank, so that, usually, the tallest Knights and horses may be on the right.

The officers, below the rank of Senior Warden, take their places in rear of and near their places in line.

The Senior Warden, mounted, divides the commandery

into two, three, or four platoons, according to its size, designates the sections, if possible two sections to a platoon, directs the officers in rear to take their places, and commands:

1. *Count.* 2. *THREES.*

The Senior Warden, six yards in front of the center of the commandery, salutes the Eminent Commander, and reports the result of roll-call (if roll was called), then takes his post.

The chiefs of platoons, mounted, take their places ten yards in front of the centers of their platoons, facing them. The commander then orders:

1. *Prepare to Mount.* 2. *MOUNT.* 3. *Form.* 4. *RANK.*

At the command *rank*, the chiefs of platoons move forward, turn to the left about, and take their posts.

**Alignments.**

The commandery is aligned by file, by twos and by threes, as prescribed in the School of the Platoon.

To align the commandery by platoon, the commander first establishes the right and left principal guides thirty yards in advance, facing each other, on a line parallel to the front of the commandery, and at a distance apart equal to the front of the commandery.

1. *By platoon.* 2. *Right (or left).* 3. *DRESS.* 4. *FRONT.*

At the third command the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Forward.* 2. *Guide right.* 3. *MARCH*, halts his platoon at three yards from the line, commands: 1. *Right.* 2. *DRESS*, and moves forward to his post. The chiefs of the other platoons conform to what is prescribed for the chief of the first platoon, each platoon being put in march when the platoon next preceding halts. The file on the right, in dressing, places the head of his horse against the boot of the principal guide. The commander, facing to the left, superintends the alignment from the right flank, and gives the command *front* as soon as the platoon is aligned.

The principal guides return to their places at the commands. 1. *Guides.* 2. Posts.

To align the commandery the commander establishes the right or left guide of the commandery, and then commands:

1. *Right* (or *left*). 2. DRESS. 3. FRONT.

The commander superintends the alingnment on the flank toward which the dress is ordered.

#### General Movements.



The commandery performs all the movements explained in the School of the Platoon, by the same commands and means, substituting in the commands *commandery* for *platoon*.



*In wheeling on a movable pivot*, the pivot Knight passes over an arc of a circle whose radius is twelve yards; the one who is at one-third the distance from the pivot to the marching flank, preserves the original gait.



*In column of threes, twos, or files*, the commander marches on the side of the chiefs of platoons, four yards from the flank of the column, in line with the leading three, two, or file.



In wheeling about in column of threes, twos, or files, the commander and chiefs of platoons wheel about and hasten to take their places abreast of their leading threes, twos, or files.



In wheeling about in line the commander and chiefs of platoons pass between the threes, or, when necessary, they may pass around the flanks.



The commander goes to his position by the shortest route without going between threes.

#### To take Open Order.

Being in line at a halt.

1. *Rear open order.* 2. MARCH. 3. FRONT.

At the command *march*, the chiefs of platoons move for-

ward so as to have a distance of six yards from the croups of their horses to the heads of the horses in rank; the chiefs of platoons and rank align themselves to the right; the commander verifies the alignment of the officers and the rank; the officers cast their eyes to the front as soon as their alignment is verified; and at the command *front* the Knights cast their eyes to the front and the commander places himself on the line of the chiefs of platoons, in front of the right file of the commandery.

#### To Take Close Order.

##### 1. *Close order.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the chiefs of platoons, wheel to the left about, close to their platoons, and wheel to the left about to their places in line; the commander takes his place in front of the center of the commandery.

#### To Dismiss the Commandery.

The commander causes the commandery to dismount and form rank, and directs the Senior Warden to dismiss it, at which the three principal officers return swords and retire. The Sr. Warden causes the commandery to *file off*, and when the horses and equipments are secured and cared for, he forms the commandery on foot, marches it to its parade-ground, and dismisses it.

#### To Pass Obstacles.

The commandery marching in line, if the obstacle covers more than the front of one platoon, the commander breaks the commandery into column of threes to the front. If it covers but one platoon, the commander commands:

1. (Such) *platoon.* 2. *Right (or left) forward.* 3. *Threes right (or left).* 4. MARCH.

#### To Form the Platoon into Line.

1. (Such) *platoon.* 2. *Left (or right) front into line.* 3. *Trot (or gallop).* 4. MARCH.

The Eminent Commander commands *trot* or *gallop*, ac-

cording as the commandery is marching at a walk or a trot.

If the obstacle covers a few threes on the flank of the commandery, the commander may pass it without breaking threes to the rear.

#### To Form Column of Sections.

Being in line.

1. *Center forward.*
2. *Threes left and right.*
3. **MARCH.**
4. *Guide (right or left).*

At the command *march*, the second platoon executes *left forward, threes left*; the third platoon, *right forward, threes right*; the first and fourth platoons wheel by threes respectively to the left and right, and follow the second and third. The chiefs of platoons march abreast of their leading threes. The commander marches on the side of the guide, abreast of and four yards from the leading section.

If there are but three platoons, the two center threes are previously designated. These threes move forward, followed by the threes to the right and left. The chief of the center platoon marches abreast of the leading section, on the side of the guide.

#### To Form Two Columns of Sections.

1. *First and second.*
2. *Third and fourth platoons.*
3. *Center forward.*
4. *Threes left and right.*
5. **MARCH.**
6. *Guide right or left.*



The commander marches midway between the two columns, and in line with the leading sections.

#### Movements in Column of Sections.

The column marches to the right or left to the rear, and

ward so as to have a distance of six yards from the croups of their horses to the heads of the horses in rank; the chiefs of platoons and rank align themselves to the right; the commander verifies the alignment of the officers and the rank; the officers cast their eyes to the front as soon as their alignment is verified; and at the command *front* the Knights cast their eyes to the front and the commander places himself on the line of the chiefs of platoons, in front of the right file of the commandery.

**To Take Close Order.**

1. *Close order.*
2. *MARCH.*

At the command *march*, the chiefs of platoons, wheel to the left about, close to their platoons, and wheel to the left about to their places in line; the commander takes his place in front of the center of the commandery.

**To Dismiss the Commandery.**

The commander causes the commandery to dismount and form rank, and directs the Senior Warden to dismiss it, at which the three principal officers return swords and retire. The Sr. Warden causes the commandery to *file off*, and when the horses and equipments are secured and cared for, he forms the commandery on foot, marches it to its parade-ground, and dismisses it.

**To Pass Obstacles.**

The commandery marching in line, if the obstacle covers more than the front of one platoon, the commander breaks the commandery into column of threes to the front. If it covers but one platoon, the commander commands:

1. (Such) *platoon.*
2. *Right (or left) forward.*
3. *Threes right (or left).*
4. *MARCH.*

**To Form the Platoon into Line.**

1. (Such) *platoon.*
2. *Left (or right) front into line.*
3. *Trot (or gallop).*
4. *MARCH.*

The Eminent Commander commands *trot* or *gallop*, ac-

cording as the commandery is marching at a walk or a trot.

If the obstacle covers a few threes on the flank of the commandery, the commander may pass it without breaking threes to the rear.

#### To Form Column of Sections.

Being in line.

1. *Center forward.*
2. *Threes left and right.*
3. **MARCH.**
4. *Guide (right or left).*

At the command *march*, the second platoon executes *left forward, threes left*; the third platoon, *right forward, threes right*; the first and fourth platoons wheel by threes respectively to the left and right, and follow the second and third. The chiefs of platoons march abreast of their leading threes. The commander marches on the side of the guide, abreast of and four yards from the leading section.

If there are but three platoons, the two center threes are previously designated. These threes move forward, followed by the threes to the right and left. The chief of the center platoon marches abreast of the leading section, on the side of the guide.

#### To Form Two Columns of Sections.

1. *First and second.*
2. *Third and fourth platoons.*
3. *Center forward.*
4. *Threes left and right.*
5. **MARCH.**
6. *Guide right or left.*



The commander marches midway between the two columns, and in line with the leading sections.

#### Movements in Column of Sections.

The column marches to the right or left to the rear, and

changes direction by the same commands as a column of threes.

In changing direction the column wheels with a front of six. In wheeling to the right, to the left, or about, each three wheels by itself.

In the march to the rear, whether the platoons be equal or unequal, the leading threes march abreast.

By a wheel by threes to the right or left the commandery is formed in double rank, with intervals or without, according to the command, as before explained. The rear rank preserves the distance of one yard from head to croup.

The position of the commander is the same as when the commandery is in single rank.

If the commandery is formed in two columns of sections, and these be formed in double rank, the place of the commander is on the side of the guide, four yards from the flank of the leading rank.

The chiefs of platoons march in front or in rear of the centers of their platoons, according as their platoons form the front or rear rank.

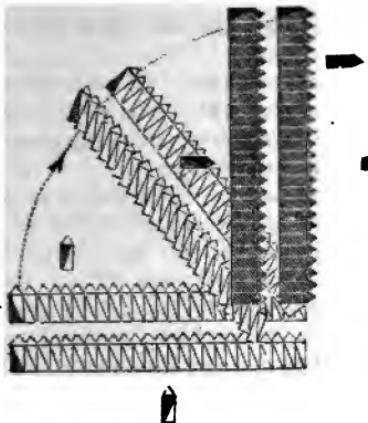
If there be three platoons, the chief of the second platoon marches in front of his front rank, passing around the flank, when wheeling about in line.

If a commandery of two platoons be formed in double rank, the chief of the platoon in front takes post in front of the inner file of his right or left three.

To mount and dismount in double rank, the commander moves the front rank forward six yards, and then gives the same command as when in single rank. After mounting, the commander closes the rear rank to one yard.

In wheeling in double rank, on a fixed or on a movable pivot, the front rank wheels, as already explained.

In wheeling on fixed pivot the Knights of the rear rank turn the heads of their horses toward the marching flank, so



that each one may be out of the direction of his front rank frater by two Knights, keeping, during the wheel, in this relative position, and preserving his distance of one yard from the front rank; upon the completion of the wheel each Knight in the rear rank covers his front rank frater.

In wheeling on a movable pivot, the rear rank

**Knights follow their front rank fraters.**

#### To Form Line from Column of Sections to the Front.

##### 1. Right and left front into line. 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the right threes execute *right front into line*; the left threes, *left front into line*.

If executed at a *walk*, the commander halts the commandery when the center threes have advanced thirty yards; and when the rear threes are in line, he dresses the commandery to the right or left.

If executed at a *trot* or *gallop* the commander commands: *Guide (right or left)* when the rear threes arrive in line.

Line is always formed from double column of threes (sections) when the original center of the commandery is at the head of the column.

#### To and on the Right or Left into Line.

##### 1. Right (or left) into line. 2. Left (or right) threes on right (or left) into line. 3. MARCH. 4. Guide right (or left).

At the command *march*, the right threes form line to the

right, as before explained (page 208); the left threes move forward and execute *on right into line*.

If executed at a *walk*, the commander halts the commandery when the right threes have advanced thirty yards, and then dresses the commandery to the right, commanding *front* when all the threes have arrived on the line.

If marching at a *trot*, or a *walk* and the command be *trot*, the leading three of the right threes wheels and moves forward at a *walk*; the others form line at a *trot*; the left threes execute *on right into line* at a *trot*, each three taking the walk upon arriving in line with the right threes.

If marching at a *gallop*, or at a *trot* and the command be *gallop*, the same principle applies; the right threes form line and move forward at a *trot*, and the left threes execute the movement at a *gallop*.

#### To Form Column of Platoons to the Right or Left.

Being in line.

##### 1. Platoons right (or left) wheel. 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, each platoon wheels to the right on a fixed pivot. When the marching flank is at three yards



from the perpendicular, each chief halts his platoon, and, remaining in his place, commands: 1. *Left*. 2. *DRESS*. 3. *FRONT*.

At the second command the platoon dresses up to the perpendicular. The guides, if not at the proper distance, gain it when the column is put in march.

In column of platoons the right and left Knights are the guides of each platoon.

The position of the commander, in column of platoons, is abreast of the leading platoon on the side of the guide, four yards from the flank of the column.

To wheel into column of platoons and move forward without halting, the commander first commands. 1. *Continue the march*, and then gives the same commands as before, adding, 4. *Forward*. 5. *MARCH*. 6. *Guide right (or left)*.

The leading guide prolongs his direction by choosing successive points in advance; the following guides march in the trace of the one next in front, and carefully preserve wheeling distance.

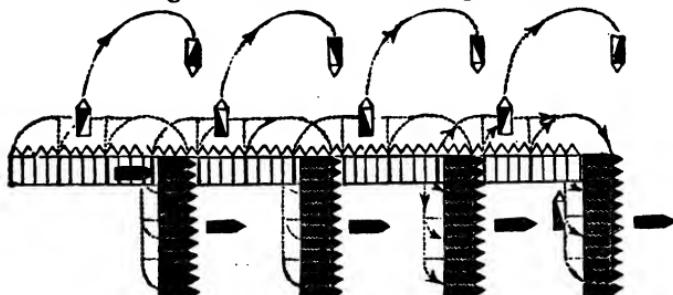
The trace and distance, when lost, are gradually recovered. The trace is recovered by inclining slightly to the right or left. Distances are recovered by a slight increase or decrease of gait.

**To Break by the Right or Left of Platoons to the Rear into Column.**

Being in line at a halt.

1. *Right (or left) of platoons, rear into column*. 2. *Threes right (or left)*. 3. *MARCH*.

At the first command, each chief of platoon places himself six yards in front of the third file from the left of the platoon on his right, facing to the rear, and at the second command, cautions his right three to wheel to the right about.



At the command *march* the right three in each platoon wheels to the right about on a fixed pivot, and directs its march perpendicularly to the rear; the other threes wheel to the right on a fixed pivot, move forward and successively wheel to the right on a movable pivot, so as to follow the leading three; as the rear three of each platoon completes its wheel to rear its chief commands: 1. *Threes left* 2. *MARCH*. 3. *Platoon*. 4 *HALT*. 5. *Left*. 6. *DRESS*. 7. *FRONT*, and returns to his post.

The second command is given as the rear three completes the wheel, and the fourth as the threes unite in line.

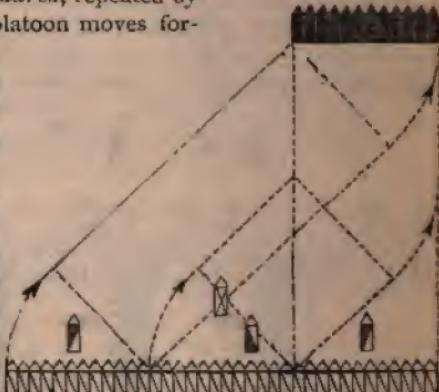
#### To Form Column of Platoons to the Front.

Being in line at a halt.

1. *Right* (or *left*) by platoon. 2. *MARCH*.
3. *Guide left* (or *right*).

At the first command, the chief of the right platoon commands: *Forward*, the other chiefs *Right half wheel*.

At the command *march*, repeated by the chiefs, the right platoon moves forward, its chief repeating *guide left*; the other platoons make a right half wheel on a fixed pivot, the chiefs, on its completion, adding: 1. *Forward*. 2. *MARCH*. 3. *Guide left*; each platoon marches in the new direction until the guide arrives near the trace of the



guide of the leading platoon, when the chief commands: 1. *Left half wheel.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH. 5. *Guide left.* The second command is given when the guide arrives in the trace of the guide of the first platoon; the platoon wheels on a fixed pivot, and the guide on completion of the wheel, marches in the trace of the guide in front.

If executed on the march, the chief of the leading platoon cautions: *Continue the march*, and commands: *Guide left* as soon as disengaged; the movement is completed as previously explained.

If executed at an increased gait, all the platoons take the gait ordered at the command *march*.

**To Put the Column of Platoons in March, and to Halt the Column.**

1. *Forward.* 2. *Guide right (or left).* 3. MARCH; and
1. *Commandery.* 2. HALT.

**To Oblique in Column of Platoons, and to Resume the Direct March.**

1. *Right (or left) oblique.* 2. MARCH; and, 1. *Forward.*
2. MARCH.

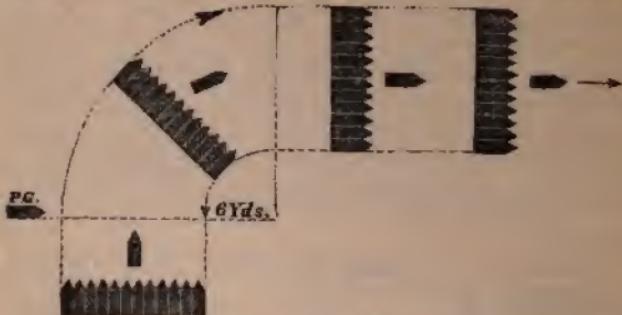
**To Change Direction in Column of Platoons.**

Being in march.

1. *Column right (or left).* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, the principal guide at the head of the column places himself abreast of the leading platoon and two yards from its left; the chief of the platoon commands: *Right turn.* At the command *march*, repeated by the chief of the leading platoon, the principal guide halts and faces to the leading platoon, which wheels to the right on a movable pivot, the chief, on its completion, adding: 1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH. The other platoons march squarely up to the principal guide, and, by command of their chiefs, wheel to the right, as explained for the first. The principal guide returns to his post when the rear platoon begins the wheel.

In wheeling, as the dress is always toward the marching



flank without command, whenever the wheel is executed on a movable pivot toward the side of the guide, each chief upon its completion cautions his subdivision, *guide right or left*, according as the guide was right or left before the wheel.

*Column half right or left* is similarly executed; each chief gives the preparatory command: *Right (or left) half turn.*

#### To Put the Column in March, and to Change Direction at the Same Time.

1. *Forward.*
2. *Guide right (or left).*
3. *Column right (or left).*
4. *MARCH.*

#### To Face the Column of Platoons to the Rear, and to March it to the Rear.

1. *Threes (or platoons) right (or left) about.*
2. *MARCH.*
3. *Commandery.*
4. *HALT.*

At the command *march*, the threes (or platoons) wheel about on fixed pivots. If by threes, the command *halt* is given as the threes unite in line. If by platoon, it is given when the marching flanks are at three yards from the line; each chief, without leaving his place, then commands: 1. *Left.* 2. *DRESS.* 3. *FRONT.*

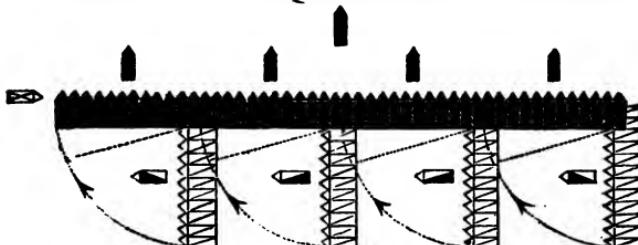
*To march to the rear, if by threes: 3. Guide right (or left); if by platoons: 3. Forward. 4. MARCH. 5. Guide (right or left).*

If the column be faced to the rear, and one platoon be smaller than the others, the guides regain the trace and wheeling distance on the march.

**To Form Line To the Right or Left from Column of Platoons.**

1. *Right (or left) into line wheel.*
2. *MARCH.*
3. *Commandery.*
4. *HALT.*
5. *Left (or right).*
6. *DRESS.*
7. *FRONT.*

At the command *march*, each platoon wheels to the right on a fixed pivot; at the command *halt*, given when the march-



ing flanks arrive at three yards from the line, the platoons halt; the commander places himself, facing to the right, at the point where the marching flank of the leading platoon is to rest; at the command *dress*, the platoons dress up to the line of the commander and pivots.

*To continue the march upon wheeling into line:* 1. *Continue the march.* 2. *Right (or left) into line wheel.* 3. *MARCH.* 4. *Forward.* 5. *MARCH.* 6. *Guide (right or left).* The pivot-files turn strictly in their places until the completion of the wheel.

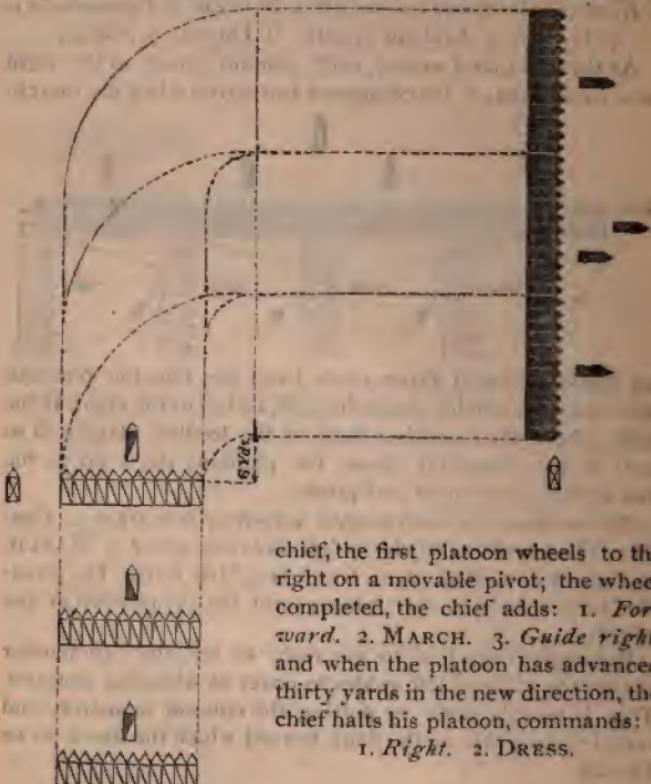
Before forming line to the right or left, the commander causes the right or left guides to cover at wheeling distance. This is usually done by putting the column in march, and ordering the guide on the flank toward which the line is to be formed.

**To Form Line On the Right or Left from Column of Platoons.**

Being in march, the commander orders the guide, if not already there, to the flank toward which the movement is to be executed, and then commands:

1. *On right (or left) into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. FRONT.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Right turn*; at the command *march*, repeated by its



chief, the first platoon wheels to the right on a movable pivot; the wheel completed, the chief adds: 1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right,* and when the platoon has advanced thirty yards in the new direction, the chief halts his platoon, commands:

1. *Right.*
2. DRESS.

**E**ach of the other platoons marches platoon distance beyond the point where the platoon preceding began the wheel, when it wheels to the right as already explained; the chief halts it at three yards from the line, and then commands:

1. *Right.* 2. *Dress.*

The commander superintends the alignment of the commandery from the right flank, and gives the third command upon its completion.

**To Form Front into Line from Column of Platoons.**

Being at a halt.

1. *Right* (or *left*) *front into line.* 2. *MARCH.* 3. *FRONT.*

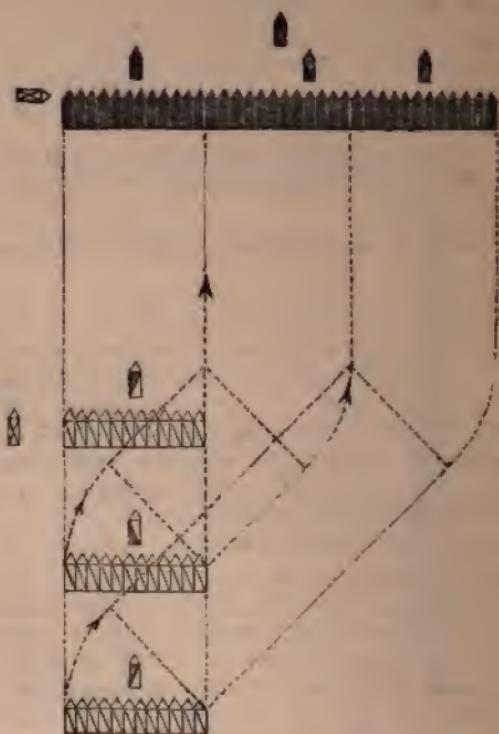
At the first command the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Forward.* 2. *Guide left;* the other chief command: *Right half wheel.*

At the command *march*, repeated by the chiefs, the first platoon advances thirty yards, when the chief commands: 1. *Platoon.* 2. *HALT.* 3. *Left.* 4. *DRESS;* the other platoons execute a half wheel to the right on a fixed pivot, each chief commanding: 1. *Forward.* 2. *MARCH.* 3. *Guide left,* when his platoon has completed the eighth of a circle. When the *left* guide, marching in the new direction, arrives opposite his place in line, the chief commands: 1. *Left half wheel.* 2. *MARCH;* the platoon wheels on a fixed pivot, its chief, upon the completion of the half wheel, commanding: 1. *Forward.* 2. *MARCH.* 3. *Guide left.* The platoon having arrived at three yards from the line, the chief halts it and commands: 1. *Left.* 2. *Dress.* The platoon dresses up to the line of the platoon which preceded it.

The commander superintends the alignment from the left flank, and gives the third command upon its completion.

If marching at a *walk*, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Guide left*, if the guide be not already there, and the movement is executed as before.

If marching at a *walk*, and the command be *trot*, the com-



mander commands: *Guide left* immediately after the command *march*; the chief of the first platoon cautions it to continue the walk, and repeats the command for the guide; the chiefs of the other platoons repeat the command *trot*, each commanding: 1. *Walk*. 2. *MARCH*, on arriving abreast of the leading platoon.

If marching at a *trot*, the movement is executed in the same manner; the chief of the first platoon commands:

*Walk*, at the first command of the commander, repeats the command *march*, and also the command for the guide.

If marching at a *gallop*, or a *trot* and the command be *gallop*, the same principles apply, the first platoon moving at a trot, the chiefs of the other platoons commanding: 1. *Trot*.  
2. **MARCH**, on arriving abreast of the leading platoon.

If the commandery be halted during the movement, only those platoons halt which have arrived abreast of the leading platoon; the others complete the movement, each being halted by its chief upon arriving in line.

#### To Wheel About by Platoons in Line.

1. *Platoons right (or left) about.*
2. **MARCH.**
3. *Commandery.*
4. **HALT.**
5. *Left (or right).*
6. **DRESS.**
7. **FRONT.**

To march to the rear, on completion of the about:

3. *Forward.*
4. **MARCH.**
5. *Guide (right or left.)*

#### To March the Column of Platoons by the Flank.

1. *Threes right (or left).*
2. **MARCH.**
3. *Guide (right or left).*

The place of the commander is on the side of the guide, four yards from the flank, and abreast of the leading threes.

When a column marches by the flank, the heads of subdivisions preserve an alignment toward the flank on which the guide is announced, and preserve the distance from that side necessary to form front into line.

To march again in column:

1. *Threes right (or left).*
2. **MARCH.**
3. *Guide (right or left).*

#### To Advance by the Right or Left of Platoons.

Being in line, the commander commands:

1. *Platoons*
2. *Right (or left) forward.*
3. *Threes right (or left).*
4. **MARCH.**
5. *Guide (right or left).*

To form again into line.

1. Platoons. 2. Right (or left) front into line. 3. MARCH.
4. Commandery. 5. HALT. 6. Left (or right).
7. DRESS. 8. FRONT.

The command *halt* is given when the leading three has advanced thirty yards.

If executed at a *trot* or *gallop*, the commander, after the command *march*, adds: *Guide left (or right)*.

#### To Form Column of Threes from Column of Platoons

1. Platoons. 2. Right (or left) forward. 3. Threes right (or left.) 4. MARCH.

The platoons unite in one column of threes.

In breaking by platoon, *right (or left) forward, threes right (or left)* from the side of the guide, should any platoon be composed of a greater or less number of threes than the one preceding, its pace will be slightly increased or decreased to enable all the threes to take their proper distances in column.

If the platoons be broken from the side opposite the guide, the column of threes of the leading platoon marches straight to the front; the other platoons, after breaking into column, will, if necessary, slightly change direction, so as to follow in rear of the preceding platoon.

#### To Form Column of Platoons from Column of Threes.

1. Platoons. 2. Right (or left) front into line. 3. MARCH.

Each platoon executes *front into line*. If executed at a walk, the commander halts the column after advancing thirty yards. If executed at a *trot* or *gallop*, the commander commands: *Guide left (or right)* after the command *march*.

#### Marching in Column of Threes to March by the Flank of Platoons, to the Right or Left.

1. Platoons. 2. Column right (or left). 3. MARCH. 4. Guide right (or left).

Being in march, to march again in column of fours.

1. Platoons. 2. Column right (or left). 3. MARCH.



#### MOUNTED DISPLAY DRILL.



ANY of the movements in the School of the Commandery and Display Drill may be used in the Mounted Drill, with but slight variation.

CROSSES are formed by similar commands and means to those on foot.

TRIANGLE is formed from column of two platoons, thus:  
1. *Form triangle.* 2. *MARCH.*

At the first command the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *First Platoon.* 2. *Form echelon.* 3. *Center forward;* the chief of the second platoon cautions, *forward.* At the command *march,* the chief of the first platoon and two Knights in his rear (right and left center files) increase the gait and ride forward; the Knight on the right of the right center file, and on the left of the left center file, advance at the same gait when the heads of their horses are opposite the croups of the two center files, and so on in succession—two Knights at a time—one from each side towards the center, advance in echelon, as described; the second platoon closes the triangle in rear. The chief of the commandery adds:

*Guide center*, and all resume the former gait, or the files may advance at a *trot*, and the command to walk is given.

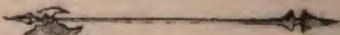
TRIANGLE IS REDUCED at the command, 1. *Form platoons*.  
 2. MARCH. The chief of the second platoon cautions it to forward; the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Right and left front into line*. 2. *Trot*, and repeat the march, the files in echelon trot forward into their places, and its chief gives the command to march.

Triangle on foot may be similarly formed.

SQUARE is formed from column of four platoons similar to the first formations; the center platoons forming the right and left sides of the square at caution of their chiefs to *right* (or *left*) *by file*.

#### Conclusion.

All the details have not been given in every instance; nor have all the movements prepared been published, because it is thought that enough is presented to keep any commandery—Infantry or Cavalry—in active drill for years. If what is here presented be perfectly executed by any commandery of foot or mounted Knights, each in the “arm of the service” selected by themselves, they can rest assured that they will have no superiors.



# Manual of the Sword, Mounted.

## AND SWORD EXERCISE.



SWORDS are unhooked at the command *prepare to mount*. On dismounting, Knights hook them up and take the position of *stand to horse*, but the manual is not practiced mounted, until the Knights can ride well and execute the movements with precision.

Swords are returned before mounting and dismounting.

Before beginning the manual execute a few movements to quiet the horses.

The manual is taught as follows, being in line at a halt :

### 1. Draw. 2. SWORDS.

*First motion.* At the command *swords*, reach with the right hand over the bridle-hand and seize the grip, drawing the blade out of the scabbard until the right forearm is horizontal. *Second motion.* Draw the sword quickly, raising the arm to its full extent at an angle of forty-five degrees.

*Third motion.* Turn the blade and bring it to a present, (page 30.). *Fourth motion.* Bring the sword to a carry, (page 29.).

The *Present*, *Salute*, *Right shoulder*, and *Inspection swords* are executed the same as when dismounted.

*1. Reverse. 2. SWORDS.*

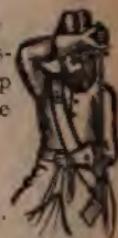
Same as dismounted, (p. 34), except that care is taken not

to cut the horse, and the point of the sword is up to the rear at an angle of about thirty-five degrees, and is supported by pressure between the right arm and the body, aided by the right hand at the grip. The *carry* is resumed similar to the movement dismounted.



*1. Sword arm. 2. REST.*

Executed the same as dismounted, except that the right hand is brought up and rested on the pommel of the saddle under the bride-hand. Resume the carry at the command:



*1. Return. 2. SWORDS,*

Same as dismounted, without using the left hand.

**The Uncover.**

Same as dismounted, except with the right hand. The swords being in the scabbards.

**SALUTES.**

A mounted officer or Knight dismounts before addressing an official superior dismounted.

**The Standard,**

Mounted, the heel of the staff rests in the socket attached to the right stirrup; the right hand grasps the staff at the height of the elbow. The *salute*, same as with the standard dismounted.

## SWORD EXERCISE.



CIRCULAR cuts with the sword are practiced to give suppleness to the wrist, which increases the grace and dexterity of the Knights in its use. Each lesson is begun and ended with the moulinets, executed with a quickness proportioned to the progress of the Knights, remembering that force is less necessary than skill.

These lessons are the exact counterpart of the army teachings as far as they go; hence, while they are practiced to give greater suppleness in handling the sword, the knowledge acquired is, or may be, of practical utility.

In teaching this sword exercise on foot, the Knights, being in single rank, are formed in open order.

**Do not lean to one side, so that if mounted the seats would be deranged; nor direct the blade so as to strike the head or haunches of the horse or knees of the rider.**

Cuts not excuted by the motions are terminated by a half monlinet, so as to bring the sword to the position of *guard*.

Hold the sword in full grasp; in all the motions the thumb is extended along the back of the grip and pressed against the cross.

The *first motion* is executed at the command of execution; the others at the command Two, etc., when *by the numbers*.

The *right and left sides of the gripe* are the right and left sides in the position of *carry*.

The hand is in *tierce* when it holds the gripe, back of the hand up; in *quarte*, when it holds the gripe, back of the hand down.

**GUARD.** Carry the right foot about two feet to the right, heels on the same line; place the left hand, closed, six inches from the body, and as high as the elbow, fingers toward the

body, little finger nearer than the thumb (position of the bridle-hand); at the same time place the right hand in tierce in front of and a little higher than the right hip, thumb extended on the back of the gripe, little finger by the side of the others, the point of the sword inclined to the left, and two feet higher than the hand, which grasps the sword without constraint.

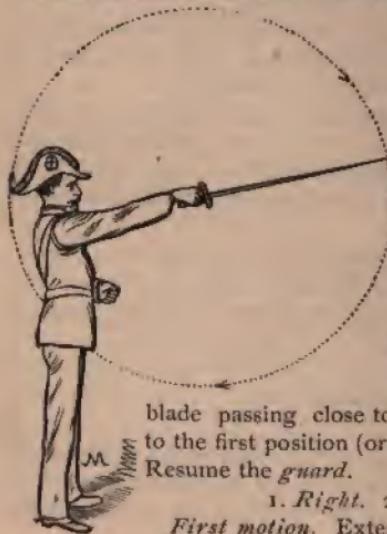
*1. Carry. 2. SWORD.*

At the command *sword* resume the position and come to the *carry*.

The following movements are executed from *guard*.

*1. Left. 2. MOULINET.*

*First motion.* Extend the arm obliquely to the left and front to its full length, the hand in tierce and as high as the eyes, the point of the sword to the front, and a little higher than the hilt.



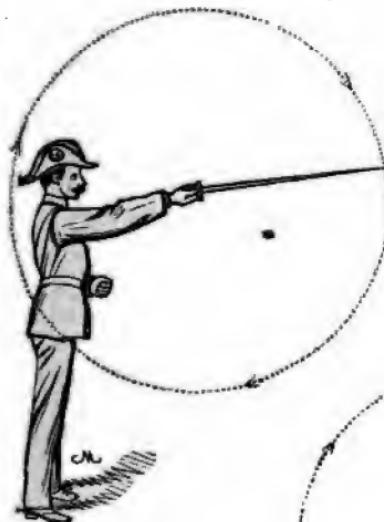
*Second motion.* Lower the blade, edge [i. e. the edge on the same side as the "chain guard," the opposite is the back (edge)] to the front, and make rapidly a circle around the head, to the left of and near the horse's neck, the blade passing close to the left elbow; return to the first position (or motion). *Third motion.* Resume the *guard*.

*1. Right. 2. MOULINET.*

*First motion.* Extend the arm to the front



to its full length, the hand in quarte, and as high as the eyes, the point to the front, and a little higher than the hilt. *Second motion.* Lower the blade, edge to the front, make rapidly a circle around the head to the right of and near the horse's neck, the blade passing close to the right elbow; return to the first position. *Third motion.* Resume the guard.



To combine the execution of the two preceding moulinets:

1. *Left and right (or right and left).*
2. **MOULINET.**

*First motion.* Execute the left moulinet; turn the wrist without pausing, and then execute the right moulinet.

**1. Rear. 2. MOULINET.**

*First motion.* Raise the arm to the right and rear to its full extent, the point of the sword upward, the edge to the right, the body slightly turned to the right. *Second motion.* Begin by moving the point





of the sword toward the left, and describe a circle in rear. *Third motion.* Resume the *guard*.

In executing the moulinets, the right arm is kept as steady as possible in position, the sword being controlled by motions of the wrist and hand.

When the Knights execute the moulinets well, require them to execute several in succession, without pausing, until the command *guard*.

*1. Front. 2. CUT.*

*First motion.* Raise the sword, the arm half extended, the hand in front of the right shoulder, a little higher than the head, the edge upward, the point to the rear, and higher than the hand. *Second motion.* Cut, extending the arm to its length. *Third motion.* Resume the *guard*.

The first position of *front cut* is the position of *raise sword*. Being at *raise sword*, to *carry sword*, command:

*1. Carry. 2. SWORD.*

*1. Left. 2. CUT.*

*First motion.* Turn the head and shoulders to the left, raise the sword, the arm extended to the right, the hand in quartre and as high as the head, the point higher than the hand. *Second motion.* Cut diagonally to the left. (*Third.*) Resume the *guard*.

*1. Right. 2. CUT.*

*First motion.* Turn the head to the right, carry the hand opposite the left





breast, the point of the sword upward, the edge to the left. *Second motion.* Extend the arm quickly to its full length, and give a back-handed cut horizontally. *Third motion.* Resume the guard.

**1. Rear. 2. CUT.**

*First motion.* Throw the right shoulder well back and execute the first motion of *right cut*. *Second motion.* Extend the arm quickly to its full length and give a back-handed cut, horizontally, to the rear.

(*Three*). Resume the guard.

**1. Left in quarte and tierce. 2. CUT.**

*First motion.* Execute the first motion of *left cut*. *Second motion.* Execute the second motion of *left cut*. *Third motion.* Turn the hand in tierce and cut horizontally. *Fourth motion.* Resume the guard.

**1. Right in tierce and quarte. 2. CUT.**

*First motion.* Execute first motion of *right cut*. *Second motion.* Execute second motion of *right cut*. *Third motion.* Turn the hand in quarte, and cut horizontally. *Fourth motion.* Resume the guard.

**1. Rear in tierce and quarte. 2. CUT**

Execute the first motion of *rear cut*. *Second motion.* Execute the second motion of *rear cut*. *Third motion.* Turn the hand in quarte, and cut horizontally. *Fourth motion.* Resume the guard.



# Cemplar Sword Exercise.



WORDS are used in the manuals, on foot and mounted. The moulinets and cuts are for practice, as explained; this exercise gives variety and may be taken as more applicable to Knights of the Red Cross and Knights Templars than that which is purely military in character. Its thorough practice is recommended.

## GUARD.

Being at a *carry*. Bring the sword to the position of *guard*, (page 234), the left arm hanging naturally at the side; at the same time carry the right foot sixteen inches straight to the front, the right knee slightly bent.

### 1. Carry. 2. SWORDS.

Resume the carry, bringing the right foot to the side of the left, and stand at *attention*.

## PARRY.

Being at *guard*. Raise the right hand, turning it in *tierce*; arm extended upward to the front at an angle of forty-five degrees and inclined a little to the left; sword edge down, in prolongation of the arm; thumb extended on the left of the gripe.

### *Carry, swords.*

Bring the right foot to the side of the left and at the same time come to a *present*. *Second motion.* Resume the *carry*.

**1. GUARD. 2. PARRY TWO.**

At the first command, take the position of *guard*. At the second command take the position of *parry* (crossing swords with the Knight opposite, who executes the same motions). *Second motion.* Bring back the sword, the point describing a small circle, so as to clear the point of the sword of the opposite Knight, turning the hand in *quarte*, edge of blade up, thumb along right of gripe, and cross the swords at the same angle as before.

**1. Carry. 2. SWORDS.** Come to *present*, then resume the *carry* as described before.

**1. GUARD. 2. PARRY THREE.**

Execute the motions of *guard*, *parry two*. *Third motion.* Bring back the sword point so as to clear the point of the sword opposite; then by a semi-circle downward to the left and front, turning the hand in *tierce*, arm extended downward; sword (edge down) in prolongation of the arm, and cross swords with the Knight opposite.

At *carry, swords*, come to a present and resume the position of *carry*.

**1. GUARD. 2. PARRY FOUR.**

Execute *guard, parry three*. *Fourth motion.* Raise the sword to the position of *parry*.

*Carry swords* is executed as before explained.

**THRUST.**

Bring the sword to the position of *Charge* (Manual of the Sword); point a little to the left, the right hand yielding (towards the rear) to pressure at the sword point. *Carry, swords*, as before.

**1. Wield. 2. SWORD.**

Embrace the gripe firmly with the thumb and forefingers, admitting of some freedom of motion for the helmet end of the hilt. At the first command bring the hand and sword to

the position of the first motion of *front cut* (page 236), *only* that the blade is at an upward angle of twenty-five degrees. At *swords*, cut with the sword, the point moving in a *com*plete circle, from left to right, on a horizontal plane above the head, coming back to the position of *wield*.

1. *Carry*. 2. *SWORD*. Take that position.

If desired to repeat the *moulinet*, before coming to a *carry*, command: Two. Three, etc.

If desired to continue indefinitely, command; 1. *Until carry*. 2. *WIELD*. 3. *SWORD*. The *moulinet* is continued, without pause, until the command *carry*, when it is immediately brought to the position of *wield*. At *sword*, resume the position of *carry, swords*.



## Honors to be Paid by Templars.



ALL the honors due to official position should be paid in such manner as to reflect credit on the order.

1. The *Grand Master* is saluted by all standards and banners drooping, officers and Knights *saluting* ("officers present"), bands and trumpets sounding "Hail to the Chief."

2. *Grand Commander*, within his own jurisdiction, and *Dep. Gr. Master* are saluted by all standards and banners drooping, officers saluting, Knights in ranks *present*, and trumpets sound a march.

3. *Dep. Gr. Commander* within his state, and *Gr. Generallissimo* and *Gr. Capt. Gen.*, *Gr. Encamp.* Same as Grand Commander, except trumpets give three flourishes.

4. *Gr. Generalissimo* and *Gr. Captain General*, within their state, and *Grand Wardens* of the *Gr. Encampment*. Same as Grand Commander, except trumpets give two flourishes.

5. *Eminent Commanders* by their own commanderies. Same as Grand Commander, except trumpets give a flourish.

6. *Other Grand Officers* and distinguished visitors. Standards and banners drooping, officers *salute* and Knights in ranks *present*.

7. *Grand Master of Masons* within his own state. General Grand High Priest. Same as Eminent Commander.

8. President of the United States, or Governor within his own state. Same as Eminent Commander.

SENTINELS face in the direction of their beat, towards the

personage, and *present* when officers above the rank of ~~Ser~~ <sup>io</sup> Warden, or commanderies, cross it.

RESERVE GUARDS turn out and *present* on the approach of the Officer of the Day, Commander of the Camp, ~~Grand~~ Commander in his jurisdiction, and the Grand Master, during the day time; or at night, if so ordered.

#### VISITATIONS AND COURTESIES WITHOUT ARMS.

At Grand Conclaves among the memorable events are *the* visits between commanderies. If the little courtesies are gracefully attended to, they add to the dignity and pleasure of the occasion, and *per contra*, the failure to observe them detracts to that extent from the enjoyment.

When a commandery contemplates a visit to another, the Generalissimo calls at the quarters of the commandery to be visited, presents his commandery card and ascertains at what hour it will be convenient for that commandery to receive a visit from the commandery he represents. This being settled, the commandery *fall in*, dressed in the uniform coat, pants, caps, and belts (without swords, cuffs, or scarf, unless it is a dress occasion), and appear in front of the quarters of the commandery to be visited, at the time agreed upon. Both commanderies being in line, the *hand salute* is exchanged and the visiting commandery is conducted into quarters "to rest and refresh themselves," or is shown such attention as the commandery visited is prepared to give.

The call should be terminated before the interest flags; and, on leaving, courtesies are exchanged as before.

If a commandery is "receiving," a formal introduction by commanderies may be made and the visit shortened, that an unwieldy and crowded company may not detract from the pleasures, and give place to others.

Those who are expected to respond to sentiments should be notified in time to collect their thoughts in a very short, pithy speech.

## Escorts of Honor.



NIGHTS who are well drilled, and none others should form a part of such an escort: *first*, for the credit of the commandery; *second*, that it may be considered a compliment to be so detailed and stimulate to increased attention to the tactics. The escort forms in line, the center opposite the place where the person to be escorted will present himself, with an interval between the wings to receive him and his staff, the band on the flank of the escort toward which it will march. On the appearance of the person to be escorted, he should be received with the honors due him. When he takes his place between the wings, the escort is wheeled into column of divisions, sections, or threes, and takes up the march. On leaving, the escort line is formed and the same honors are paid as before. When the position of the escort is at a considerable distance from the point where the person is to be received, as for instance, where a court-yard or wharf intervenes, a double line of sentinels is posted from that point to the escort, facing inward; the sentinels successively *present swords* as he passes; when he has passed six yards, they break by files into double column, and rejoin the escort. An officer or some Knight should be appointed to attend the person to be escorted, to bear any communication he may have to make to the Commander of the escort.

**Escort of a Commandery too large for a Small Detachment to Observe the Form just given.**

The escort is formed in line parallel with the line of march, the right resting farthest from the point of reception. The

commander and Generalissimo attend upon the visiting commandery, and when all is ready, the Gen. gives proper notice, and the E. C. or Gen. conducts the commandery to be escorted in front of and past the escort, which presents swords. The commandery to be escorted marches past in column of threes, sections, or divisions, officers and standards saluting, Knights at a carry, and halts when the rear is about fifteen yards from the band of the escort, wheels into line, and the escort marches past with the same honors exchanged as before; the E. Com. and Generalissimo rejoining his commandery as it passes. The march is taken up by the escorted commandery which follows the escort in column of sections or threes, halts in front of the quarters of the escorted, forms line, presents swords, and the guests, conducted by the escort, march past into their quarters.

#### Reception and Escort of a Grand Officer.

USTICE and courtesy to a Grand Officer making an official visit requires that he should be received with all the formalities to which his rank entitles him.

The Grand Master of Templars, or Grand Commander, within his jurisdiction, have the right to and should be received under a cross of steel.

The escort is commanded by the next in rank to the presiding officer; or if the body is not in session, by the chief himself.

At the command present sword, the honors are given as described, and the escort is conducted as before explained, according to circumstances.

For the Grand Master: Past Grand Officers, or Past Commanders should be selected as the escort, if practicable. For the Grand Commander: Past Commanders should compose the escort, if it can be conveniently done, unless they should happen to be awkward in ranks, in which case they ought not to be selected in any event if well drilled Knights can supply their places. See also Escorts in Tactics for Asylum.

## Dress Parade.



THE Field Officers are dismounted. From the nature of their duties as taught by the ritual, etc., it is most appropriate for the Grand Recorder to act as Adjutant. Next to him the Grand Generalissimo; next, the Grand Senior Warden, or some well qualified Templar detailed for this especial duty.

The battalion is formed as before explained; [or if it be of but one commandery, its divisions are officered and are treated as commanderies, the Eminent Commander acting as Grand Commander].

The Grand Commander, as commanding officer, takes his post at a convenient distance in front of the center, facing the line (generally a distance equal to about one-half its front) and stands with arms folded until just before the command to *present*, when he comes to *attention*.

The Grand Commander's staff may form in line six yards in his rear.

The Acting Adjutant having commanded *guides, posts*, directs the first Commander to bring his commandery to *parade rest*. Each Commander in succession, commencing on the right, steps one yard to the front, faces to the left, and commands:

1. (Such) *Commandery*. 2. *Carry*. 3. *SWORDS*. 4. *Parade*  
5. *REST*, and returns to his place.

The Acting Adjutant then commands, *SOUND OFF*, and takes the position of *parade rest*. The band, commencing to play in common time, marches six yards to the front, then to the left past the left of the line, and back over the same ground to its place, playing in quick time, giving a flourish

before starting, after the counter-march at the left, and on its return to the right.

The Acting Adjutant steps two yards to the front, faces to the left and commands:

1. *Battalion.*
2. *ATTENTION.*
3. *Carry.*
4. *SWORDS.*
5. *Rear open order.*

Aligns the guides of the rear rank, again comes to the front, and commands, 6. *MARCH*, verifies the alignments, commands 7. *FRONT*, and passes in rear of the line of commanders to the center, turns to the right, marches to a point midway between the Grand Commander and the line occupied by the commanders, faces about, and commands:

1. *Present.*
2. *SWORDS.*

To this the Gr. Commander raises his chapeau in acknowledgment. The Acting Adjutant then faces about, salutes the Gr. Commander, and says:

*'Right Eminent Sir, the parade is formed.'*

The Gr. Commander, saluting with the hand:

*'Take your post, Sir Knight.'*

The Acting Adjutant passes to the left and rear of the Gr. Commander, one yard to the right, and two yards retired. The Gr. Commander now draws his sword, commands, *Carry, SWORDS*, and exercises the battalion in the manual, concluding with, *Order, SWORDS*. He directs the Acting Adjutant to *Receive the reports*, and returns his sword.

The Acting Adjutant retraces his steps to the point at which he saluted the Gr. Commander, and commands:

1. *\*Recorders to front and center.*
2. *MARCH.*

At the first command the Recorders come to a *carry*; at the second they step two yards to the front and face to the center; the drum-major also steps two yards forward, and

<sup>a</sup>*Senior Wardens* may be substituted for *Recorders* if desired.

faces to the left. At *march*, they close on the center in front of and between the standard and Acting Adjutant, two yards from the former, and successively face to the front. The Acting Adjutant then commands, **REPORT**. At this command the drum-major\* and Recorders, commencing on the right, successively salute and report, *Band present or accounted for*, or (so many) *absent*. The Recorders report (such) *Commandery No. — present or accounted for*, or give the number present and the number absent. When completed, the Acting Adjutant commands:

1. *Recorders.*
2. *Outward.*
3. *FACE.*
4. *To your posts.*
5. *MARCH.*

Then they all retrace their steps and resume *order arms*.

The Acting Adjutant faces about, salutes, and says, *Right Eminent, Sir, all present, or accounted for*; or he reports the number absent.

The Grand Commander acknowledges the salute and says, *Publish the orders, Sir Knight.* The Acting Adjutant, facing the battalion, says:

*Attention to orders,*

Returns his sword and reads the orders. After which he draws his sword, faces about, salutes the Grand Commander, and reports:

*Right Eminent Sir, the orders are published.*

The Grand Commander acknowledges the salute, and commands:

*To your devotions, Sir Knight†.*

The Acting Adjutant returns to his place at the rear and right of the Grand Commander:

---

\*The drum-major, before making his report, salutes by bringing his staff to a vertical position, the head of the staff up and opposite the left shoulder.

†This may be omitted if desired.

*1. Battalion. 2. UN-COVER.*

They *uncover*, and the Prelate faces parallel to the front, and repeats the Lord's prayer, all joining in it. After a pause the Grand Commander *re-covers* and commands. *1. Battalion. 2. RE-COVER.* The Prelate faces to the front, and the Grand Commander directs the Acting Adjutant to

*Dismiss parade, Sir Knight.*

At which the Acting Adjutant returns to his place, as before, and commands:

*Parade is dismissed.*

The Commanders, Generalissimos, and Captain Generals now return their swords, face to the center, step off at the same time with the Acting Adjutant, close upon the center, and successively face to the front. The two nearest the center preserve an interval for the Acting Adjutant, who passes through, one yard to the rear, halts, faces about, steps into his place, and commands:

*1. Forward. 2. Guide center. 3. MARCH.*

The band plays, and when within five yards of the Grand Commander, the Acting Adjutant commands:

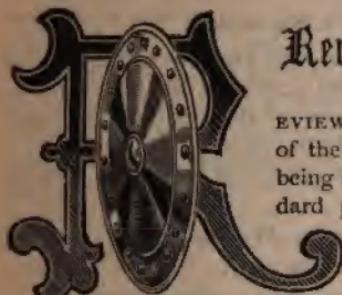
*1. Officers. 2. HALT.*

At the second command the officers halt and salute with the hand; the music ceases; the hands remain at the visor, till the salute is acknowledged, and drop at the same time with the Grand Commander's hand, who gives such instruction as he desires, which concludes the ceremony, and the officers disperse; the band plays, the Senior Wardens command:

*1. Commandery. 2. Carry. 3. SWORDS. 4. Close order.  
5. MARCH.*

At the command *march* the Senior Wardens march the commanderies to their quarters and dismiss them, as they may previously have been instructed.

It would add much to the display if, after the parade is dismissed, the commanderies should march off in echelon, commandery front; beginning on the right; the second commandery starting when the first has marched commandery distance, or half commandery distance.



## Review.

VIEWING officer takes post in front of the center of battalion, the point being indicated by a marker or standard previously established. The

Acting Adjutant also posts markers at points where the column will have to change direction in order that the right flank, in passing, shall be at six or eight yards from the reviewing officer, whose staff, or other grand officers, are in his rear,

The officer in command, being in front of and facing the center commands:

1. *Prepare for review.*
2. *Rear open order.*
3. MARCH.
4. FRONT.

At the command *march* the ranks are opened and the lines are dressed as before explained.

Officer in command, seeing the ranks aligned, returns to the right of the line of chiefs of commanderies, faces to the left, commands *FRONT*, and passing to the front of this line of officers, places himself six yards in front of the line of field officers, opposite the center and facing to the front. The reviewing officer now approaches a few yards and halts, when the officer in command faces about and commands:

1. *Present.* 2. SWORDS.

The officers, standards, and Knights *present*, and if the reviewing officer be the grand officer, the band plays a march or trumpets flourish, according to his rank. Officer in command faces about and salutes with the sword. The reviewing officer acknowledges the salute by raising his chapeau, the band ceases to play, and the officer in command again faces the line and commands:

1. *Carry.* 2. SWORDS.

He joins the reviewing officer, who proceeds to the right of the band, and passing to the left in front of the line of chiefs of commanderies, returns in rear of the rear rank, the band playing until he leaves the right to return to his station.

The officer in command now returns to his post in front of the center and commands:

1. *Close order.* 2. MARCH.

Which having been executed, he adds:

1. *Commanderies (divisions or sections), right wheel.*

## 2. MARCH.

At the second command the commanderies break into column of commanderies (divisions or sections).

The band wheels and marches so that its rear rank will be nine yards in advance of the leading chief of commandery. The Gr. Generalissimo, Gr. Captain General, and Gr. Wardens on the left of the column.

The officer in command now commands:

1. *Pass in review, 2. Forward, 3. Guide right. 4. MARCH.*

The band plays; the column advances and changes direction to the left, and again to the left, at points indicated, so as to pass about six yards in front of the reviewing officer, and without command from the officer in command, who takes his place three yards in advance of the chief of the leading commandery (or officer in command of the leading

subdivision), after the second change of direction. The band having passed the reviewing officer, wheels to the left out of column, takes post in front and facing him, where it remains till the rear of the column has passed, when it countermarches to the rear and returns to its place before the review, ceasing to play when the column approaches its original position. If there is more than one commandery (not in battalion formation) each band ceases to play when the rear of its commandery has passed the reviewing officer, and follows in its rear until its commandery is halted, when it passes by the rear to its place on the right.

When the column is passing in review, the officers and standards *salute*, each commencing six yards from the reviewing officer, and resuming the carry when six yards past; the Knights in line retain the *carry*.

If the reviewing officer be entitled to it, the trumpets flourish, etc., as before explained, and the band continues to play.

The drum-major, marching in review, passes the staff between the right arm and the body, the head to the front, and salutes with the left hand.

In saluting, all the officers turn the head and look toward the reviewing officer, who acknowledges only the salutes of the officer in command and the standards.

The officer in command having saluted, places himself, if mounted, on the right of the reviewing officer, and there remains until his battalion has passed, when he rejoins the battalion. The head of the column having executed a second change of direction to the left, after passing the reviewing officer, the officer in command commands *guide left*, and when it arrives on its original ground, wheels it into line, ranks are opened and swords are presented as before; this being acknowledged, terminates the review.

## General Parade.



are unfortunately often marred by some one, who seems to have little regard

for well devised plans; among Templars however, a cheerful obedience to law is expected from all.

It requires very little individual effort to conform to rules, and their general observance would add materially to the pleasure at general gatherings.

When Grand Commanderies are to form for street parade, the observance of the following rules is important.

1. GENERAL HEADQUARTERS should be established; its chief and staff prepared at all hours to furnish information concerning existing orders; localities of grand or subordinate commanderies; assignment of quarters for new arrivals; a post office for mailing or distributing letters to individuals (or commanderies), etc.; rosters, alphabetically or systematically arranged, so as to be of some use. In short, a place where any reasonable demand of "a poor and weary pilgrim" would be met with courteous and intelligent response.

2. GRAND COMMANDERIES should have headquarters, with some one constantly in attendance who could give information concerning the subordinate commanderies or Sir Knights of that command.

3. HEADQUARTERS for every subordinate commandery present, and at least an intelligent servant left in charge, who could receive and properly deliver messages, letters, or orders left in absence of the Sir Knights.

4. **TO INSURE ALL THIS,** Eminent Commanders should be ordered to report their arrivals at Grand Commandery headquarters, and leave a duplicate list of the Sir Knights with their command, including the ladies and band accompanying it; at their own headquarters to keep a register of the locality of the private quarters of each individual. At stated hours every Knight should report at his commandery headquarters, in order that all may feel some confidence in expecting to find their friends there at that time; or general or special information concerning the parade, which should be given at roll call.

The Grand Commanders should report at general headquarters immediately on their arrival.

Orders should be promptly sent to Grand Commanders, who should require a staff officer to promptly deliver them to subordinate commanders. At the risk of appearing harsh it is asserted and emphasized, that disobedience of lawful orders ought to be followed with prompt and effectual discipline. Delay blunts the point of discipline.

Nothing wearies men in ranks so much as unnecessary waiting and frequent vexatious halts. This is demoralizing to an army, therfore *promptness is the great essential*. Let it be understood and felt that the column, announced to move at a given hour, will receive the command to forward march at the time specified, and not a moment later.

At the time fixed for forming battalions the trumpet sounds and the commanderies march to the battalion parade-grounds.

If commanderies are to move independently, still the oldest commandery is on the right, formed as prescribed; fifteen yards from its left is the right of the band of the next in rank, and so on.

Grand Officers in command and their staffs should be mounted, or go on foot. To ride in carriages is not military, nor is it exactly "the thing" for a chief in command. He

takes position in front of the center of the line or on the flank of the column in drill, etc., but in a street parade should ride "at the head of the Grand Commandery," so that the rear of his escort will be fifteen yards from the band of his leading commandery. The Deputy Grand Commander rides at his left; the staff is in their rear formed in column of sections, etc. The Grand Standard Bearer should carry a Templar banner, with the arms or name of the State thereon, if the Grand Standard is not borne by him.

The instant his line is formed the Grand Commander should send a staff officer to the Grand Master, or the commander in chief, to inform him of the fact.

A bugler should accompany each Grand Commander to sound the *attention, forward, halt*, etc., that all the commanderies may move together. The commander in chief should also be accompanied by a bugler, and his signals be promptly repeated by each Grand Commander's bugler.

Bands near together should never play at the same time.

The distance between Grand Divisions (Grand Commanderies) should be twenty yards.

A Grand Commandery, too small to form a Grand Division, should join with others and form, according to seniority, as one Grand Division.

A maneuver that would retard the rear of the column ought not to be permitted. If the leading commandery, by permission, executes any movement that causes it to lose ground, it should immediately take the double step to regain its distance. Each commandery either shortens or lengthens its steps, or executes some movement that will enable it to regain its proper place in the column; or commanderies execute maneuvers successively from the right of Grand Divisions. A signal from the commander in chief, repeated by Grand Commanders, would enable maneuvers to be commenced simultaneously on the right of each Grand Division, and followed in succession by commanderies, or simulta-

neously by every commandery in the column, according to previously promulgated orders.

Gaps in the column, or the crowding together of grand or subdivisions should never be permitted, and each commanding officer ought to caution his subordinates and the guides on these points; complimenting them if they do well, and severely censuring any violation of this rule. Bands should also be instructed to take the full step and maintain their proper distances. The carelessness of a single officer or Knight will destroy more of the harmony and beauty of the display than a whole Grand Division can neutralize; if, indeed, it can be overcome at all.

**To Pass in Review at General Parade.**

If the column is to pass in review before the Grand Master, the Grand Commanders, successively from the right, when they approach the station of the Grand Master, command:

1. *Pass in review.*
2. *Guide right.*

And the column continues the march, the bands do not wheel out of column, but if near together are careful to cease playing in time for the one in the rear to commence at fifteen yards from the station of the Grand Master.

When a column passes in review it ought to be by commandery or division front, certainly not less than section front.

## Sword Signals.



The commands at a funeral are often grating to the feelings, seem cold and harsh; hence signals should be used when practicable. They should be well learned before attempted in public. Take the position of first motion of attention before giving, and resume it after each signal.

**ATTENTION.** Step four yards to left of leading guide, if commandery be in column, or in front when in line, that Knights may plainly see. 1. Reverse the sword, grasp blade near the point with right hand, hilt up. 2. Swing it by a wrist movement in a circle close to right side, and pause when hilt is up, blade perpendicular, hand at height of shoulder.

**ATTENTION.** *When about the grave or coffin:* 1. Drop sword blade by the left, close in front of body, to position of *parade rest*, the right hand resting on the helmet. 2. Raise sword by its helmet in front of center of the body, hand as high as chin. 3. Lower sword to the ground, resuming first motion.

**HALT.** Sword being vertical, hilt up. 1. Raise the right hand and drop the sword to left over the head, catch gripe in left hand, both arms extended, sword horizontal. 3. (For execution) bring sword far enough to front to pass the chapeau, lower it with both hands horizontally to the height of hips.

**MARCH.** 1. Bring sword-hilt to the front, so that the blade shall be inclined upward forty-five degrees. 2. By a decided motion extend the right arm to its full length in direction of the sword.

*From right take distance.* 1. Slip right hand to center of the blade, instantly raise the hand, arm extended, point of sword in direction column is moving, blade horizontal. 2. Re-seize blade near the point and give signal for MARCH.

*From center deploy.* 1. Seize blade by middle as before, raise it quickly, point to right, gripe over the head, arm extended, blade horizontal. 2. Give the signal to *march*.

*Close intervals* same as *from center deploy*.

*To close to wheeling distance*, being at open order. Same as *from right take distance*.

*Cross. SWORDS.* The *attention*, as explained for position about the coffin; then, 1. Seize blade with left hand near the guards, drop right hand to the side. 2. Raise sword perpendicularly, the gripe in front of the face. 3. As signal for execution, lower sword until the left hand is at the belt buckle.

*Carry. SWORDS.* The second and third motions of *cross swords*.

1. *Present.* 2. *SWORDS.* 1. Re-seize the gripe and come to a *present*. 2. Drop the sword-point and hand to position of a *salute*, which is the signal of execution.

*Carry. SWORDS.* 1. Bring the sword from *officers present to present*. 2. Resume the *carry*, as signal of execution.

*Parade. REST.* Signal of *attention* for about the coffin; then 1. Seize the gripe with left hand near the guards, the right grasping the helmet, back of hands to front, sword vertical in front of center of body, point down, hilt at belt buckle. 2. Raise sword with both hands as high as the chin. 3. Lower sword by quick motion to position of *parade rest*.

*Reverse. SWORDS.* 1. Re-seize the gripe with the right hand and take position of first motion of *reverse*. 2. Execute *reverse swords*. The instant the sword is in position is the signal of execution.

*Return. SWORDS.* Face commandery, give the sword a sweep in a circle down to the right, bringing it up to a *present*, and return the sword as prescribed. As the *third motion* is the signal for execution, all return their swords at the same instant.

*Band to play.* Face the band, extend right arm to its full length in direction of sword. 2. Withdraw the hand, *carry*

*swords*, face to the proper front, and the band should commence to play.

*Band to cease playing.* Face the band and give the same signal as for *band to play*.

If it is desired to have the band commence playing when the commandery *present swords*, the signal for present swords may answer for both, or the band is instructed to commence the instant swords are presented.

## Bugle Signals.



THESE should be made a part of the instruction. The *assembly* is the signal for forming in ranks; if habitually sounded before forming the commandery it will be learned without effort.

The signals for drill are taught one or two at a time, until all are familiar with them.

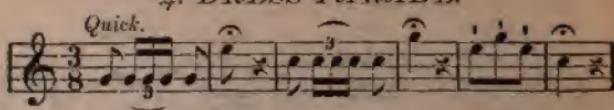
A trumpet call embraces both the preparatory and executory commands, which are promptly repeated orally by the officers of subdivisions. Their frequent use will insure quick recognition, and the beauty of the signal drill will then be fully appreciated.

Movements to the right are on the ascending chord; corresponding movements to the left are corresponding signals on the descending chord; and changes of gait are all upon the same notes.

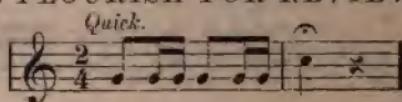
A person having "an ear for music" can easily learn to play upon the bugle or trumpet, and the principal signals can be learned in a surprisingly short space of time. It requires less study and practice than is necessary to commit the ritual to memory.

*1. ASSEMBLY OF MUSICIANS.**2. ASSEMBLY.**3. RECALL.*

## 4. DRESS PARADE.



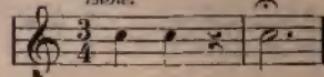
## 5. FLOURISH FOR REVIEW.



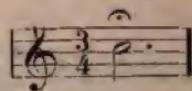
## 6. ATTENTION.

*Slow.*

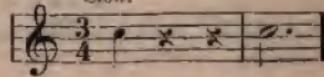
## 7. FORWARD.

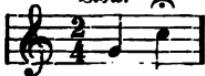
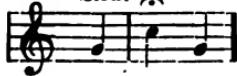
*Slow.*

## 8. HALT.

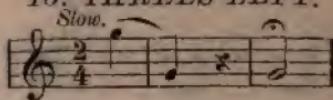


## 9. QUICK TIME.

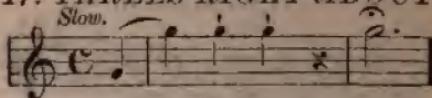
*Slow.*

**10. DOUBLE TIME***Slow.***11. CHARGE.***Quick.***12. GUIDE RIGHT.***Slow.***13. GUIDE LEFT.***Slow.***14. GUIDE CENTRE.***Slow.***15. THREEES RIGHT.***Slow.*

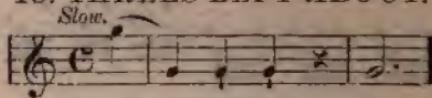
## 16. THREEES LEFT.



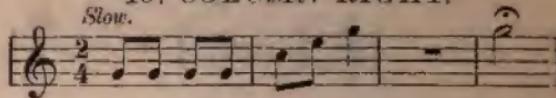
## 17. THREEES RIGHT ABOUT.



## 18. THREEES LEFT ABOUT.



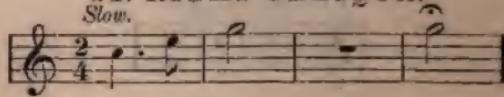
## 19. COLUMN RIGHT.



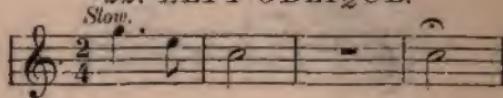
## 20. COLUMN LEFT.



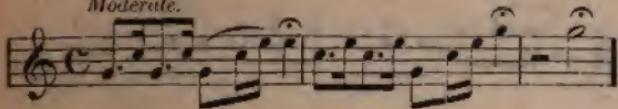
## 21. RIGHT OBLIQUE.



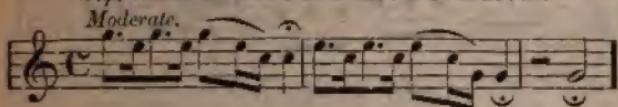
## 22. LEFT OBLIQUE.



## 23. RIGHT FRONT INTO LINE.

*Moderate.*

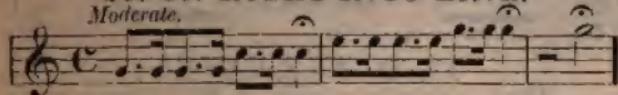
## 24. LEFT FRONT INTO LINE.

*Moderate.*

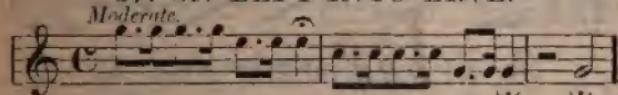
## 25. FACE TO THE REAR.

*Slow.*

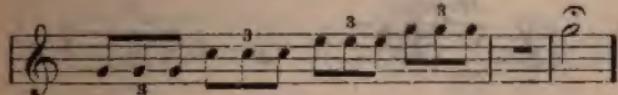
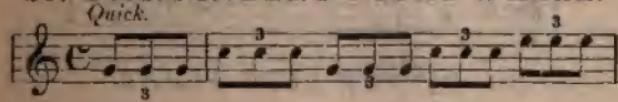
## 26. ON RIGHT INTO LINE.

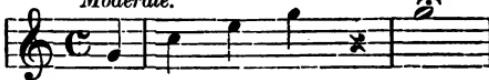
*Moderate.*

## 27. ON LEFT INTO LINE.

*Moderate.*

## 28. COMMANDERY RIGHT WHEEL.

*Quick.*

**29. COMMANDERY LEFT WHEEL.***Quick.***30. DEPLOY.***Quick.***31. TO THE REAR.***Quick.***32. BY THE RIGHT FLANK.***Moderate.***33. BY THE LEFT FLANK.***Moderate.*

## 34. FUNERAL MARCH.

*Very slow.*

The musical score for Bugle Signal 34, Funeral March, is composed of six staves of music. The music is in common time, with a treble clef and a B-flat key signature. The score is divided into two sections by a repeat sign. The first section ends with a double bar line and a repeat sign, followed by the instruction "Repeat at will." The second section continues with three more staves of music.



#### AND RULES FOR COMPETITIVE DRILLS.

The "pomp and circumstance" of Templar gatherings are often depreciated, nevertheless these displays form a powerful adjunct for the development of our numerical strength and influence.

On such occasions the test of skill in military maneuvers is not the least among the attractions.

In such drills there must be judges to "keep tally" and determine the relative merits of contestants.

The most skillful Board of Judges cannot, with any degree of certainty, arrive at correct conclusions unless—

1. They are familiar with the system of drill used.
2. Constantly near the commandery drilling; placing themselves on its flanks and in those proximate positions from which they can observe every movement to the best advantage.
3. They must score and record the degree of merit each separate movement is entitled to, and that before another movement is executed.
4. Each judge must have the same method of scoring and understand it before the drilling commences.

5. The commanderies should, as far as practicable, *execute the same movements in the same order*, and within the same limit of time.

The judges can *guess* as to the comparative merit of different commanderies, but they cannot satisfactorily "score" them except upon the foregoing basis. To undertake to make up a score after the drilling is over is out of the question.

When the aggregate score is made up, the chiefs of the several competing commanderies are notified of the time and place fixed for the public announcement and awarding of the prize, that each with his command may be present.

The following is recommended as a basis for

**Rules for Competitive Drills.**

1. Each commandery shall consist of eighteen\* Sir Knights and three† as officers, all of its own membership.‡

2. Each commandery shall drill separately, and in the order of rank,|| for forty minutes, unless the time be changed by unanimous consent of the officers in command of competing commanderies.

3. Three or five§ disinterested experts shall be selected by the Grand Commander, as a Board of Judges, but they shall not be known as such to any others, until announced on the field.¶

4. The judges shall select their own method of scoring.

5. They shall have exclusive control of the field and commanderies during the drill.

---

\*Not less than eighteen nor more than forty-eight. Fix the number, 18, 24, 36, or 48

†One. Capt. Gen.; or three, C. G. and Wardens, or six, C. G's, Wardens and Standard Guard.

‡It would be unjust to award a prize to a command permitted to pick or hire men from other commanderies or organizations for the occasion.

||The oldest has precedence and post of honor on every occasion; it would therefore be anything but fair to let it usurp the place belonging by right to a junior, or require the latter to hazard its rights by lot.

§Five is better. ¶Selected in time to become familiar with the system of drill to be used.

6. Except the judges, the commandery drilling, its band and standard guard, no person, whatever his rank or position may be, shall remain (even for a moment) on the field during or between drills.

7. Commanderies may drill with or without music, but the judges may require any movements to be executed without music, and the cadence shall be noted irrespective of the time time kept by the band.

8. The chiefs in charge of commanderies shall report at headquarters on the field thirty minutes before the contest is to commence; at which time they may determine by ballot whether the drill shall be witnessed by a contestant before his commandery has drilled. If not determined then, there shall be no such restriction.

9. Commanderies shall cease drilling at the second sound of the *recall* (made five minutes after its first sounding) at which the next commandery shall be ready, and at the *forward*, shall march on the field.

10. Want of promptness in responding to signals shall be treated as errors and marked against the delinquent.

11. No movement shall be executed that is not provided for in the authorized tactics.

12.\* A schedule of movements shall be prepared by the judges. This may embrace any movement included in the "School of the Knight," "Manual of the Sword," "School of the Commandery," with similar formations by sections, if provided for in the tactics, and also the formation of crosses, triangle and square.

13. Any movement passed will be marked "o," and cannot be taken up afterwards.

14. Ten minutes may be allowed for display movements not embraced in the schedule, but these shall not be considered in any way in making up the score.

---

\* This is not difficult for well drilled commanderies, but if desired can be excepted.

**The Rules for Drill without Schedule.**

The foregoing, except rules 12 and 14, shall be in force and a part hereof, and the following be substituted for the rules excepted. Each commandery shall be judged as to its merits in—

- I. Time and manner of formation.
- II. General appearance and bearing.
- III. Uniform (without regard to cost or material).
- IV. The alignments: 1. By file. 2. Backward. 3. Forward.  
4. Right. 5. Left. 6. Same at intervals during drill.
- V. The manual, including the hand salutes, uncover, etc., and excluding the "silent manual."
- VI. The facings: 1. Right. 2. Left. 3. About (each repeated once).
- VII. The side steps, mark time, and backward march.
- VIII. The cadence and steps, noted at intervals during drill.
- IX. The direct march in line: 1. Double time. 2. Quick time. 3. Common time. 4. Short step. 5. Change step.
- X. The direct march in columns of threes, sections and divisions, change step and short step in common, quick and double time.
- XI. Executing to the rear march, repeated once.
- XII. The obliquings: In line, column of threes and sections.
- XIII. The wheels by sections, divisions and commandery front, in common, quick and double time.
- XIV. General Templar formations.

## Camps and Camping.



The form of camps depends upon the number to be accommodated, the kind of tents and the nature and extent of the ground; which, latter, should be susceptible of good drainage, and situated near good water.

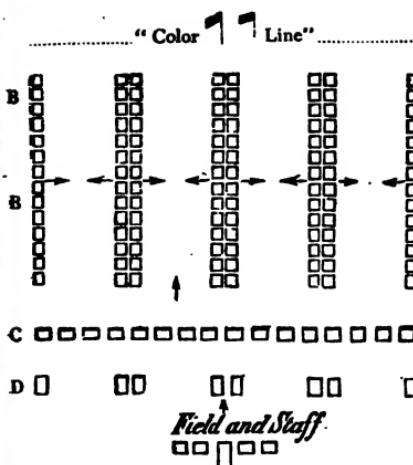
The terms *flank*, *front*, *rank*, *file*, etc., are applied to camps the same as to Knights in column, etc.

A commandery could "pitch its tents" in the form of a cross, with the decorated quarters of its commander in the center. Or camps may be formed as a hollow square, the tents facing towards the large area within; the commander's tent in its center, or on the side opposite and facing the opening, left for ingress and egress, kitchens in rear.

IN BATTALION CAMPS the tents are arranged in column of squadrons (or commanderies); the tents of the first commandery, first squadron, faced to the rear; those of the second faced to the front, forming an avenue (street) or "commandery parade-ground" between. Those of the first commandery, second squadron, are faced to the rear; and so on.

The principal commandery officers' tents are in line parallel to the flank of the column, facing the squadron avenues, opposite their own commandery quarters. The Wardens and other commandery officers are on the flank nearest to their commanders' tent.

The principal Grand Officers' tents, when practicable, are in the center of the line of the commandery officers' tents; otherwise they are in rear of its center, parallel to and facing it.



The kitchens are between the line of field and staff and commandery officers' tents, each on a line with but facing the flank of their own commandery.

The battalion parade ground commences at the "color line," ten yards from the flank farthest from the officers' tents and parallel to it. It should have a clear front equal to at least two-thirds the front of the battalion.

The sinks are in

**F** — — — — — rear of the camp, secluded.

B B, Lines of Knights' tents with their avenues. C, Line of principal commandery officers' tents. D, Kitchens. F, Sinks.

Camps in column of commanderies are similar in form to that of the camp in column of squadrons.

The front of a camp (flank of the column) is nearly equal to that of a battalion, and the number and length of the ranks of tents and width of the avenues varies with the strength of the commanderies; but there should be the same number of tents in each line, and, if necessary, commanderies are temporarily consolidated (see page 152).

The interval between files of tents is two yards. The distance between ranks (back to back) two yards; between ranks facing each other, forming the avenues, about fifteen (never less than six) yards, depending upon the number, etc. The distance from flank of column to line of officers' tents,

about fifteen yards. From officers' tents to kitchens, and from kitchens to field and staff, about fifteen yards.

The avenues should be ditched (guttered) on the sides like a street in a city; and if the weather is threatening, the tents are ditched and the loose earth thrown against the canvass, to prevent overflow and dampness inside.

If cots and mattresses cannot be conveniently secured, drive forked sticks into the ground, three feet apart, more or less; place a strong stick across; about six feet distant a like arrangement; lay spring boards across, and place clean straw upon this, covering with large shawl or blanket. These boards should be secured at one end to keep them from slipping, and be left free at the other end to admit of spring when a person lies upon it. Narrow strips (from head to foot); or split small saplings, place their flat sides up, securing one end, will make a comfortable bed, which should be one and a half to two feet from the ground.

The commander should be held responsible for the cleanliness of his commandery quarters, and the officer of the day should see that this duty is not neglected.

#### THE "QUARTERMASTER."

The Treasurer *ex-officio*, or some Templar who is careful in the use of money (*i. e.* not extravagant) should be detailed as Acting Quartermaster ["A. Q. M."] with such assistants as are necessary. He should have a pocket cash and blank receipt book, keeping accurate and detailed account of receipts and disbursements; and should render a full detailed report, accompanied by vouchers, at the close of the pilgrimage. This should be critically examined by a committee and reported upon, and the facts noted of record.

The object is to supervise the acts of the fiduciary officer, which ought never to be neglected; and it is also an act of justice to him that every one may feel that the affairs have been *faithfully managed*; or, if not, the errors may be avoided

next time; besides, the record, if preserved, will be a guide for future operations.

A commandery, going into camp or on a pilgrimage, should estimate the probable cost *per capita*, and each Knight should pay his *pro rata* to the A. Q. M. with which to purchase tickets, etc. He superintends the detail for handling baggage, and makes all the necessary purchases for camps and general use. This enables the commandery to form and march promptly; prevents much of the rushing excitement of a crowd, and reduces the expenses by wholesale purchases, etc.

The A. Q. M. should be chief in his department, subject only to the orders of the commander and his authority should be cheerfully recognized.

A "ladies' escort" is formed from those members who are unable to march with the commandery; but the A. Q. M. and assistants attend to all the baggage.

## Correspondence and Orders.

[See Code and Digest].



Orders are general or special and are numbered in regular series, commencing with the administration of the Grand Officer.

*General orders* contain whatever may be desired to be made known to the whole jurisdiction.

*Special orders* are such as concern individuals or commanderies that need not be published to all—such as permission to appear in public, to receive petition out of time, etc.

All orders state at their head the source, place, date and number; at its foot the name and rank of the officer giving

it. If printed, copies are made *official* by the signature of the Recorder or a staff officer, thus:

HEADQUARTERS GR. COMMANDERY OF KY.

GEORGETOWN, February 1st, 1882.

GENERAL ORDERS

No. —

\* \* \* \* \*

BY COMMAND OF

R. V. E. SIR JAS. E. CANTRILL, GR. COM.

E. G. HALL, GRAND GENERALISSIMO.

OFFICIAL—*L. D. Croninger, Gr. Rec.*

[If the signature is printed the same or other recognized staff officer can make it "official."]

Orders may be put in the form of letters, but the strict military form is better. If printed they should be on uniform (note) size of paper, suitable to be bound with the proceedings or kept in files.

Written Official Communications

From a Grand or subordinate commander, to those under his command, may be by a staff officer, Generalissimo or Recorder. In other cases by the officer or Knight himself. Official communications from a commandery pass through the Grand Commander to the Grand Commander of another jurisdiction, and *vice versa*, but between commanderies they go direct.

Official communications, as a rule, whether from inferior to superior, or *vice versa*, pass through the intermediate commanderies, *e. g.* A Sir Knight wishing to send an official letter to the G. M. addresses it regularly on the inside to him, but forwards it to his own commander, who indorses it and forwards it to the Grand Commander, who also endorses it and sends it to the G. M. The reponse comes through the same channels, addressed on the inside to the Sir Knight; or the same paper is indorsed and returned through the

proper channels, but may be signed by a staff officer. It is better that official letters, as a rule, be written on letter paper and folded twice, (in three folds) parallel with the writing. Indorsements are made on the back, as shown below.

The top here is the back of the left side of the written page; indorsement for filing is made on the back of the fold at the top of the written page. The perpendicular lines represent the folds. The horizontal rulings are in red ink.

<i>DeMolay Com. No. 12. Louisville, Ky.—'81.</i>	<i>Hd. Qrs. DeMolay Com. No. 12. Louisville, Ky.—1881.</i>	<i>Hd. Qrs. G. Encamp. U.S. —1881. Courteously returned. The order cannot now be changed, because * * By command of —</i>
<i>GRANT, H. B., K. T. [Give Rank.]</i>	<i>Courteously forwarded, with the recommendation that the request, which appears to be just and reasonable, be granted. G. W. NORTHUP, Com'der.</i>	<i>Hd. Qrs. Gr. Com. Ky. Georgetown,—1881. Courteously returned. The attention of Sir Kt. Grant is respectfully di- rected to the endorsement of the Gr. M.</i>
<i>Asks for suspension of Gen. Ord. No. 3, until his Manual, now in hands of the printer, can be sub- mitted.</i>	<i>Approved, and cour- teously forwarded. If the committee must select a manual, this will give wider range and prevent wide spread dissatis- faction, also diminish the chances for injustice to fratres.</i>	<i>By order of R. E.: Jas. E. CANTRILL, Gr. Com. L. D. CRONINGER, Gr. Rec. [etc. etc.]</i>
<i>Rec'd, Hd. Qrs.— Louisville,—1881.</i>	<i>J. E. CANTRILL, Gr. C.</i>	

The whole matter can be thoroughly understood and regularly traced by the indorsements. When once understood it is simple and very convenient. It is strictly military.

## Tactics for the Asylum and Council Chamber.



ARIOUS "reasons" are offered for the mortifying awkwardness often seen in the Asylum movements. Yet there are few things that add so much to the beauty and impressiveness of the ritual as precision in that part which is purely or semi-military. The effect of "good work" is too often destroyed by neglect or ignorance in this department; while accuracy in the tactics, like love, covers a multitude of defects.

Let the skeptic *see* before he criticises.

Officers ought not to be left to the indulgence of their own fancy, but required to observe the strict rules; then the Sir Knights would soon learn all that is required of them.

Every movement of an officer about the Asylum should be at right angles, if practicable.

Under this head, "Asylum" and "Council Chamber," "E. C." and "S. M." H. P. and Prelate are often used as interchangable terms.

### Commands

Should be given in a low distinct tone, or by signals.

### To Establish the Basis of a Line.

The officer places himself about a yard from the point where the head of the column will rest, faces in the direction he desires it to form (towards its rear) and commands **FALL IN**. The Knights approach the line of direction thus indi-

cated and place themselves upon it, facing the officer, the tallest (or the one entitled to the position at the head of column) about a yard from him. When those nearest to him are established he steps out to superintend the formation. If the Knights are to *fall in*, facing to the front, (in line) he so directs those who are to form its basis, and the others conform thereto.

**To Form Divisions in the South, North and West.**

The E. C. indicates what he desires, and the following commands may be given:

Captain General: 1. *Sir Knights Wardens and Sword Bearer.* 2. *FORM YOUR LINES.* Senior Warden: 1. *First Division.* 2. *FALL IN.* Junior Warden: 1. *Third Division.* 2. *FALL IN.* Sword Bearer: *Second Division* (or *Standard Guard*). 2. *FALL IN.*

The Knights form, in as nearly equal divisions as practicable, on the south, north and west, respectively, are faced towards the center by their chiefs, and dressed; when each officer, in rapid succession, commencing with the Sword Bearer in the west, reports: *Sir Knight Captain General, the — Division (or Standard Bearer) is formed.*

**To Form on the South and North.**

The same command is given to the Wardens only, and but two divisions are formed—the Senior Warden's division in the south, and are faced and reported as before.

**To Form on one side of the Asylum or across its Center.**

Captain General: 1. *Sir Knight Senior Warden.* 2. *FORM THE COMMANDERY.*

One line is formed facing the north, and reported: *Sir Knight Captain General, the commandery is formed.*

If desired to form it *facing the east*, these words are added to the order, and it is obeyed accordingly.

**To Form in Two or more Ranks.**

*Form the commandery (or your lines) in two (or three) ranks [facing the east, etc.]*

The order is repeated, *In two (or three) ranks. FALL IN*, when they are formed as before, except they fall in facing to the front, and in two ranks; the files covering.

**To Form at Open Order.**

— *division (or commandery) at sword distance [facing the east]. FALL IN, etc.*

The Knights form regularly as before, but take the interval prescribed and do not close it in dressing. The divisions (or commandery) are reported as before.

**To Form for Rehearsal.**

*Sir Knights Senior and Junior Wardens and Sword Bearer, form your lines at sword intervals for rehearsal.*

If the Standard Guard is to participate (and why should it not?) the Sword Bearer is included in the order.

The lines are formed at two yards distance, facing inward, files at sword intervals opposite each other.

1. *First to second division.* 2. *Communicate.* 3. *GUARD.*

4. *PARRY* —, etc., (see Templar Sword Exercise).

Lines should be formed two yards apart. To "advance" will then be unnecessary, besides the command is not a proper substitute for *forward, march*; nor will it probably be well executed.

"Sir Knight, attention," has a signification (taught in the School of the Knight) that makes it an objectional form of challenge, besides all are at *attention*. "Attention, Sir Knight" is obsolete and erroneous. To challenge, command:

1. *Sir Knight.* 2. *Communicate* —. 3. *Receive it from the Sir Knight* — etc.

At *Sir Knight*, given by one having the right to challenge,

face him. If addressed to an officer, add the name of his office as "Sir Knight Senior Warden." If the challenger is inferior in rank, he claims to be "in possession," and is then ordered by his ranking frater. If at a distance he is ordered to "advance," etc.

### THE ESCORTS

#### For Sovereign Master.

M. P.—*Sir Knight Master of Cavalry, with a detail of six (or so many) repair to the apartments of the Sovereign Master, inform him that the Council Chamber is prepared for his reception, and awaits his pleasure.*

The M. C. forms a squad of six, in column of twos, and conducts it to the S. M.'s apartments; causes it to form line facing the S. M., commands, *present, SWORDS*; faces about, salutes and reports: "Sovereign Master, the Council Chamber is prepared for your reception."

S. M.—"Conduct us thither."

The escort, under command of the M. C., resumes the *carry*, wheels by twos into column, and followed by the S. M. (with the Chan. and H. P. forming a rank of two in his rear) returns to the Council Chamber.

In the mean time two lines, facing each other, are formed in the Council Chamber, between the throne and the door, at convenient distance apart; swords at a *carry*. As the escort approaches the door the sentinel announces its approach, faces toward the escort, and stands at a *present* till the S. M. and suit have passed; the Warder sounds the *attention*, and the escort enters, divides right and left so as to form on the lines already established, and faces inward. The M. P. commands: *Present, SWORDS*; at which the lines present and the Warder gives a flourish\* with the trumpet; the M. P. descends from the dais, takes his place about a yard from the right of the first division, and stands at a *salute*. The S. M.

---

\*See Signal 5, p. 260 and p. 241.

if in uniform, acknowledges the present by raising his cap; and followed by the Chancellor and High Priest, may pass, uncovered, between the lines; (his suit neither recognizes the present, not intended for them, nor do they uncover). If in robes, the S. M. acknowledges the honors by a slight inclination of the head.

Arriving at their stations they face about, and the S. M. orders: "Sir Knight, Master of the Palace, let the Princes and Rulers be seated."

M. P.—1. *Carry.* 2. SWORDS. 3. *Return.* 4. SWORDS.  
5. *Sir Knights.* 6. *Be seated.*

The *present* only is used in the Court of Darius.

#### Eminent Commander's Escort.

Escort for the E. C. is formed by similar commands and means as have been explained for the S. M. The E. C. is however received under a cross of steel (unless he should direct that the *present* be substituted), thus:

1. *Cross.* 2. SWORDS.

Executed as before explained, the trumpet giving a flourish; the E. C., uncovered, passes under the cross. On reaching his station, he faces about and assumes personal command at once, by the order: 1. *Carry.* 2. SWORDS. 3. *Return.* 4. SWORDS. 5. *Sir Knights.* 6. *Be seated.*

#### High Priest's or Prelate's Escort.

S. M.—"Sir Knight, Master of the Palace, let the lines be formed to escort our M. E. H. P. to the Hall-of-the-West."

M. P.—*Sir Knight Master of Cavalry, form the lines, and escort the M. E. H. P. to the Hall-of-the-West.* Done as before explained, except that the purposes for the formation being announced, with the orders, the M. Cav. orders the Master of Infantry to *form his lines*; he executes the order and reports to the officer who gave it. A division is formed on the south by the M. C., and on the north by the M. I.

(facing each other). The Master of Cavalry reports to the H. P.: *Most Excellent High Priest, the escort awaits your pleasure.* The H. P., bowing ceremoniously, says: *Lead on, Sir Knight.*

The Master of Cavalry commands: 1. *Carry.* 2. *SWORDS.* 3. *Files break into double column from the east.* 4. **MARCH.** At the command *march*, the Knights on the east flanks of the two divisions (which are facing inward), march forward until they are about thirteen inches from each other, face to face; they then turn and march together toward the west; the next two execute the same movement, and so on in succession, until all are marching in column of twos towards the west. The files commence the movement in time, according to the width of the Asylum, so that the twos may be promptly formed at wheeling distance. The H. P. follows in its rear. On reaching the Hall-of-the-West, the lines are opened thus: 1. *Incline to the left and right.* 2. **MARCH.** 3. *Escort.* 4. **HALT.** 5. *Right and left.* 6. **FACE.** 7. *Present.* 8. *SWORDS.* The H. P. bowing, passes between the lines to his place, faces about, and the swords are brought to a *carry.* The return is executed by similar commands and means.

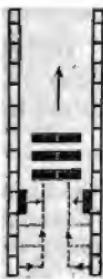
[It is of questionable propriety for any to appear in the Hall-of-the-West with swords, (see working text). If they do not, the *present* is omitted].

#### **Escort to Banquet.**

**S. M.**—"Sir Knight, Master of the Palace, let the lines be formed to escort us to the banquet."

**M. P.**—*Sir Knights Masters of Cavalry and Infantry, form your lines.* [Give number of ranks if the number present requires it].

Lines are formed as before explained, except that the com-



mand, 1. *Visiting Sir Knights.* 2. *FALL IN*, is given first. Visitors are first formed in two divisions, about three yards apart; then the members are formed on the west flanks, if there is room; otherwise in their rear.

When ready, reports are made as before, and the escort is moved, as explained for the H. P's escort, in time to follow the S. M. and suit, including Zer.

The Warder, playing a march, leads the column. On arriving at the hall he turns out of the column, permitting it to pass him, but continues to play until the S. M. reaches his place.

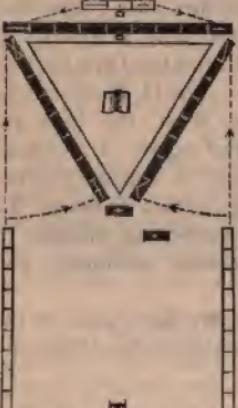
#### To Form Triangle from Two Divisions.

The commandery being formed in two equal divisions on

the south and north, the Standard Guard in the west as explained; the Captain General commands: 1. *Form triangle.* 2. *MARCH.*

At the first command the Wardens quickly step to the front and centers of their divisions, face towards them, and command:

Senior Warden—1. *First division.*  
2. *Left.* 3. *FACE.* 4. *Forward.* Junior Warden—1. *Second division.*  
2. *Right.* 3. *FACE.* 4. *Forward.* At command *march*, the Senior Warden adds *column right*; the Junior Warden commands *column left*, and each



gives the command *MARCH* when the leading files of their respective divisions have reached the points in rear, near which the angles of the triangle will rest. Each halts his division when one-third of it has changed direction, so that the sides of the triangle will be equal, and faces it right or left (inward). The Sword Bearer moves his guard forward or backward, so that the standard will be between the two

divisions as they approach each other at the base of the triangle, and then, with the Warden, steps one yard to the rear. The Senior Warden promptly places himself where the right of his division will rest when the movement is completed; the Junior Warden takes his post opposite the Senior Warden, where the left of his division will rest, leaving room between the Wardens for the Eminent Commander to form the apex of the triangle. The Sword Bearer and Warden step to the right and left of the line at the base, where the two west angles of the triangle will rest. The lines are then promptly dressed between the points thus established (leaving room for the Wardens on the flanks of their divisions next to the base of triangle), as follows: 1. *First division.* 2. *Right.* 3. DRESS. 4. FRONT. Junior Warden—1. *Third division.* 2. *Left.* 3. DRESS. 4. FRONT. Sword Bearer—1. *Second division.* 2. *Center.* 3. DRESS. 4. FRONT. When they command *front*, the Wardens take their posts by the rear, on the other flanks of their divisions. If the lines are long, the commands may be, *Right* (and *left*) *half wheel*, in lieu of the *right* (and *left*).

Seeing that the movements are completed, the Eminent Commander says: 1. *Staff.* 2. *Forward.* 3. MARCH, and with his staff, including the Captain General, close the triangle, the Prelate taking his place about one yard to the right of the Eminent Commander, and one yard retired.

The Eminent Commander, or Captain General, by his direction, now orders:

1. *Commandery.* 2. *About.* 3. *Face.* 4. *Return.* 5. SWORDS.
6. *Deposit.* 7. CHAPEAUX. 8. *Commandery.* 9. *About.*
10. *Face.* 11. *Commandery.* 12. KNEEL.

At the seventh command the chapeaux are laid aside; at the twelfth all, except the Prelate, kneel on the right knee [vide page 37] and repeat the Lord's Prayer in concert, the Prelate leading in it. (See working text).

**To Reduce Triangle.**

The devotions being concluded, the Eminent Commander commands:

1. *Commandery.* 2. *Rise.* 3. *Commandery.* 4. *About.*
5. *Face.* 6. *Recover.* 7. *CHAPEAUX.* 8. *Form*  
*two divisions, right and left.* 9. *MARCH.*

Senior Warden—1. *First division.* 2. *Right half wheel,* repeats *MARCH*, and adds *By the left flank*, adding 5. *MARCH* the instant his division has wheeled to a right angle with the base of the triangle.

Junior Warden—1. *Third division.* 2. *Left half wheel,* repeats, *MARCH*, adds *By the right flank*, and 5. *MARCH* the instant his division has reached the perpendicular to the base of the triangle.

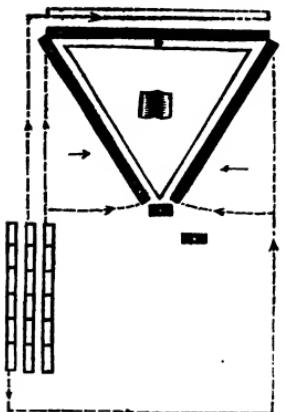
Sword Bearer, stepping one yard to the rear—1. *Left wing, second division.* [Being faced to the rear its designation is changed.] 2. *Left.* 3. *Face.* 4. *Forward.* 5. *Column left,* and promptly repeats the fifth command of the Senior Warden.

Warder, stepping one yard to the rear—1. *Right wing second division.* 2. *Right.* 3. *Face.* 4. *Forward.* 5. *Column right,* he repeats the fifth command of the Junior Warden.

The first and third divisions march towards the east, followed by the left and right wings of the second division, which lengthen the step and unite with them in column of files. The Wardens halt and face their respective divisions towards each other; the Standard Guard re-forms, under command of its chief, and is marched to its place in the west.

The Eminent Commander and staff face about at his command, and resume their stations immediately after the command to form two divisions.

The Eminent Commander gives the usual signal, or says, *Sir Knights, be seated.*

**To Form Triangle from Line of Three Ranks.**

Eminent Commander(or Capt. General by his direction):

*1. Form Triangle. 2. MARCH.*

At the first command, the Sword Bearer steps to the left of the middle rank, or division; the Warder to its right, the Standard Bearer dresses back into the same division, if not already there, and the chiefs command:

Senior Warden—*1. First division. 2. Left. 3. FACE. 4. Forward*, and places himself on the right of the leading Knight.

Junior Warden: *Third division. 2. Right. 3. FACE. 4. Forward. 5. Column left*, and places himself on the left of the leading file as soon as the movement is commenced. Sword Bearer—*1. Second division. 2. Left. 3. FACE. 4. Forward*.

At the command *march*, repeated by the chiefs, the S. W. conducts his division to the west, halts and faces it so that the left will rest at the southwest corner of the delta. The Junior Warden conducts his division to the north, then *column left* to the west, halts and faces it to the left, opposite the first division. The Sword Bearer conducts his division to the west, a yard beyond the point where the base of the triangle will rest, marches it to the north (*column right*), halts it when it gains its proper place and faces it to the right. The Wardens place the Knights of their respective divisions, who stand next to them in line, at twenty-two inches east of the angles of the triangle nearest to them, quickly step to the other flanks of their divisions and dress (or wheel) them *left* and *right*, as before explained (*vide p. 283.*) The Sword Bearer

dresses his division, and the triangle is completed as before.

[Or the triangle may be formed as explained in tactics, by approaching the apex in column of threes, by commands *threes right*, etc., and changing direction of column; or *right forward, threes right*, etc.]

#### To Reduce the Triangle.

This may be done as before explained, or the divisions are conducted by inverse means to their former positions, and resume their places in line, on order of the Eminent Commander, to *Form commandery in three ranks*.

The Eminent Commander and staff return to their stations as before.

#### To Seat the Knights, when in one or more Lines, without Formally Dismissing Them.

*Officers, take your stations.* The officers take their stations as prescribed by the ritual; the signal for seating is given or the Eminent Commander says, *Sir Knights, be seated*, and the order is promptly obeyed without confusion.

#### To Change a Division to the Opposite Side of the Asylum, from Commandery formed in One or Two Ranks.

If the commandery be in line, single rank, count twos; numbers one will be the first division and numbers two will be the second division. The command will be, 1. *Second division.* 2. *Forward.* 3. *MARCH.* 4. *Division.* 5. *HALT.* 6. *Division.* 7. *ABOUT.* 8. *FACE.* 9. *Left.* 10. *DRESS.* 11. *FRONT.* In dressing, the Knights of the second division, by *left side steps*, place themselves opposite the Knights who were on the right before the movement commenced.

If in two ranks and in line, march the front rank forward and bring it to an *about* as before, the rank will stand fast and becomes the first division.

**Inspection and Review.**

It does not appear to be desirable nor is there any necessity or point in the inspection, etc., in the Asylum: 1st. Because there is no provision, general or special, for the enforcement of any criticisms on the uniform—which is unfortunate.

2d. The ceremonies in the Asylum are quite as formal as are likely to be well learned, and quite as full as is generally appreciated.

3d. Ninety-nine hundredths of the Asylums are too small for any review; and if it cannot be well done it had better be omitted.

4th. If the Asylums were large enough, there is no lesson taught by the review, no good practice in drilling, to say nothing of the impropriety of such use of time and carpets.



## Burial Service.



WHEN a Knight is buried by his commandery, the burial ceremony, approved by the Grand Encampment in 1859, must be observed.

"An unaffiliated Knight Templar is not entitled to the honors of Knightly burial.

"A commandery may perform escort duty at the burial of a Knight by his lodge, when so requested."

The Eminent Commander, Generalissimo and Prelate should call on the family of a deceased frater to ascertain their wishes as to his funeral.

When several Masonic bodies unite in performing the rites of burial, confusion is often produced by their officers not having a full understanding, before the cortege moves, of the positions required by each around the grave, and the ceremonies each is to perform, both there and at the church or residence. This should never be neglected.

The commandery should form at the prescise moment named in the call.

Six Knights from among the best drilled are selected as *pall-bearers*, each of whom wears a button-hole bouquet of evergreen and pure white flowers, emblem of the resurrection, tied with a black and white ribbon and fastened at the left breast. The pall-bearers form on the left of the line. The standard and sword hilts are dressed in crape; Knights in full uniform.

### Order of Procession.

1. Music;
2. The commandery;
3. Master Masons;
4. Clergy;
5. Hearse and Master Mason or citizen pall-bearers;
6. Knight Templar pall-bearers;
7. Mourners;
8. Delegations, societies and citizens.

**At the Residence.**

The center of the line is opposite and facing the entrance; the band is six yards from left flank, towards which the procession will move.

[All the commands are given in a modulated tone of voice, but it is very desirable that signals be used when practicable.]

The line stands at *parade rest*.

The Generalissimo as *aid* ascertains that every thing is properly arranged, and so reports to the commander, who, followed by the Generalissimo, Captain General and pall-bearers, with the Prelate in rear, march in column of twos into the house, swords at a *carry*. If the Prelate has a sword he does not draw it. It is in strict accord with the regulations for the Prelate to wear his robes, and carry his badge of office. They incline to the right and left, pass on each side of the coffin and halt, the Prelate at the foot. The Eminent Commander, at the head of the coffin, faces about, which in this place is the signal for the others to face *right* and *left*, toward the deceased; all bow the head and so remain until the Eminent Commander signals *attention*. He then causes the Generalissimo, Captain General and pall-bearers to *cross swords* over the remains, places the sword, and, if an officer, the jewel of the deceased trimmed with crape, upon the coffin, bows the head and exclaims: *Alas! my brother.* The Prelate, holding a small cross with both hands as high as the breast, looks upward. All remain in this position a moment, and the commander signals, 1. *Carry.* 2. *SWORDS.*

The Captain General now returns to his command, the pall-bearers *return swords, uncover*, and bear the remains to the hearse, the Prelate walking in advance, commander in rear.

When the coffin comes in sight the Captain General signals *attention*, and the band plays an appropriate air. When the pall-bearers are as near as ten or twelve yards the Captain General signals:

1. *Present.* 2. SWORDS.

The coffin is put in the hearse; the pall-bearers, under direction of their chief, form section or threes in rear of the hearse, Master Mason and citizen pall-bearers at the side, and the commandery resumes the *carry*. When all is ready the Captain General commands:

1. *Reverse.*
2. SWORDS.
3. *Threes left (or right).*
4. MARCH.
- Or, 3. *Sections left (or right) wheel.*
4. MARCH.
5. *Forward.*
6. MARCH.

The swords may be *carried* as relief, but are *reversed as the rule*.

The commandery marches in slow time to solemn music, left in front.

**At the Church.**

Lines are formed, swords presented, the band plays, the coffin is removed by the pall-bearers, the commandery marches into the church *uncovered*, with swords drawn, but at a *secure* and occupies seats, which the Generalissimo should see are reserved for it. All stand until the commander seats them. At the signal *attention*, all rise together, *re-cover* by signal of commander, and *carry swords*. The Generalissimo, Captain General and pall-bearers *cross swords* over the coffin.

This should be practiced in the Asylum, and the movements of the commander should be closely observed, that his signals may be quickly recognized.

*Blunders at a funeral are inexcusable.*

**At the Grave.\***

The column is halted, line formed, swords presented, the band plays a dirge, and the remains are placed over the grave. A triangle is formed about the grave, mourners and base of

---

\* During the services of a Masonic Lodge about the grave, the commandery may be formed in an "oblong square" outside that formed by the Master Masons.

the triangle at the foot, commander at the head, pall-bearers are on the sides. If the area is too small to admit of a triangle, form in two lines, one on each side. *Stand in line at parade rest*, and do not permit straggling or talking in ranks. The officers having a part to take in the ceremonies, *return swords*. At the conclusion of the ritual or the closing prayer, solemn music or a hymn will be both appropriate and soothing. It will also serve to deaden the distressing sounds of the earth as it strikes the casket's covering, and the commandery stand at, 1. *Rest on*. 2. *SWORDS*. When all is done the Com. and Gen. communicate with the family of the deceased, whom the commandery escorts to their home, or out of the cemetery, presents swords and returns to the Asylum. When desirable, the part of the service before going to the grave may be performed at the house of the deceased, at the church, or be deferred till at the grave.

#### RITUAL

*Eminent Commander.* **SIX KNIGHTS:** In the solemn rites of our Order, we have often been reminded of the great truth—that we were born to die. Mortality has been brought to view, that we might more earnestly seek an immortality beyond this fleeting life, where death can come no more forever. The sad and mournful funeral knell has bewakened that another spirit has winged its flight to a new state of existence. An alarm has come to the door of our Asylum, and the messenger was Death; and now presumed to say to the awful presence: "Who dare approach?" A pilgrim warrior has been summoned. "and there is no discharge in that war." A burning taper of life in our Commandery has been extinguished, and none save the High and Holy One can

re-light it. All that remains of our beloved companion lies mute before us, and the light of the eye, and the breathing of the lips, in their language of fraternal greeting, has ceased for us forever on this side of the grave. His sword, vowed only to be drawn in the cause of truth, justice, and rational liberty, reposes still in its scabbard, and our arms can no more shield him from wrong and oppression.

*The Knights here return swords without command, on the signal of the Eminent Commander.* (Vide p. 167.)

It is meet, at such a time, that we should be silent, and let the words of the Infinite and Undying speak, that we may gather consolation from His revelations, and impress upon our minds lessons of wisdom and instruction, and the meetness of preparation for the last great change which must pass upon us all.

Let us be reverently attentive while Sir Knight, our Prelate, reads to us a lesson from the Holy Scriptures.

*The Eminent Commander uncovers, which is the signal for all to do so.*

*Prelate.* Help, Lord! for the faithful fail from among the children of men.

*Response.* Help us, O Lord.

*Prelate.* The righteous cry, and the Lord heareth, and delivereth them out of all their troubles.

*Response.* Hear us, O Lord.

*Prelate.* The Lord is nigh unto them that are of a broken heart, and saveth such as be of a contrite spirit.

*Response.* Be nigh unto us, O Lord.

*Prelate.* The Lord redeemeth the souls of his servants; and none of them that trust in Him shall be desolate.

*Response.* Redeem us, O Lord.

*Prelate.* For I will not trust in my bow, neither shall my sword save me.

*Response.* Redeem us, O Lord.

*Prelate.* But God will redeem my soul from the power of the grave; for He shall receive me.

*Response.* Redeem us, O Lord.

*Prelate.* Wilt Thou show wonders to the dead? Shall the dead arise and praise Thee? Shall Thy loving kindness be declared in the grave? or Thy faithfulness in destruction?

*Response.* Save us, O Lord.

*Prelate.* We spend our days as a tale that is told. The days of our years are threescore years and ten; and if by reason of strength, they be fourscore years, yet is their strength labor and sorrow, for it is soon cut off, and we fly away. So teach us to number our days, that we may apply our hearts unto wisdom.

*Response.* Teach us, O Lord.

*Prelate.* For He knoweth our frame; He remembereth we are dust. As for man, his days are as grass; as a flower of the field he flourisheth. For the wind passeth over it, and it is gone; and the place thereof shall know it no more. But the mercy of the Lord is from everlasting to everlasting upon them that fear Him.

*Response.* Show mercy, O Lord.

*Prelate.* We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed. For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality. So, when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory. O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory?

*Response.* O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory?

*Prelate.* The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law. But thanks be to God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.

*Response.* Thanks be to God.

*E. Commander.* Shall the memory of our departed brother fade from among men?

*Response.* It is cherished in our souls forever.

*E. Commander.* Shall no record be left of his virtues and worth?

*Response.* It is inscribed upon our hearts; it is written in our archives: the heart may cease to throb, and the archives may molder and decay, but the tablets of the recording angel on high can never perish.

*The Recorder here opens the Book of Records of the Commandery, on which a page is set apart, suitably inscribed, and says:*

*Recorder.* Thus it is written.

*The Knights bow their heads.*

*E. Commander.* He was a true and courteous Knight, and has fallen in life's struggle full knightly, with his armor on.

*Prelate.* Rest to his ashes and peace to his soul.

*Response.* Rest to his ashes and peace to his soul.

*Prelate.* Sovereign Ruler of the Universe! into Thy hands we devoutly and submissively commit the departed spirit.

*Response.* Thy will be done, O God.

The following hymn will then be sung :—

Words by Sir ROBT. MORRIS.

Arr. by GEO. B. SELBY.

1. Pre - cious in the sight of Heav - en  
2. Here a - bove our bro - ther weep - ing,  
3. Knights of Christ, your ranks are bro - ken!

Is the scene where Chris - tians die;  
Through our tears we seize this hope:  
Close your front—the Foe is nigh!

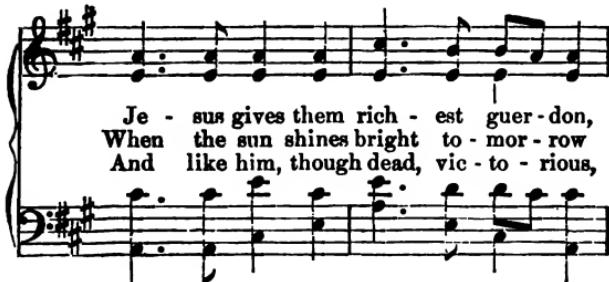
Souls with all their sins for - giv - en  
He, in Je - sus sweet - ly sleep - ing,  
Shield to shield, be - hold the To - ken,

To the Courts of Glo - ry fly.  
Shall a - wake to glo - ry up,  
As he saw it in the sky!

Ev' - ry sor - row, ev' - ry bur - den,  
He has borne his Cross in sor - row -  
By this sign, so bright, so glo - rious,



Ev' - ry cross, they lay it down;  
Wea - ry Pil - grim, all for - lorn.  
You shall con - quer! if you strive;



Je - sus gives them rich - est guer - don,  
When the sun shines bright to - mor - row  
And like him, though dead, vic - to - rious,



In his own im - mor - tal Crown.  
'Twill re - veal his spark-ling Crown.  
In the sight of Je - sus live.

*The following, or an extemporaneous prayer, will then be made by the Prelate, or by any clergyman present:*

FATHER OF LIGHT! In this dark and trying hour of calamity and sorrow, we humbly lift our hearts to Thee. Give us, we pray, that light which cometh down from above. Thou hast mercifully said in Thy holy word, that the bruised reed Thou wouldest not break; remember in mercy, O Lord, these bereaved ones now before Thee. [Be Thou, at this hour, the Father of the fatherless, and the widow's God. Administer to them the consolations which they so sorely need.] Cause us to look away from these sad scenes of frail mortality to the hopes which lie beyond the grave, and bind us yet closer together in the ties of brotherly love and affection. While we see how frail is man, and how uncertain the continuance of our lives upon the earth, and are reminded of our own mortality, lead us, by Thy grace and spirit, to turn our thoughts to those things which make for our everlasting peace; and give us a frame of mind to make a proper improvement of all the admonitions of thy providence, and fix our thoughts more devotedly on Thee, the only sure refuge in time of need. And at last, when our earthly pilgrimage shall be ended, "when the silver cord shall be loosed, and the golden bowl be broken," Oh, wilt Thou, in that moment of mortal extremity be indeed *Immanuel*—Christ with us; may the "lamp of Thy love" dispel the gloom of the dark valley, and we be enabled by the commendations of Thy Son, to gain admission into the blessed Asylum above; and in Thy

glorious presence, amidst its ineffable mysteries, enjoy a union with the spirits of the departed, perfect as is the happiness of heaven, and durable as the eternity of God. *Amen.*

*Response.* Amen and Amen.

*The Eminent Commander recovers, and all do so and together.*

*The procession will then form and march to the place of interment, in the same order as before.*

*On arriving at the place, while forming in order, a suitable dirge may be played by the band.*

*The Knights will form a triangle around the grave, the base being at the foot, the Eminent Commander and Prelate being at the head, and the friends and relatives at the foot.*

*The Knights stand at parade rest, and the following hymn may be sung:*

*Air—Pleyel's Hymn.*

The musical score consists of two staves. The top staff is in G major and the bottom staff is in C major. Both staves are in common time (indicated by '4'). The lyrics are as follows:

1. Soft - ly, sad - ly bear him forth,
2. By our tri - als, hopes and fears;
3. This our broth - er, gone be - fore,
4. Sad - ly now we leave his form
5. One last look, one part - ing sigh,-

To his dark and si - lent bed;  
 By our an - guish keen - ly felt;  
 May we in re - mem - brance keep,  
 In the tomb to mould - er still;  
 Ah, too sad for words to tell!

Weep not that he's lost to earth;  
 Let us trust God will be near,  
 Hop - ing, as time pass - es o'er,  
 Hop - ing, in th'e - ter - nal morn,  
 Yet, though tears now dim each eye,

Weep not that his spir - it's fled.  
 When we're at his al - tar knelt.  
 We shall meet where none e'er weep.  
 Christ his prom - ise will ful - fill.  
 Hope we still, and sigh, fare - well!

*The services will proceed thus:*

**Prelate.** SIR KNIGHTS: There is one sacred spot upon the earth where the footfalls of our march are unheeded; our trumpets quicken no pulse and incite no fear; the rustling of our banners and the gleam of our swords awaken no emotion. It is the silent city of the dead where we now stand. Awe rests upon every heart, and the stern warrior's eyes are bedewed with feelings which never shame his manhood. It needs no siege, nor assault, nor beleaguering host to enter its walls; we fear no sortie, and listen for no battle shout. No Warder's challenge greets the ear, nor do we wait awhile with patience for permission to enter.

Hither must we all come at last; and the stoutest heart and the manliest form that surrounds me will then be led a captive, without title or rank, in the chains of mortality and the habiliments of slavery to the King of Terrors.

But if he has been faithful to the Captain of his salvation, a true soldier of the Cross; if he has offered suitable gifts at the shrine of his departed Lord, and bears the signet of the Lion of the tribe of Judah, then may he claim to be of that princely house and to be admitted to audience with the Sovereign Master of Heaven and Earth. Then will he be stripped of the chains of earthly captivity and clothed in a white garment, glistening as the sun, and be seated with princes and rulers, and partake of a libation, not of death and sorrow, but of that wine which is drunk forever new in the Father's kingdom above.

We can not come here without subdued hearts and softened affections. Often as the challenge comes which takes from our side some loved associate, some cherished companion in arms, and often as the trumpet sounds its wailing notes to summon us to the death-bed and the brink of the sepulcher, we can not contemplate "the last of earth" unmoved. Each successive death-note snaps some fiber which binds us to this lower existence and makes us pause and reflect upon that dark and gloomy chamber where we must all terminate our pilgrimage. Well will it be for our peace then, if we can wash our hands, not only in token of sincerity, but of every guilty stain, and give honest and satisfactory answers to the questions required.

The sad and solemn scene now before us stirs up these recollections with a force and vivid power which we have hitherto unfelt. He who now slumbers in that last, long, unbroken sleep of death was our brother. With him have we walked the pilgrimage of life and kept ward and watch together in its vicissitudes and trials. He is now removed beyond the effect of our praise or censure. That we loved him our presence here evinces; and we remember him in scenes to which the world was not witness, and where the better feelings of humanity were exhibited without disguise. That he had faults and foibles is but to repeat what his mortality demonstrates—that he had a human nature, not divine. Over these errors, whatever they may have been, we cast, while living, the mantle of charity; it should, with much

more reason, enshroud him in death.. We who have been taught to extend the point of charity even to a foe when fallen, can not be severe or merciless toward a loved brother.

The memory of his virtues lingers in our remembrance and reflects its shining luster beyond the portals of the tomb. The earthen vase which has contained precious odors will lose none of its fragrance, though the clay be broken and shattered. So be it with our brother's memory.

*The Junior Warden then removes the sword from the coffin, which last will then be lowered into the grave, while the Prelate repeats as follows:*

*Prelate.* "I am the resurrection and the life; he that believeth in me though he were dead yet shall he live; and whomsoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die." To the earth we commit the mortal remains of our deceased brother, as we have already commended his soul to his Creator, with humble submission to Divine Providence. [*Here cast some earth on the coffin.*] Earth to earth [*here cast again*]; ashes to ashes [*here cast more earth*]; dust to dust—till the morn of the resurrection, when, like our risen and ascended Redeemer, he shall break the bonds of death, and abide the judgment of the great day. Till then friend, brother, Sir Knight, farewell! Light be the ashes upon thee, and "may the sunshine of heaven beam bright on thy waking!"

*Response.* Amen and Amen!

*The Junior Warden then presents the sword to the Eminent Commander, who says:*

*Eminent Commander.* Our departed brother was taught, while living, that this sword, in his hands, as a true and courteous Knight, was endowed with three most estimable qualities: "Its hilt with *fortitude* undaunted; its blade with *justice* impartial; and its point with *mercy* unrestrained." To these lessons, with their deep emblematical significance, we trust he gave wise heed. He could never grasp it without being reminded of the lively significance of the attributes it inculcated. He has borne the pangs of dissolving nature—may we trust that it was with the same *fortitude* that he sustained the trials of this passing existence; to his name and memory be *justice* done, as we hope to receive the like meed ourselves; and may that *mercy* unrestrained, which is the glorious attribute of the Son of God, interpose in his behalf to blunt the sword of Divine justice, and to admit him to the blessed companionship of saints and angels in the realms of light and life eternal.

*Response.* Amen and Amen!

*The Senior Warden then presents a cross to the Prelate, who says:*

*Prelate.* This symbol of faith—the Christian's hope and the Christian's trust—we again place upon the breast of our brother, there to remain till the last trumpet shall sound and earth and sea yield up their dead. Though it may, in the past history of our race, have been perverted at times into an ensign of oppression and crime and wrong; though it may have been made the emblem of fraud and supersti-

nd moral darkness, yet its significance still re-  
the badge of the Christian warrior. It calls  
Gethsemane and its sorrowful garden; the  
hall of Pilate and the pitiless crown of  
Calgotha and Calvary, and their untold  
that fallen man might live and inherit ever-  
ing life. If an inspired apostle was not ashamed  
of the cross, neither should we be; if he gloried in  
the significance of the truths it shadowed forth, so  
ought we to rejoice in it as the speaking witness of  
our reliance beyond the grave. May this hope of the  
living have been the anchor to the soul of our de-  
parted brother—the token to admit him to that  
peaceful haven “where the wicked cease from troub-  
bling and the weary are at rest.”

*Response.* Amen and Amen!

*The Prelate then casts the cross into the grave and continues:*

*Prelate.* The Orders of Christian Knighthood were  
instituted in a dark period of the world's history,  
but their mission was high and holy. To succor and  
protect the sorrowing and destitute, the innocent and  
oppressed, was their vow and their life-long labor and  
duty. For long, long years they well and nobly per-  
formed their vows and did their devoirs. In those  
rude ages the steel blade was oftener the arbiter of  
justice than the judgments of judicial tribunals or  
the decrees of magistrates. So long as the Templars  
adhered to their vows of poverty they were virtuous  
and innocent, and their language was in truth, “Sil-  
ver and gold have I none, but such as I have, give I

卷之三

سازمان اسناد و کتابخانه ملی ایران

The second World War brought a new & the 2nd Empire

It's time that we should have — the Truth —  
and the Truth — that we again make him  
the Truth. If we continue them to remain till the  
end, shall Truth, sound and earth and sea, stand up  
against God? I thought it may, in the past history of  
the Truth, have been preserved at times from an invasion  
of opinions of Truth and Wrong; though it may  
have taken mark the emblem of fraud and superstition.

tion and moral darkness, yet its significance still remains as the badge of the Christian warrior. It calls to mind Gethsemane and its sorrowful garden; the judgment hall of Pilate and the pitiless crown of thorns; Golgotha and Calvary, and their untold agonies, that fallen man might live and inherit everlasting life. If an inspired apostle was not ashamed of the cross, neither should we be; if he gloried in the significance of the truths it shadowed forth, so ought we to rejoice in it as the speaking witness of our reliance beyond the grave. May this hope of the living have been the anchor to the soul of our departed brother—the token to admit him to that peaceful haven “where the wicked cease from troubling and the weary are at rest.”

*Response.* Amen and Amen!

*The Prelate then casts the cross into the grave and continues:*

*Prelate.* The Orders of Christian Knighthood were instituted in a dark period of the world's history, but their mission was high and holy. To succor and protect the sorrowing and destitute, the innocent and oppressed, was their vow and their life-long labor and duty. For long, long years they well and nobly performed their vows and did their devoirs. In those rude ages the steel blade was oftener the arbiter of justice than the judgments of judicial tribunals or the decrees of magistrates. So long as the Templars adhered to their vows of poverty they were virtuous and innocent, and their language was in truth, “Silver and gold have I none, but such as I have, give I

unto thee." But, with the accession of wealth and civil power, they were tempted, and fell from their high estate, and their possessions attracted the cupidity and their prowess incurred the hatred of the despots of those times. When the martyred De Molay had perished and the Order was proscribed, they united with the fraternity of Free and Accepted Masons, and returned to their primitive simplicity of manners; and a rough habit, coarse diet, and severe duty was all that was offered to their votaries.

In our land we have perpetuated only the distinctive rites, with the appellations and regulations of the defenders of the Holy Sepulcher—the early champions and soldiers of the cross—and this is a guerdon of merit, not a badge of rank. The sword in our hands is more as a symbol of the duties we have vowed to fulfill than an instrument of assault or defense. We claim to exercise practical virtues in the holy bonds of our confraternity, in humble imitation of those renowned knights of the olden time; for there is still in this refined age, innocence to be guarded, widowed hearts to be relieved of their burdens, and orphanage to be protected from the chill blasts of a wintry world; and to be true and courteous is not limited to any age or clime.

Our brother, whose cold and lifeless remains have just been committed to the earth, was one of our fraternal band, bound by the same ties and pledged to the same duties. To his bereaved and mourning friends and relatives we have but little worldly consolation to offer, but we do tender them our heart-

felt sympathies. And if the solemn and interesting ceremonies in which we have been engaged have not pointed them to a higher hope and a better consolation, then all our condolence would be in vain.

Sir Knight companions, let us pray.

*Here all repeat the Lord's prayer.*

A dirge may be played by the band or a solemn hymn be sung as the grave is being filled, and the commandery stands at *rest on, swords*.

Lines are re-formed; the commandery escorts the family of deceased at least a part of the way to its home, and then returns to the Asylum.

#### **Left Reverse Swords.**

Swords may be carried at *reverse* under the left arm as a relief. Being at a *carry* or *reverse*: 1. *Left reverse*.

2. **SWORDS.** Bring sword to first motion of *reverse*.

**Second motion.** Extend left arm straight to front, parallel with right arm; carry sword to left and transfer it to left hand; drop right hand to side. **Third motion** Execute reverse swords at left side, as explained for right (or "reverse swords").

## Service for Public Worship.



THE Sir Knights are in full uniform [except that the swords are detached and left at the Asylum; the lower ends of the chains are hooked together.] If swords are worn they are not drawn. Prelate is in robes. At the church door, *uncover*, enter to a solemn march, and be seated by signal.

After appropriate music, *all rise*.

PRELATE—I was glad when they said unto me, Let us go into the house of the Lord. [Psa. 122: 1.]

KNIGHTS—Our feet shall stand within thy gates, O Jerusalem, [Psa. 122: 2.]

PRELATE—The Lord is in his Holy Temple. [Psa. 11: 4.]

KNIGHTS—Let all the earth keep silence before Him. [Hab. 2: 20.]

PRELATE—Seek ye the Lord while he may be found. [Isa. 55: 6.]

KNIGHTS—Call ye upon him while he is near.

PRELATE—He will not always chide. [Psa. 103: 9.]

KNIGHTS—Neither will he keep his anger forever. [Psa. 103: 9.]

PRELATE—Blessing, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and honor, and power, and might, be unto our God. [Rev. 7: 12.]

KNIGHTS—Forever and ever.

*All sit down.*

**PRELATE**—It is a good thing to give thanks unto the Lord and to tell of his loving kindness. We have assembled in the House of the Lord to praise and give thanks unto him and to implore him for renewed strength and courage, that we may successfully war a good warfare in our pilgrimage of life. Let us humbly confess our sins, knowing that he is just, and willing to forgive all our transgressions; and let us implore his aid with an humble, contrite spirit, that we may obtain mercy and find grace to help us in every time of need. Let us pray.

*All kneel, facing the Prelate, if practicable.*

**PRELATE**—Grand Architect and Supreme Ruler of the Universe, accept our humble praises for the many mercies and blessing which thy bounty has conferred upon us, and especially for this friendly intercourse with our brethren. Pardon, we beseech thee, whatever thine eye of infinite purity has seen amiss in us, and help us to exercise that brotherly love that will enable us to dwell together in unity, and that will link us together in an indissoluble chain of sincere affection. Grant us strength of purpose that shall enable us to put due restraint upon all our affections and passions; and courage to undergo any pain, peril or danger, in adherence to the truth, and the practice of every virtue.

**KNIGHTS**—Amen.

**PRELATE**—Endue us with a competency of divine wisdom, whilst traveling on our pilgrimage; shield us from the power of the temptations that beset our pathway, and may we grow in grace and in the knowledge of the truth. Forgive our sins, we most humbly beseech thee; for thine is the power, and thine shall be the glory forever. Amen.

**KNIGHTS**—Amen.

*All rise and stand.*

**PRELATE**—O come, let us sing unto the Lord. [Psa. 95: 1.]

**KNIGHTS**—Let us make a joyful noise to the Rock of our salvation.

PRELATE—Let us come before his presence with thanksgiving. [Psa. 95: 2.]

KNIGHTS—And make a joyful noise unto him with Psalms.

*The choir sings—Te Deum laudamus.*

We praise thee, O God; we acknowledge thee, etc.

*All sit down. Prelate reads the first Psalm.*

Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, etc.; and John 15: 1—17.

*After which all rise.*

PRELATE—Blessed are the poor in spirit. [Mat. 5: 3.]

KNIGHTS—For they shall see God.

PRELATE—Blessed are they that mourn.

KNIGHTS—For they shall be comforted.

PRELATE—Blessed are the meek.

KNIGHTS—For they shall inherit the earth.

PRELATE—Blessed are they that do hunger and thirst after righteousness.

KNIGHTS—For they shall be filled.

PRELATE—Blessed are the merciful.

KNIGHTS—For they shall obtain mercy.

PRELATE—Blessed are the pure in heart.

KNIGHTS—For they shall see God.

PRELATE—Blessed are the peacemakers.

KNIGHTS—For they shall be called the children of God.

PRELATE—Blessed are they which are persecuted for righteousness sake.

KNIGHTS—For theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

Then the choir sings Psalm 24: "The earth is the Lord's and the fullness thereof," etc., or an appropriate hymn.

*All sit down.*

Prelate reads Psalms 133, 134.

*All rise and the choir sings the Gloria Patri.*

Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost:

As it was in the beginning, is now, and ever shall be, world without end. Amen.

*All sit down.*

Prelate reads Matt. 27: 24-38; Matt. 28: 1-8; Luke 24: 50-53.

*All rise.*

**PRELATE**—And God spake all these words, saying: I am the Lord thy God . . . Thou shalt have no other gods before me. [Ex. 20: 3.]

**KNIGHTS**—Lord have mercy upon us and incline our hearts to keep this law.

**PRELATE**—Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth. Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me; and shewing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.

**KNIGHTS**—Lord have mercy upon us and incline our hearts to keep this law.

**PRELATE**—Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

**KNIGHTS**—Lord have mercy upon us and incline our hearts to keep this law.

**PRELATE**—Remember the Sabbath day to keep it holy. Six days shalt thou labor and do all thy work; but the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God: in it thou shalt not do any work; thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattie, nor the stranger that is within thy gates; for in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day: wherefore the Lord blessed the Sabbath day and hallowed it.

KNIGHTS—Lord have mercy upon us and incline our hearts to keep this law.

PRELATE—Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

KNIGHTS—Lord have mercy upon us and incline our hearts to keep this law.

PRELATE—Thou shalt not kill.

KNIGHTS—Lord have mercy upon us and incline our hearts to keep this law.

PRELATE—Thou shalt not commit adultery.

KNIGHTS—Lord have mercy upon us and incline our hearts to keep this law.

PRELATE—Thou shalt not steal.

KNIGHTS—Lord have mercy upon us and incline our hearts to keep this law.

PRELATE—Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.

KNIGHTS—Lord have mercy upon us and incline our hearts to keep this law.

PRELATE—Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house; thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's.

KNIGHTS—Lord have mercy upon us and write all these laws in our hearts, we beseech thee.

PRELATE—Let us pray.

*All kneel.*

Prelate repeats the LORD'S PRAYER, all uniting with him.

*All rise and sit down.*

PRELATE—He that hath pity upon the poor lendeth unto the Lord; and that which he hath given will he pay him again. [Prov. 19: 17.]

COMMANDER—Sir Knights Wardens and Warder, collect the fund for fraternal assistance.

During collection organ plays softly. An appropriate hymn is sung; then follows the sermon or address; after which rise and sing

THE DOXOLOGY.\*

Praise God from whom all blessings flow,  
Praise him all creatures here below,  
Praise him above ye heavenly host,  
Praise Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.

BENEDICTION.

After it is pronounced, all standing with bowed heads, so remain for 4-6o of a minute: it will not shorten life or cool off the dinner; besides, it is becoming *etiquet*. Wait for orders and march out to soft and solemn music (uncovered).

---

\*This is not intended as an accompaniment for adjusting the street toilet, but is, as the words indicate, a part of the service.

## Dedicating and Consecrating Asylums.



N these services the furniture of the Asylum and delta is arranged with exactness, but there is neither light nor wine upon the delta. All are seated; officers in their stations; architect and committee in the west.

If Grand Officers are to perform the ceremony they enter and are received with the honors due them. The Commander commands *carry, SWORDS; return, SWORDS;* seats the Knights, and vacates his station to the Grand Officer, but assists him in his duties.

COMMANDER—Rt. Eminent Gr. Commander: The Sir Knights of —Commandery, animated by a zeal for our order, and I trust a most profound veneration for the truths taught thereby, have [erected and] furnished this Asylum, and are now desirous, if it shall meet with your approval, that it be dedicated and consecrated to the solemn rites of our order of Christian Knighthood.

CHAIRMAN OF COMMITTEE ON BUILDING [OR FURNISHING; OR ARCHITECT]—Rt. E.: Gr. Commander: Having, with my co-laborers superintended the completion of this Asylum and its suite, to the best of our ability, we beg leave to surrender the work, humbly trusting that it will merit your approbation and the approval of our fraters.

GR. COMMANDER—Sir Knights: The skill and fidelity displayed in the execution of the trust confided you merits and receives our entire approbation. We sincerely trust that this Asylum may continue a lasting monument to the taste and spirit of liberality of your Commandery.

It has been the custom to dedicate our Commanderies to St.

**John the Almoner**—not with that superstitious awe in which the heathen set apart their temples for the worship of imaginary deities; nor that higher and more solemn sense in which Christians consecrate their churches to the worship of Almighty God, but we do it simply to testify our veneration for the character of those who have been so eminent in our order, that their examples may stimulate us to imitate their exalted virtues.

Let us approach the delta that we may conform to the request of our fraters and the customs of our order.

They form about the delta, two or more yards from it, as follows: Grand Commander at the apex; Commander at the base near the south-west angle; Prelate at the base near the north-west angle; Generalissimo, bearing a vessel of oil, on the right, and the Capt. General, bearing a vessel of wine, on the left of the Gr. Commander; the Sen. Warden, bearing a vessel of corn [barley], near the Commander.

**GR. COMMANDER**—Rev. Prelate, lead us in our devotions.

**COMMANDER**—*Commandry, ATTENTION. Commandery, KNEEL. Deposit, CHAPEAUX.*

**PRELATE**—Almighty and ever glorious Lord God, Creator of all things, Governor of every thing that thou hast made; look in mercy upon thy servants who are now bowed before thee, and graciously accept this service at our hands. May those who are appointed to rule in this Asylum be under thy special guidance and protection, and may they faithfully observe and fulfill all their obligations to thee and this Commandery, and may all its members be of one heart and one mind to honor, obey and love thee and to love one another. Grant, we beseech thee, that all the work of our order, that may be done in this Asylum, be such as thou wilt approve and thy goodness prosper. Bless our fraters, we pray thee, whithersoever dispersed, and finally admit us to the Grand Asylum above, prepared for all the faithful followers of the Lamb. Amen.

*All respond—Amen.*

COMMANDER—*Recover, CHAPEAUX. Commandery, RISE.*  
The Senior Warden presents the vessel of corn to the Gr. Commander, who pours it upon the delta.

COMMANDER—*Commandery, UN-COVER.*

GR. COMMANDER—In the name of the Supreme Grand Commander and Architect of the Universe, I dedicate this Asylum to Saint John the Almoner, in commemoration of his virtues, that we may learn to imitate them.

A few bars of joyous music; which diminishes in volume and tone to the softest, and the Captain General presents the vessel of wine.

GR. COMMANDER—[Filling the goblet near the apex.] In the name of the Supreme Grand Commander and Architect of the Universe, let us consecrate this Asylum to universal benevolence.

COMMANDER—[Taking the vessel and filling the goblet near the S. W. angle.] We consecrate this Asylum to universal benevolence.

PRELATE—[Taking the vessel and filling the goblet at the N. W. angle.] We dedicate this Asylum to St. John the Almoner, and consecrate it to universal benevolence. May the Lord the Righteous Judge fill our hearts with love to each other and charity to all mankind.

Each officer in turn, according to rank, takes the vessel and fills a goblet, repeating the words of the commander. When the last is filled the organ increases, in volume, its tone, and an appropriate verse may be sung; then the music is soft and low, and the Generalissimo hands the Gr. Commander the small vessel of oil.

GENERALISSIMO—R. E. Gr. Commander, I present you with the oil of joy and gladness.

GR. COMMANDER—[With his finger moistened with the oil anoints each taper, saying] May the all bounteous Author of Nature bless the members of this commandery, and may gladness fill the hearts of all who kneel at its symbol of Deity.

**PRELATE**—**M**ay the truths of the Blessed Saviour be impressively taught in this Asylum, and may the Lord lift upon it the light of His countenance.

**GR. COMMANDER**—[Lighting three tapers at the apex.] **Amen**; may the light of truth illumine our minds and hearts that we may walk in the light, as He is in the light.

**GR. COMMANDER**—[Lighting three tapers at his apex.] **Amen**. Joy and gladness, and everlasting light.

**PRELATE**—[Lighting three tapers at the N. W. angle.] Remember, Sir Knights, that pure religion and undefiled, before God and the Father, is this: to visit the fatherless and widows in their affliction, and keep yourselves unspotted from the world. May the light and blessing of Immanuel rest upon and remain with you.

**GENERALISSIMO**—[Lighting a taper nearest to him]. Immanuel.

**ALL RESPOND**—God with us.

**SENIOR WARDEN**—[Lighting a taper.] The light of joy in this Asylum of love.

**STANDARD BEARER**—[Lighting a taper.] May the brilliant rays of the sun upon our banners, encourage all true and courteous Knights, like the oil of joy in the sacred precincts of our Asylum.

*Music ceases.*

**COMMANDER**—*Commandery, KNEEL.*

**PRELATE**—O Lord God, blessed Immanuel, there is no God like unto thee, in heaven above, or in the earth beneath. Behold the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain thee, but let thy spirit shine into our hearts. Harken unto the supplication of thy servants, and forgive their transgressions.

**RESPONSE**—Hear us, O Lord.

**PRELATE**—Bless this Asylum, we pray thee, and incline the hearts of those who assemble herein from time to time to walk in thy ways and keep thy commandments. Glory to

God in the highest, on earth peace, good will toward men.  
Amen.

RESPONSE—Amen.

COMMANDER—*Commandery rise.*

GR. COMMANDER—The blessings of the Lord God be with you and abound.

COMMANDER—*Commandery, RE-COVER. Sir Knights,  
BE SEATED.*

*Te Deum Laudamus*, or other music, appropriate.

## Consecration of Banners.



**W**HEN a banner has been formally presented the commander thus (or suitably) addresses the Prelate:

COMMANDER—Reverend Sir: This elegant banner has been presented [or prepared] by the fair hands of beautiful woman [or a committee appointed for that purpose] for the use of — Commandery No. —, and we courteously request that it may now be solemnly consecrated, according to the customs of Christian Knights, that we may henceforth display and defend it as the banner of our commandery.

PRELATE—Eminent Sir and beloved brethren: the Roman

eagle gave place to the cross upon the standard of Constantine, and Knights Templars have preserved that simple emblem, around which cluster the most important events of the world's history. To lose a standard in battle is to this day esteemed a disaster little short of defeat itself; therefore valiant soldiers defend their ensign with their lives. To you, Sir Knights, the banner of our order has greater value and more holy significance. Those who march at its graceful beckoning are under the most solemn engagements to be true to the innocent, the destitute and the helpless; true to their brethren and the religion of the immaculate Jesus; the symbol of whose cruel death, which was but the forerunner of his triumphant resurrection, is ever borne upon the summit of our standards.

Let us reverently attend to instructive lessons from the Holy Scriptures.

*All rise, and if not already so, uncover; swords are in the scabbards.*

PRELATE—So shall they fear the name of the Lord from the west, and his glory from the rising sun; when the enemy shall come in like a flood, the spirit of the Lord shall lift up a standard against him. [Isa. 59: 19.]

KNIGHTS—Forgive our sins, and give unto us thy Holy Spirit.

PRELATE—And the Redeemer shall come to Zion, and unto them that turn from transgression . . . saith the Lord. [Isa. 59: 20.]

KNIGHTS—Forgive our transgressions, O Lord.

PRELATE—Thou hast given a banner to them that fear thee, that it may be displayed because of the truth. [Ps. 60: 4.]

KNIGHTS—Teach me thy way, O Lord, I will walk in thy truth. [Ps. 84. 11.]

PRELATE—He brought me to the banqueting house, and the banner over me was love. [Cant. 2: 4.]

KNIGHTS—Help us, O Lord, to love thee with all our soul and our neighbor as ourselves.

PRELATE—We will rejoice in thy salvation, and in the name of our God will we set up our banners. [Ps. 20: 5.]

KNIGHTS—We will remember the name of the Lord. [Ps. 20: 7.] His salvation is near unto them that fear him. [Ps. 85: 9.]

PRELATE—Blessing, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and honor, and power, and might be unto our God. [Rev. 7: 12.]

KNIGHTS—Forever and ever. [Rev. 7. 12.]

PRELATE—It is a good thing to give thanks unto the Lord and to tell of his loving kindness. He is a refuge and fortress to those who trust in him. Let our prayers come before him that he may incline his ear unto our cry.

*All kneel.*

PRELATE—Almighty and adorable Lord God, grant, we beseech thee, that those who gather beneath the folds of this banner may be valiant soldiers of the cross and faithful followers of the immaculate Jesus—from henceforth living godly, righteous and sober lives. Our Father who art in heaven, etc., [all join in the Lord's Prayer.] Amen.

KNIGHTS—Amen.

*All rise and stand up.*

PRELATE—Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountains; set ye up a standard in the land. [Isa. 13: 2.]

KNIGHTS—Our help is in the name of the Lord. [Ps. 142: 8.]

PRELATE—Thou art beautiful, O my love, as Terzah, comely as Jerusalem, terrible as an army with banners. [Cant. 6: 4.]

KNIGHTS—The Lord is a great God and a great King above all gods. [Ps. 95: 3.]

PRELATE—Trust in the Lord and do good. So shalt thou

**dwell in the land, and verily thou shalt be fed.** [Ps. 37: 3.]

**KNIGHTS—O Lord; my God, in thee do I put my trust.**  
[Ps. 7: 1.]

**PRELATE—**Sir Knights, having faith in your professions of love to God, in your courage and constancy [taking hold of the staff] I solemnly consecrate this banner placing his hand upon it] to the service of the valiant and magnanimous order of the Temple, to be borne in the defense of the innocent, the helpless and the Christian religion. In the name of the Father [touching the tassel or fringe at the right, below] and of the Son, [touching the tassel at the left] and of the Holy Ghost [touching the center tassel or fringe]. May the Lord bless and preserve all who rally to the defense of this banner, and may it never be unfurled except in the cause of truth, justice and rational liberty. Amen.

**KNIGHTS—Amen.**

Here follows suitable music, during which a pot of incense is lighted before the standard. The Knights sit down and the Prelate reads Ephesians 6, beginning at the tenth verse, after which a suitable hymn is sung: "Soldier of Christ arise," followed by the

**DOXOLOGY.**

"Praise God from whom all blessings flow," etc.

**BENEDICTION.**



## Mannal of the Knights of the Red Cross.



HE order of Knights of the Red Cross is founded upon incidents connected with the building of the second Temple, said to have taken place during the reign of Darius I., son of Hystaspis\* King of Persia, B. C. 521, and is more intimately connected with Ancient Freemasonry than either the order of Knight Templar or Knight of Malta.

### Plat of Council Chambers.

1. The Audience Chamber of Darius, called the "Hall-of-the-East," represents an assemblage of Princes and Rulers which was held at Babylon. It should be furnished in oriental splendor, red drapery and the blazing sun of Persia behind the Sovereign Master.

2. A Council of Royal Arch Masons, held at Jerusalem, assembled in the "Hall-of-the-West." It should be draped with green hangings where the M. E. H. P. presides as Seraiah, supported on either side by a priest. In the center of the hall is an altar, upon which are two swords crossed, the Holy Bible, square and compasses. The companions are seated on the right and left of the dais in front. The Master of Infantry, etc., in the west.

3. A Banqueting Hall, appropriately fitted up for convenient uses.

4. A hall, or passage, representing a mountainous road adorned with natural scenery and a bridge, appropriately guarded.

\* By many affirmed to be the Ahasuerus who discarded Vashti and took Esther to wife, Darius being titular, like Pharaoh,

## OFFICERS.

## Their Costumes,\* Stations, and Duties.



1. SOVEREIGN MASTER [the Eminent Commander] as Darius. *Costume*—Royal scarlet or purple robes, Persian crown and golden scepter. *Station*—On the throne in the East. *Duties*—To preside over his council; to confer the order of Red Cross Knight on those whom his council may approve; to preserve inviolable the rules and regulations of the order; to dispense justice, reward merit, inculcate the almighty force and importance of truth, and diffuse the sublime principles of universal benevolence.

2. CHANCELLOR [Generalissimo]. *Costume*—Yellow and green robe and turban; a broad purple girdle around the waist; Persian sun on the breast. *Station*—On the right of the Sovereign Master. *Duties*—To assist the Sovereign Master in his duties, and in his absence to preside.

3. MASTER OF THE PALACE [Captain General]. *Costume*—Green robes and turban; broad red sash about the waist; sun on the breast; armed with a sword. *Station*—On the left of the Sovereign Master. *Duties*—To see that the officers make due preparation for the meeting of the council; that the council chamber is in suitable array for the introduction of candidates and dispatch of business; to execute the orders of the Sovereign Master; and in his absence and that of the Chancellor, to preside.

4. HIGH PRIEST [Prelate]. *Costume*—Full robes as in a R. A. Chapter, except that when in the Hall-of-the-East those things which are peculiarly Jewish (breast-plate, etc.) are left off. *Station*—On the right of the Chancellor. *Duties*—To preside as High Priest in the Council of Deliberation; to minister at the altar and offer up prayers and oblations to Deity.

---

\* There is no costume, other than the uniform, q. v. prescribed for any save the H. P.; but "the eternal fitness of things" seems to demand harmony in the style of the dress of the three principal officers, and that it should be appropriate to the characters assumed.

5. MASTER OF CAVALRY [Senior Warden]. *Costume*—Uniform as prescribed, viz.: "The Templar baldric reversed, exhibiting the green side; Templar cap covered [with black oil-cloth]; sword and white gloves." *Station*—On the left and in front of the Master of the Palace; on the right or in front of the first division (or cavalry), when separately formed, and on the right of the council when in line. *Duties*—To command the first division and form and conduct the escorts for the Sovereign Master and Most Excellent High Priest, when so directed.

6. MASTER OF INFANTRY [Junior Warden]. *Costume*—The same as the M. C. *Station*—On the right and in front of the Chancellor; on the left or in front of the second division (or infantry) when separately formed, and on the left of the council when in line. *Duties*—To command the second division; to prepare candidates and attend them on their journeys.

7. MASTER OF FINANCES [Treasurer]. *Station*—At the right of the M. E. High Priest. *Duties*—To receive in charge the funds and property of the council; pay orders on the treasury, and, when required, render a faithful account of receipts and disbursements.

8. MASTER OF DISPATCHES [Recorder]. *Station*—At the left of the Master of the Palace. *Duties*—Faithfully to record the proceedings of the council; collect the revenues and promptly pay them over to the Master of Finances.

9. STANDARD BEARER. *Station*—In the West. *Duties*—To display, support and protect the banners of the order.

10. SWORD BEARER. *Station*—On the right of the Standard Bearer. *Duties*—To assist in protecting the banners of the order.

11. WARDER. *Station*—On the left of the Standard Bearer. *Duties*—To announce the approach of the Sovereign Master and Sir Knights; sound the trumpet; post the sentinels and see that the council chamber is duly guarded.

**THE SENTINEL\*** is at the door, outside. He gives the alarm at the approach of the Sovereign Master and Sir Knights, and guards the avenues to the council chamber.

**THE GUARDS\*** are stationed at the several passes.

**OFFICERS.** If armed with swords, keep them drawn, being on duty at their stations [posts]. With the exception of the first four, they wear the prescribed uniform and jewel of the corresponding office in the Asylum.

**SIR KNIGHTS**—Wear the prescribed uniform, (see costume of Master of Cavalry) and carry their swords in the scabbard, except when ordered into line,—being temporarily at "rest," they figuratively "stack arms" ready for instant call to duty. *In the Hall-of-the-West* the uniform seems out of place. Loose ash colored robes worn over it, with turbans of the same color, would be appropriate. There the Sir Knights represent scribes and priests in a Jewish council. In the Hall-of-the-East they are Princes and Rulers at a royal court. They should be *in position* on the entrance or departure of the candidate, and never leave him in the council chamber.

---

\* The sentinel and guards are indispensable "officers" of a commandery, being referred to in the ritual, although not mentioned in the Const. Gr. Encamp. "Gr. Captain of the Guard" is a recognized officer of the grand bodies only, but it would be difficult to explain how he is "captain." His duties are *de facto*, if not *de jure*, those of a sentinel.



## OPENING.



If the Sovereign Master is to be received with ceremony, he directs the Master of the Palace to "prepare the council chamber for our\* reception," and with his suite, the Chancellor and High Priest, awaits the escort in his apartments.

**MASTER OF THE PALACE**—Sir Knight War-  
der, *Sound the assembly.* [Signal 2, p. 259.]

At the trumpet signal the Knights enter and all preserve silence.

**M. P.**—Officers, take your stations; Sir Knights, be seated [done]. Sir Knight Master of Cavalry, satisfy yourself that all present are Knights of the Red Cross.

## The Escort.

**M. P.**—Sir Knight Master of Cavalry, with a detail of six, repair to the apartment of the S. M., inform him that the council chamber is prepared for his reception, and await his pleasure (see page 279). \* \* \* \*

## Prayer at Opening.†

**S. M.**—Sir Knight Master of the Palace: Form lines for rehearsal.

[If the room be small, a detachment is formed regularly; the others stand in their places and execute appropriate mo-

---

\*The S. M., as the embodiment of supreme authority and the voice of his subjects, uses the plural form of the personal pronoun. Not so the E. C.

† Swords are never presented during prayer. That is an honor paid to earthly dignitaries, symbolically expressing honor, etc. In addressing Deity swords should be sheathed, or at least the points should be reversed, in token of their utter insignificance and impotency. Uncover in token of supreme homage, and bow the head or bend the knee in humility. It seems most appropriate to stand during prayer in the council, reserving for the Christian orders the attitude of greater devotion.

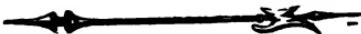
tions, at the proper times, such as *rest on swords*, during prayer, etc.] \* \* \* \*

S. M.—Most Excellent High Priest, lead us in our devotions.

H. P.—Almighty and Eternal Jehovah, the only living and true God, whose throne is in the heavens, yet who regardest alike the princes and the people that dwell upon the earth, we desire to thank thee for the many mercies and blessings with which thou hast been pleased to crown our lives. We thank thee for this social and fraternal intercourse with our companions. Be mercifully near unto us at all times and give to us the aid of thy Holy Spirit to guide us into all truth. Grant unto us thy grace, to cheer and strengthen us in our journey through an enemy's land, and deliverance from the snares and pitfalls of the evil one. Incline our hearts to seek thy favor and protection as our rightful sovereign, that we may not be impeded in the great work of erecting a spiritual edifice that shall endure forever. Pardon all our sins, we pray thee, and finally admit us into the presence of the King of kings, as members of his eternal household in the paradise of God. Amen. [All respond.] Amen.

S. M. after a slight pause—

\* \* \* \* \*



#### CLOSING.

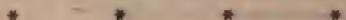
The ceremony of closing is similar to the opening, but without escort.

**WORK.**

S. M.—Sir Knights, there is in waiting companion —, a Royal Arch Mason, who has been elected to receive the illustrious order of Red Cross. If there is no objection, a council representing R. A. M. will assemble in the Hall-of-the-West, where the M. E. H. P. will preside as Seraiah, and we will proceed to confer this illustrious order upon him. Sir Knight Master of the Palace, let the lines be formed to escort our M. E. H. P. to the Hall-of-the-West. (See p. 280)

**History.**

A Grand Council of R. A. M. convened at Jerusalem, in the second year of Darius, king of Persia, to deliberate on the unhappy condition of their country, and to devise means whereby they might secure the favor and protection of the new sovereign, and obtain his consent to proceed in re-building their city and temple.

**Scriptural Account.**

Now in the second year of their coming unto the House of God at Jerusalem, in the second month, began Zerubbabel, the son of Shealtiel, and Jeshua, the son of Jozadak, and the remnant of their brethren, the priests and Levites, and all they that were come out of the captivity unto Jerusalem; and appointed the Levites, from twenty years old and upward, to set forward the work of the house of the Lord. Then stood Jeshua, with his sons and his brethren, Kadmiel, and

his sons, the sons, of Judah, together, to set forward the workmen in the house of God; the sons of Henedad, with their sons and brethren the Levites. And when the builders laid the foundation of the temple of the Lord, they set the priests in their apparel with trumpets, and the Levites, the sons of Asaph, with cymbals to praise the Lord, after the ordinance of David, king of Israel. And they sung together by course, in praising and giving thanks unto the Lord, because he is good, for his mercy endureth forever toward Israel. And all the people shouted with a great shout when they praised the Lord, because the foundation of the house of the Lord was laid. [Ezra 3: 8-11.]

Now when the adversaries of Judah and Benjamin heard that the children of the captivity builded the temple unto the Lord God of Israel, then they came to Zerubbabel, and to the chief of the fathers, and said unto them, Let us build with you; for we seek your God as ye do; and we do sacrifice unto him, since the days of Esarhaddon, king of Assur, which brought us up hither. But Zerubbabel and Jeshua, and the rest of the chiefs of the fathers of Israel, said unto them, ye have nothing to do with us to build an house unto our God; but we ourselves together will build unto the Lord God of Israel, as king Cyrus, the king of Persia, hath commanded us. Then the people of the land weakened the hands of the people of Judah, and troubled them in building, and hired counsellors against them, to frustrate their purpose, all the days of Cyrus, king of Persia, even until the reign of Darius, king of Persia. And in the reign of Ahasuerus, in the beginning of his reign, wrote they unto him an accusation against the inhabitants of Judah and Jerusalem. And in the days of Artaxerxes wrote Bishlam, Mithredath, Tabeel, and the rest of their companions, unto Artaxerxes, king of Persia; and the writing of the letter was written in the Syrian tongue, and interpreted in the Syrian tongue: Rehum, the chancellor, and Shimshai, the scribe, wrote

a letter against Jerusalem to Artaxerxes, the king, in this sort: This is the copy of the letter that they sent unto him, even unto Artaxerxes, the king:—Thy servants, the men on this side the river, and at such a time. Be it known unto the king that the Jews, which came up from thee to us, are come into Jerusalem, building the rebellious and the bad city, and have set up the walls thereof, and joined the foundations. Be it known now unto the king that if this city be builded, and the walls set up again, then will they not pay toll, tribute and custom, and so thou shalt endamage the revenue of the kings. Now because we have maintained from the king's palace, and it was not meet for us to see the king's dishonor, therefore have we sent and certified the king, that search may be made in the book of the records of thy fathers: so that thou find in the book of the records, and know that this city is a rebellious city, and hurtful unto kings and provinces, and that they have moved sedition within the same of old time; for which cause was this city destroyed. We certify the king, that if this city be builded again, and the walls thereof set up, by this means thou shalt have no portion on this side the river. Then sent the king an answer unto Rehum, the chancellor, and to Shimshai, the scribe, and to the rest of their companies that dwell in Samaria, and unto the rest beyond the river, Peace, and at such a time. The letter which ye sent us hath been plainly read before me. And I commanded, and search hath been made, and it is found that this city of old time hath made insurrection against kings, and that rebellion and sedition have been made therein. There have been mighty kings also over Jerusalem, which have ruled over all countries beyond the river, and toll, tribute and custom was paid unto them. Give ye now commandment to cause these men to cease, and that this city be no' builded until another commandment be given from me. Take heed how that ye fail not to do this: why should damage grow to the hurt of kings? Now, when the

copy of king Artaxerxes' letter was read before Rehum, and Shimshai, the scribe, and their companions, they went up in haste to Jerusalem, unto the Jews, and made them to cease by force and power. Then ceased the work of the house of God, which is at Jerusalem. So it ceased unto the second year of the reign of Darius, king of Persia. [Ezra. 4.]

**Traditional History—Continued.**

Thus they made false accusations against the Jews. They hired counsel, and by force and power made the great work to cease. \* \* \* \*

Darius the king having ascended the throne of Persia, new hopes were inspired of favor and protection in the great and glorious work of rebuilding their city and temple, in which they were permitted to engage by Cyrus their late sovereign, and in which they had so long and often been impeded by their adversaries on this side of the river [Euphrates]. Darius, when in private life, made a vow to God that, if he should ever ascend the throne of Persia, he would rebuild the city and temple and send all the holy vessels remaining at Babylon back to Jerusalem. Their M. E. companion Zerubbabel, who was once honored by the favorable notice and friendship of Darius, offered his services in the hazzardous enterprise of traversing the Persian dominions and securing admission into the presence of the king, when he would seize upon the first favorable moment to remind him of his vows, and impress upon his mind the almighty force and importance of truth. From the well known piety of the king no doubt was entertained of obtaining his consent that their enemies be removed far thence, and they no longer be impeded in their great and glorious work. \* \* \*

The council with great joy accepted this noble and generous offer, and the H. P. invested Zerubbabel with passports which would enable him to make himself known to the friends of their cause wherever he might meet them, and which would



insure him their favor and protection. He was presented with a sword with which to defend himself against his enemies. \* \* \*

The H. P. also presented Zerubbabel with a green sash as a peculiar mark of their confidence and esteem; cautioning him to wear it as a memorial to stimulate him in the performance of every duty. Its color would remind him that the memory of the one who falls in a just and virtuous cause is blessed and shall forever flourish like the green bay-tree. \* \* \*

Bidding Zerubbabel farewell, with assurance that their prayers should attend him, Zerubbabel departed. \* \*

Having passed the barriers and entered the Persian dominions, he was taken captive, clothed in the garb of slavery, and put in chains. He was not overcome by these difficulties, but declared himself to be a prince of the house of Judah; first



among his equals; a Mason; free by birth, but a captive in chains by misfortune; that he was from Jerusalem, by name Zerubbabel, and demanded an audience with the sovereign.

\* \* \* \* \*

He gained admission to the presence of the king, who, although recognizing him as Zerubbabel, the friend and companion of his youth, demanded that, having gained admission



to his presence, he instantly declare the particular motives that induced him to cross the confines of his dominions by force and arms, and without permission.

Zerubbabel replied: "Thou knowest, O king, that my people were liberated by king Cyrus, your majesty's predecessor, and commanded to build Cyrus, your majesty's predecessor, which is in Jerusalem.' Our adversaries on the other side of the river have often and long interrupted us in that great and glorious work, and have now 'made it to cease by force and power.' Moved therefore by the tears and complaints of my companions at Jerusalem, I have come up to implore your majesty's favor and protection in this great work, and beg that I be granted admission among the servants of your royal household until it shall be your majesty's pleasure to give me audience in behalf of my people."

The king said he had often reflected, with much pleasure, on their intimacy and friendship; that he had heard, with great satisfaction, of his fame as a wise and accomplished ruler among the *architects* of his country; that having a profound veneration for an institution which was reputed to practice mysteries that were calculated to promote the glory of the nation, and the happiness of the people, he would

instantly restore him to his favor, upon condition that he would reveal those mysteries which so eminently distinguished the Jews from those of all other nations.

Zerubbabel replied: "When Solomon, king of Israel, presided over the fraternity of Free and Accepted Masons, he taught us that Truth was a divine attribute and the foundation of every virtue; to be good and true are the first lessons we are taught in Masonry. My engagements are sacred and inviolable; I cannot reveal the secrets. If your majesty's clemency can only be obtained by a sacrifice of my integrity, I humbly beg leave to decline the royal favor and will cheerfully submit to exile or even death."

The king declared that his virtue and integrity were truly commendable; that his fidelity to his engagements was worthy of imitation, and from that moment he was free. \* \*

Zerubbabel was highly honored; so much so that the attendants were ordered to "bring forth the royal wardrobe and clothe him in habiliments suitable to his rank, for thus shall it be done unto the man whom the king delighteth to honor."

This caused great joy at the court of Darius, and the proclamation was taken up by singers who repeated it.



Darius, in the first year of his reign, gave a magnificent entertainment to the princes and nobility.

[On occasions of masonic banquets, the following is suggested as a suitable

*Prayer of Thanksgiving.*

"Sovereign Master of the Universe, we pray thee to accept our thanks for the bountiful provision that nature, at thy command, has made for us; and for this evidence of thy loving kindness to us. Pardon our ingratitude and disobedience to thy laws, and finally grant us admission into thy celestial presence as members of thy eternal household. Amen."

All respond, Amen.]

During the entertainment, Darius fell into discussion with his favorite officers, and said: "It has been the custom among the sovereigns of our realm, on occasions like this, to give an intellectual character to the feast; to propose certain questions for discussion, and he who gave the most satisfactory answer, should be clothed in purple, drink from a golden cup, wear a silken tiara, and a golden chain about his neck.

These questions have occurred to our mind, which we will now propose for discussion. He who shall give the most satisfactory answer shall not go unrewarded.

Which is greatest: the strength of *wine*, of the *King*, or of *women*? To this the first answered, *wine* is the strongest; the second, that the *king* was strongest; and the third, (who was Zerubbabel) that *women* were stronger, but above all things, *TRUTH* beareth the victory.

The king, being struck with the addition Zerubbabel had made to his question, ordered that the princes and nobles should assemble on the following day, to hear the subject discussed.

\* \* \* \* \*

On the following day the king assembled together the princes and nobility to hear the question debated. The first began as follows, upon

**The Strength of Wine.**

"O ye princes and rulers, how exceeding strong is wine! it causeth all men to err that drink it; it maketh the mind of the king and the beggar, of the bondman and the freeman, of the poor man and of the rich, to be as one; it turneth also every thought into jollity and mirth, so that a man remembereith neither sorrow nor debt; it changeth and elevateth the spirits, and enliventh the heavy hearts of the miserable. It maketh a man to forget his brethren, and draw his sword against his best friends. O ye princes and rulers is not wine the strongest that forces us to do these things?"

Then began the second, who spoke as follows upon

**The Power of the King.**

"It is beyond dispute, O princes and rulers, that God has made man master of all things under the sun; to command them, to make use of them, and to apply them to his service as he pleases: but whereas men have only dominion over other sublunary creatures, kings have an authority even over men themselves, and a right of ruling them by will and pleasure. Now, he that is master of those who are masters of all things else, hath no earthly thing above him."

Then began Zerubbabel, upon

**The Power of Women, and of Truth.**

"O princes and rulers, the force of wine is not to be denied, neither is that of kings, that unites so many men in one common bond of allegiance, but the supremacy of *women* is yet above all this; for *kings* are but the gifts of women, and they are also the mothers of those who cultivate our *vineyards*. Women have the power to make us abandon our very country and relations, and many times to forget the best friends we have in the world, and forsaking all other comforts, to live and die with them. But when all is said, neither they nor wine, nor kings, are comparable to the

almighty force of *truth*. As for all other things, they are mortal and transient, but truth alone is unchangable and everlasting; the benefits we receive from it are subject to no variations or vicissitudes of time and fortune. In her judgment is no unrighteousness, and she is the strength, wisdom, power and majesty of all ages. Blessed be the God of Truth."

When Zerubbabel had finished speaking the princes and rulers \* \* \* cried out:

"Blessed be the God of Truth."

Then said the king: "Great is truth and mighty above all things. Zerubbabel, ask what thou wilt and we will give it thee, because thou art found wisest among thy companions."

Zerubbabel answered. "O, king, remember thy vow, which thou hast vowed, to build Jerusalem in the day when thou shouldest come to thy kingdom, and to restore the holy vessels which were taken away out of Jerusalem. Thou hast also vowed to build up the temple, which was burned when Judah was made desolate by the Chaldees. And now, O king, this is that I desire of thee, that thou make good the vow, the performance whereof, with thine own mouth, thou hast vowed to the King of heaven."

Darius stood up and said: "Zerubbabel, it shall be done. We will faithfully perform our vow. Letters and passports shall be issued to the officers throughout our realm, and they shall give both you, and those who go with you, safe conduct to Jerusalem, and you shall no longer be hindered in the great work of rebuilding your city and temple, until they shall be completed. We will also send all the holy vessels remaining at Babylon back to Jerusalem."

*End of the History.*



*The Sash* \* \* is an insignia of a new order designed to inculcate the almighty force and importance of truth. Its color will remind us that truth is a divine attribute and shall forever flourish in immortal green. \* \*

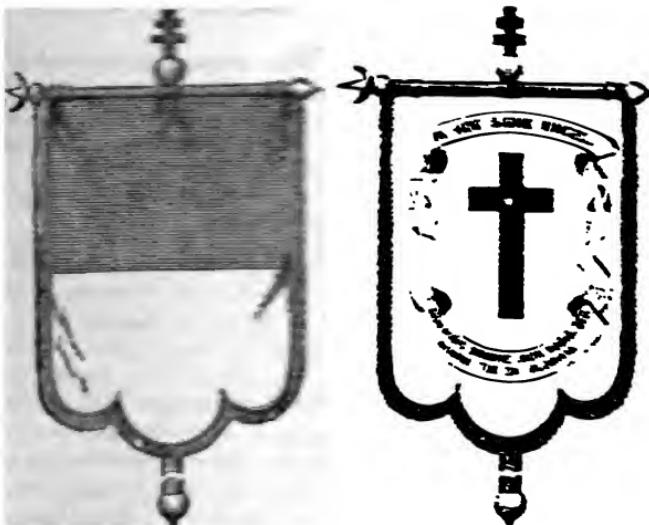
*The sword*, \* \* \* in the hands of a true and courteous Knight, is endowed with three most excellent qualities: its hilt with *Faith*; its blade with *Hope*; its point with *Charity*: which teach us that we should never draw our sword except in a just cause; having *faith* in God, we may reasonably *hope* for success; ever remembering to extend the point of *Charity* to a fallen foe.



The banner of the order is green, on which is a star having seven points, bearing a red cross surrounded with the motto of the order:

*Magna est veritas et prevalebit.*  
Great is truth and shall prevail.





## Knights Templars Working Cart.



THE gentlemen among them Hugh de Payen and Godfrey Adelmar, formed this order for the purpose of guarding and protecting pilgrims to the Holy Sepulchre.

Baldwin I., king of Jerusalem, encouraged the organization and assigned them a part of the royal palace near the site of Solomon's Temple. Or, as some state, a place of retreat in a Christ-

*In hoc, etc.*—In this sign thou conquerest, or shall conquer.

*Non nobis, etc.*—Not unto us O Lord, not unto us, but to thy name be glory.

ian church supposed to stand on the spot originally occupied by the Temple of Solomon. From this they were called *Templars*.

The order had no connection with Ancient Freemasonry, save that its rites are said to have been practiced by them. The history of the Templars is thrillingly interesting and is one of magnanimous warfare in defense of the Christian religion and protection of Christian pilgrims.

#### Plan of the Asylum Suite.

1. *The Asylum.* Its predominating colors are black, white and red. A throne is in the East, and above it a cross with the letter I. N. R. I.\* In the West is the banner of the order. The Knights are seated on the South and North, and, if necessary, in the West also. In the east end of the room a few extra seats for Past Commanders and distinguished visitors. The floor should be as roomy as possible, and in its center a triangular table covered with black velvet or cloth, its curtain reaching to the floor and terminating with a silver fringe; silver lace at edge of the table. In crowded or small rooms a detachment of the best drilled only should take part in the ceremonies, while the others remain in their places.

2. *Prelate's apartment,* (the Green-room, described in Red Cross as *Hall-of-the-West*.)

3. *A small room*, whose walls and furniture are black.
4. *A hall* or room suitable for scenic representations.
5. *An armory*, with suitable wardrobes, or individual compartments, appropriately numbered and labeled, for the uniforms.

6. *An ante-room* and library, with tables, books, papers, etc.

---

\* *Iesus Nazarenus Rex Iudeorum*—Jesus of Nazareth King of the Jews.

## OFFICERS.

## Their Jewels, Stations and Duties.



1. COMMANDER.\* *Jewel*—A Passion Cross rayed at its angles. *Station*—In the East, or at the head of his commandery. *Duties*—To assist poor and weary pilgrims traveling from afar; to feed the hungry, clothe the naked and bind up the wounds of the afflicted; to inculcate the principles of charity and hospitality; suppress profanity; preserve inviolable the laws and constitutions of the order, and govern his commandery with justice and moderation.



2. GENERALISSIMO. *Jewel*—A square surmounted by a paschal lamb. *Station*—On the right of the commander. *Duties*—To act as aid to the commander, and in his absence to preside.



3. CAPTAIN GENERAL. *Jewel*—A level surmounted by a cock. *Station*—On the left of the Eminent Commander. *Duties*—To see that the officers make due preparation for the conclaves of the commandery, and that the Asylum is in suitable array for the introduction of candidates and dispatch of business. To execute the orders of the Eminent Commander and in his absence and that of the Generalissimo, to preside.

---

\* The name of the office is COMMANDER (Const Gr Encamp.) and not "Eminent Commander." "Eminent" is his title sanctioned by law, as "Honorable" is given by courtesy to members of Congress.



4. PRELATE. *Jewel*—A triple triangle with a Passion Cross in each. The special badge of his office is a Crosier. *Station*—On the right of the Generalissimo. *Duties*—To minister at the altar and offer up prayers and oblations to Deity.

5. SENIOR WARDEN. *Jewel*—A sword of justice within a hollow square. *Station*—At the southwest angle of the triangle; on the right or in front of the first division when separately formed; or on the right of the commandery when in line. *Duties*—To attend pilgrim warriors; to comfort and support pilgrim penitents, and after due trial, to introduce them into the Asylum; to command the first division and act as right guide of the commandery.



6. JUNIOR WARDEN. *Jewel*—An eagle holding a flaming sword in his talons. *Station*—At the northwest angle of the triangle; on the left or in front of the second (or rear) division when separately formed, and on the left of the commandery when in line. *Duties*—To attend poor and weary pilgrims traveling from afar, conduct them on their journey, plead their cause and recommend them to the hospitality of the Eminent Commander; to command the second (or rear) division, and act as left guide of the commandery.

7. TREASURER. *Jewel*—Two keys crossed. *Station*—At the right and in front of the Prelate. *Duties*—To receive in charge the funds and property of the commandery; pay orders drawn on the treasury; and, when required, render a faithful account of receipts and disbursements.

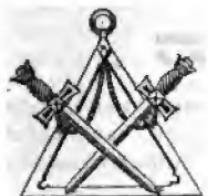


**8. RECORDER.** *Jewel*—Two quill pens crossed. *Station*—



At the left and in front of the Captain General. *Duties*—Faithfully to record the proceedings of the commandery, collect the revenue, and promptly pay it over to the treasurer.

**9. STANDARD BEARER.** *Jewel*—A plumb surmounted by a banner. *Station*—In the West; in the center of the Standard Guard or central division. [Above his station in the Asylum is suspended the grand standard of the order.] *Duties*—To display, support and protect the banner of the order. He is *in the West* (symbolically) that the brilliant rays of the rising sun, shedding luster upon our banners, may animate and encourage all valiant and magnanimous Sir Knights, and confound and dismay their enemies.



**10. SWORD BEARER.** *Jewel*—Two swords crossed within a triangle. *Station*—On the right of the Standard Bearer in the West; on the right of the Standard Guard; or on the right or in front of the central division. *Duties*—To assist in protecting the banner of our order; and command the Standard Guard or central division.



**11. WARDER.** *Jewel*—Two swords and a trumpet, crossed, upon a square plate. *Station*—On the left of the Standard Bearer in the West; on the left of the Standard Guard or central division. *Duties*—To announce the approach of the Eminent Commander and Sir Knights; to post the sentinel sound the trumpet, and see that the Asylum is duly guarded.



 12. THE SENTINEL.\* *Jewel*—A naked sword.  
*Station*—At the door, outside. *Duty*—To give due notice at the approach of the Eminent Commander and Sir Knights, and carefully guard the avenues of the Asylum.

THREE GUARDS\* are stationed at the several passes; their duties are esoteric. Their jewels are alike—a battle-axe; [but should not be on a plate—so that they, like the sentinel, may be readily distinguished from other officers.]



OPENING.



PENING with full ceremony. COMMANDER directs the Captain General to "prepare the Asylum for my† reception." [With the staff he awaits in his apartments for escort.]

C. G.—"Sir Knight Warder, sound the assembly."‡ [The ceremony is similar to that of the Red Cross opening. q. v.]

#### Prayer.

COMMANDER—"Reverend Prelate, lead us in our devotions." \* \* \*

PRELATE—"Our Father which art in heaven, hallowed be thy name, thy kingdom come, thy will be done in earth as it

\* See foot note p. 395.

† He uses the pronoun in the singular number—like a chieftain, conscious of his renown. Not so the S. M. see page 326. ‡ See Bugle Signals.

is in heaven. Give us this day our daily bread, and forgive us our debts as we forgive our debtors, and lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil: for thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory forever. Amen." *All respond Amen.*

#### CLOSING.

 COMMANDER—Sir Knight Generalissimo: have you anything to bring before this commandery of Knights Templars?

If he has he states it; if not, he replies "Nothing, Eminent Commander."

The commander addresses the same question in succession to the Captain General, Reverend Prelate, Recorder: "Any other officer" and "any Sir Knight?"

When all are through the ceremony of closing proceeds, and is similar to that of opening, including the prayer; omitting the escort and reception.

The several divisions remain at *attention* until the E. C. steps down. When the chiefs dismiss their divisions promptly by the commands:

*First (second or third) division, break ranks, MARCH;* neither officer waits for the other, but gives the command the instant the commander steps upon the floor.

#### WORK.

USIC adds materially to the solemnity and beauty of the ceremonies. It is herein noted when music may be appropriately introduced.

\* \* \* \* \*

COMMANDER—There is in waiting for the order of Knight Templar, Knight of Malta or order of St. John of Jerusalem, Sir Knight — of the illustrious order of Red Cross. If there be no objection, I will now confer upon him these valiant and magnanimous orders.



Thus far he has proceeded to the entire satisfaction of the  
Eminent Commander \* \* \* VII. \* \* \*



**First Exhortation.**

— I greet thee. \* \* \*  
Silver and gold have I  
none; but such as I have  
give I thee. \* \* \*

Hearken to a lesson to  
cheer thee on thy way, and  
assure thee of success.

And Abraham rose up  
early in the morning, and  
took bread and a bottle of

water and gave it unto Hagar (putting it on her shoulder)  
and the child, and sent her away, and she departed and wan-  
dered in the wilderness, and the water was spent in the bottle,  
and she cast the child under one of the shrubs; and the angel  
of God called to Hagar out of heaven, saying, Arise, lift up  
the lad, and hold him in thine hand; for I will make him a  
great nation: and God opened her eyes and she saw a well  
of water.

By faith Abraham sojourned in the land of promise, as in  
a strange country, dwelling in tabernacles; for he looked for  
a city which hath foundations, whose builder and maker  
is God.

Be ye therefore followers of God as dear children, rejoicing  
in the Lord always; and again I say, rejoice. Farewell—  
God speed thee. \* \* \* \*

**Second Exhortation.**

— I greet thee. \* \* \* \*

If a brother or sister be naked and destitute of daily food,  
and one of you say, Depart in peace, be ye warmed and filled,  
and ye give them not of those things which are needful for  
the body, what doth it profit? To do good and to commu-  
nicate, forget not, for with such sacrifices God is well pleased.

Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the traditions of men; after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ: For in him dwelleth all the fullness of the Godhead bodily. Farewell—God speed thee.

\*     \*     \*     \*     \*

**Third Exhortation.**

— I greet thee.     \*     \*     \*     \*

He that receiveth you receiveth me, and he that receiveth me receiveth him that sent me. Come unto me all ye that labor and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest. Take my yoke upon you and learn of me, for I am meek and lowly in heart, ye shall find rest unto your souls, for my yoke is easy and my burden is light. Whosoever shall give to drink, unto one of these little ones a cup of cold water only, in the name of a disciple, verily I say unto you he shall in no wise lose his reward.

Farewell—God speed thee on thy way.     \*     \*



A poor and weary pilgrim traveling from afar.

\*     \*     \*     \*     \*

III.     \*     \*     forthwith.     IV.     \*

\*     \*     \*     \*     \*

**Prelate's Escort.**





— Farewell —



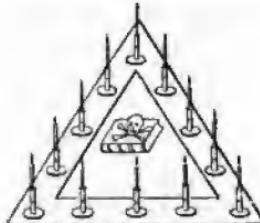
[Those who cannot in truth and soberness declare that they bear no enmity or ill-will towards a soul on earth, that they would not freely reconcile, provided they found in them a corresponding disposition, ought not to be admitted into fellowship with Knights Templars.]

[Very soft and solemn music.]



\* \* \* M. E. G. M. S. K.  
O. I. \* \* \*  
\* \* \* munificent G. M. H.  
K. O. T. \* \* \*  
\* \* \* skillful G. M. H.  
A. \* \* \*

[Music ceases.]



**The Apostacy of Judas.**

Then one of the twelve, called Judas Iscariot, went unto the chief priests, and said unto them, What will ye give me, and I will deliver him unto you? And they covenanted with him for thirty pieces of silver. And from that time he sought opportunity to betray him. Now the first day of the feast of unleavened bread, the disciples came to Jesus saying unto him, where wilt thou that we prepare for thee to eat the passover? And he said, Go into the city to such a man, and say unto him, The master saith, My time is at hand; I will keep the passover at thy house with my disciples. And the disciples did as Jesus had appointed them, and they made ready the passover. Now when the even was come, he sat down with

the twelve. And as they did eat, he said, Verily I say unto you, that one of you shall betray me. And they were exceeding sorrowful, and began every one of them to say unto him, Lord, is it I? And he answered and said, He that dippeth his hand with me in the dish, the same shall betray me. The Son of Man goeth as it is written of him; but woe unto that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It had been good for that man if he had not been born. Then Judas which betrayed him, answered and said, Master, is it I? He said unto him; Thou hast said. [Matt. 26: 15-25.]

[A few bars of soft and solemn music.]



Amid all the trials and afflictions incident to human life, a firm faith in the truths \* \* can afford \* that consolation and peace of mind which the world can neither give nor take away. \*

#### Gethsemane and the Betrayal of Christ.

Then cometh Jesus with them unto a place called Gethsemane, and saith unto the disciples, Sit ye here, while I go and pray yonder. And he took with him Peter and the two sons of Zebedee, and began to be sorrowful and very heavy. Then saith he unto them, My soul is exceeding sorrowful, even unto death; tarry ye here, and watch with me. And he went a little farther, and fell on his face, and prayed, saying, O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me; nevertheless, not as I will, but as thou wilt. And he cometh unto the disciples, and findeth them asleep, and saith unto Peter, What! could ye not watch with me one hour? Watch and pray, that ye enter not into temptation; the spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak. He went away the second time, and prayed, saying, O my Father, if this cup may not pass away from me, except I drink it, thy will be done. And he came and found them asleep again; for their eyes were heavy. And he left them, and went away again, and prayed

the third time, saying the same words. Then cometh he unto his disciples, and saith unto them, Sleep on now, and take your rest: behold the hour is at hand, and the Son of Man is betrayed into the hands of sinners. Rise, let us be going: behold, he is at hand that doth betray me. And when he spake, lo! Judas, one of the twelve, came, and with him a great multitude, with swords and staves, from the chief priests and elders of the people. Now he that betrayed him, gave them a sign, saying, Whomsoever I shall kiss, that same is he: hold him fast. And forthwith he came to Jesus and said, Hail, Master, and kissed him. [Matt. 26: 36-50.]

[Solemn music as before.]

\* \* \* \* \*

[Music ceases.]

#### The Crucifixion.



When Pilate saw that he could prevail nothing, but that rather a tumult was made, he took water and washed his hands before the multitude, saying, I am innocent of the blood of this just person; see ye to it. Then answered all the people, and said, His blood be on us, and on our children. Then released

he Barabbas unto them: and when he had scourged Jesus, he delivered him to be crucified. Then the soldiers of the governor took Jesus into the common hall, and gathered unto him the whole band of soldiers. And they stripped him, and put on him a scarlet robe. And when they had platted a crown of thorns, they put it upon his head, and a reed in his right hand; and they bowed the knee before him, and mocked him, saying, Hail, king of the Jews! And they spit upon him, and took the reed and smote him on the head. And after that they had mocked him, they took the robe off from him, and put his own raiment on him, and led him away to

crucify him. And as they came out, they found a man of Cyrene, Simon by name, him they compelled to bear his cross. And when they were come into a place called Golgotha, that is to say, a place of a skull, they gave him vinegar to drink, mingled with gall; and when he tasted thereof he would not drink. And they crucified him, and parted his garments, casting lots; that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet: They parted my garments among them, and upon my vesture did they cast lots. And sitting down, they watched him there; and set up over his head his accusation written, THIS IS JESUS THE KING OF THE JEWS. [Matt. 27: 24-37.]



[Soft music as before.]

\* IV. \* \* S. O. C.

\* \* \* \* \*

[The following is part of a poem found near a human skeleton, and a reward of fifty guineas failed to discover its author.]

Behold this ruin! 'tis a skull, once of ethereal spirit full;  
This narrow cell was life's retreat, this space was thought's mysterious seat;  
What besotious visions filled this spot, what dreams of pleasure long forgot,  
Nor joy, nor grief, nor hope, nor fear, has left one trace on record here.

Beneath this mouldering canopy once shone the bright and busy eye:  
Yet start not at the dismal void! if holy love that eye employed,  
If with no lawless fire it gleamed, but through the dews of kindness beamed,  
That eye shall be forever bright, when stars and sun are sunk in night.

Within this hollow cavern hung, the ready, swift and tuneful tongue:  
If falsehood's honey it disdained, and when it could not praise, was chained,  
If bold in virtue's cause it spoke, yet gentle concord never broke,  
That silent tongue may plead for thee, when time unveils eternity.

How striking— \* \* \* \*

\* \* \* \* \*  
Resurrection and Ascension.

Although it is appointed unto men once to die, yet, as the Scriptures inform us, the Saviour of the world arose from the dead and ascended up into heaven, there forever seated on the throne of majesty on high; so they also assure us, that all who have received him for their righteousness and put their trust in him, shall rise to life everlasting. "In the end of the Sabbath, as it began to dawn toward the first day of the week, came Mary Magdalene, and the other Mary, to see the sepulchre. And behold, there was a great earthquake: for the angel of the Lord descended from heaven, and came and rolled back the stone from the door and sat upon it. His countenance was like lightning, and his raiment white as snow: And for fear of him the keepers did shake and become as dead men. And the angel answered and said unto the women, Fear not ye: for I know that ye seek Jesus which is crucified. He is not here, for he has risen as he said. Come see



the place where the Lord lay: and go quickly and tell his disciples that he is risen from the dead; and behold, he goeth before you into Galilee: there shall ye see him: lo, I have told you. And they departed quickly from the sepulchre

with fear and great joy, and did run to bring his disciples word. As they went to tell his disciples, behold Jesus met them, saying, All hail. And they came and held him by the feet and worshipped him." "And he led them out as far as to Bethany; and he lifted up his hands and blessed them. And it came to pass while he blessed them, he was parted from them and carried up into heaven. And they worshipped him and returned to Jerusalem with great joy."

[Form in two ranks, facing inward; uncovered, and swords sheathed.

The following may be sung. Tune: *Old Hundred:* ]

He dies, the friend of sinners dies!  
Lo Salem's daughters weep around;  
A solemn darkness fills the skies,  
A sudden trembling shakes the ground.

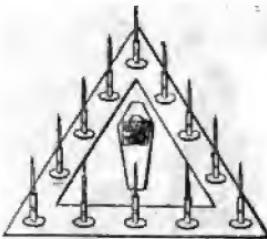


The rising God forsakes the tomb!  
Up to his Father's court he flies;  
Cherubic legions guard him home,  
And shout him welcome to the skies.

Break off your tears, ye saints, and tell  
How high our great deliv' er reigns,  
Sing how he spoil'd the hosts of hell,  
And led the monster, death, in chains.

Say live forever, wondrous king,  
Born to redeem— and strong to save,  
Then ask the tyrant, "where's thy sting?  
And where's thy vict'ry, boasting grave?"

I am the resurrection and the life; he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live; and whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die. Thus saith the Lord.



The Election of Matthias.

And in those days Peter stood up in the midst of the disciples, and said (the number of the names together were about a hundred and twenty), Men and brethren, this Scripture must needs have been fulfilled, which the Holy Ghost, by the mouth of David, spake before, concerning Judas, which was guide to them that took Jesus. For he was numbered with us, and had obtained a part of this ministry. Now this man purchased a field with the reward of iniquity; and falling headlong, he burst asunder in the midst, and all his bowels gushed out. And it was known unto all the dwellers at Jerusalem: insomuch as that field is called, in their proper tongue, Aceldama, that is to say, the field of blood. For it is written in the Book of Psalms, Let his habitation be desolate, and no man dwell therein; and his bishopric let another take. Wherefore, of these men which have companied with us all the time that the Lord Jesus went in and out among us, beginning from the baptism of John, unto that same day that he was taken up from us, must one be ordained to be a witness with us of his resurrection. And they appointed two, Joseph, called Barsabas, who was surnamed Justus, and Matthias. And they prayed and said, Thou, Lord, which knowest the hearts of all men, shew whether of these two thou hast chosen, that he may take part of this ministry and apostleship, from which Judas by transgression fell, that he might

go to his own place. And they gave forth their lots: and the lot fell upon Matthias; and he was numbered with the eleven apostles. [Acts 1: 15-26.]



By virtue \* \* \* \* \* and  
in memory of the valiant founders of the order,  
Hugh de Payens and Godfrey Adelmar \* \*  
be loyal, brave and true, and receive a hearty  
welcome into the bosom of an  
order that will be ever ready to  
defend and assist you in all your  
just and lawful undertakings. \* \*



The banner of the order of  
Knight Templar is a nine-pointed  
star on a black field; in the center of which is the Passion  
Cross, entwined into a serpent, and surrounded by the motto  
of the order: *In Hoc signo vinces.*



# Manual of the Knights of Malta.

## HISTORY.



In 1048 pious merchants of Amalfi built a church and monastery near the site of the holy sepulchre, which they dedicated to St. John the Almoner. Their duties were to assist sick and needy pilgrims. They were called Brothers of St. John, or Hospitallers; and wore a long black mantle with a white cross of eight points, on the left breast.

In the early part of the twelfth century they became a military order adding new obligations to their vows of chastity. In war they wore a scarlet surcoat embellished with the eight pointed white cross. Driven out of Palestine in 1192, they occupied Rhodes and were called Knights of Rhodes. The Emperor Charles V. bestowed the island of Malta upon them in 1530, and they have since been called Knights of Malta. Their wealth, and undaunted heroism exist but in history. Their glory has departed, and now we even attach the conference of the Knight of Malta, in the most meagre ceremony, to and as the closing of the order of Templars.

The order of Malta was formerly conferred and for a time abolished. Subsequently the Grand Encampment of the United States left it discretionary with the several jurisdictions to confer it or not. At present [in most of the jurisdictions] it is not conferred.

\* \* \* \* \*

**St. Paul at Melita.**

And when they were escaped, then they knew that the island was called Melita. And the barbarous people shewed us no little kindness; for they kindled a fire, and received us every one, because of the present rain, and because of the cold.



¶ And when Paul had gathered a bundle of sticks, and laid them on the fire, there came a viper out of the heat, and fastened on his hand. And when the barbarians saw the venomous beast hang on his hand, they said among themselves, no doubt this man is a murderer, whom, though he hath escaped the sea, yet vengeance suffereth not to live. And he shook off the beast into the fire, and felt no harm. [Acts 28: 1-5.] \* \*

**The Title on the Cross.**

And Pilate wrote a title, and put it on the cross. And the writing was, JESUS OF NAZARETH, THE KING OF THE JEWS. [John 19: 19.]

**Doubting Thomas.**

But Thomas, one of the twelve called Didymus, was not with them when Jesus came. The other disciples, therefore, said unto him, We have seen the Lord. But he said unto them, Except I shall see in his hands the prints of the nails, and put my finger into the print of the nails, and thrust my hand into his side, I will not believe. And after eight days, again his disciples were within, and Thomas with them. Then came Jesus, the doors being shut, and stood in the midst and said, Peace be unto you. Then saith he to Thomas, reach hither thy finger, and behold my hands; and reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into my side; and be not faithless, but believing. And Thomas answered, and said unto him, My Lord and my God. [John 20: 24-28.]



The banner of the order of Malta is an eleven pointed star, on a black field, in the center of which is a Maltese cross surrounded by the motto of the order *Rex Regum Dominus Dominorum*. King of Kings and Lord of Lords.

#### Conclusion.

Sir Knight:—Having passed through the several degrees and honorary distinctions of our ancient and honorable institution: in your admission to the tessellated ground floor; your ascent into the middle chamber; your entrance to the unfinished *sanctum sanctorum*: your regularly passing the several gates of the Temple; induction to the *oriental chair* witnessing the completion and dedication of that superb model of excellence, the Temple, which has immortalized the names of our ancient Grand Masters, and the justly celebrated craftsmen; having wrought in the ruins of the first Temple, and from its sacred Royal Arch brought to light incalculable treasures and advantages to the craft; having duly studied into the way and manner of their concealment; also having been engaged in the hazardous enterprise of traversing an enemy's dominions, and there convincing a foreign prince that truth is great and will prevail;—you are now admitted to a participation in those labors which are to effect the erection of a temple more glorious than the first, even that beauteous temple of holiness, whose pillars are Charity, Mercy and Justice, the foundation of which is in the breast of every one who has tasted that the Lord is gracious; to whom you come as a living stone, disallowed indeed of men, but chosen of God, and precious.

And now, Sir Knight, we bid you welcome to all these rights and privileges, even to that friendship and hospitality which has, and we trust will continue to adorn and characterize this noble order. It will henceforth become your duty and should be your desire to assist, protect and befriend the weary traveler who finds the heights of fortune inaccessible, and the thorny paths of life broken, adverse and forlorn,—to succor

the distressed and protect the innocent and the helpless, ever standing forth as a champion to espouse the cause of the Christian religion.

You are to inculcate and practice virtue. Amidst the temptations which surround you never be drawn aside from the path of duty, or forgetful of those due guards and passwords which are necessary to be held in perpetual remembrance. While one hand is wielding the sword, symbolically representing every proper means for the defense of the person and character of a companion, let the other grasp the mystic Trowel, and widely diffuse the genuine cement of Brotherly Love and Friendship.

If calumny assails the character of a brother Sir Knight, you are to step forth and vindicate his good name, and assist him on all necessary occasions. If assailants should attempt your honor, interest, or happiness, you have a right to the counsel and support of your brethren, whose mystic swords, combining the virtues of Faith, Hope and Charity, with Justice, Fortitude, and Mercy, will leap from their scabbards in defense of your just rights, and assure you a glorious triumph over all your enemies.

Permit me, Sir Knight, to remind you of our mutual engagements, our reciprocal ties. Whatever may be your situation or rank in life you will find those, in similar stations, who have dignified themselves and been useful to mankind. You are therefore called upon to discharge all your duties with fidelity and patience; whether in the field, in the senate, on the bench, at the bar, in the office, behind the counter, at the Holy Altar, in trade, or profession. Whether you are placed upon the highest pinnacle of worldly grandeur, or glide more securely in the humble vale of obscurity, unnoticed, save by a few; it matters not, for a few rolling suns will close the scene, then naught but *holiness* will serve as a pass-word to gain admission into the REST prepared from *the foundation of the world*.

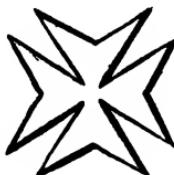
If you see a brother bending under the cross of adversity or disappointment, look not idly on; neither pass by on the other side, but fly to his relief. If he be deceived, tell him the Truth; if he be calumniated, vindicate his cause; for, although he may have erred, remember that indiscretion in him should never destroy humanity in you.

Finally, Sir Knights, as *memento mori* is deeply engraved on all sublunary enjoyments, let us ever be found in the habiliments of righteousness, traversing the straight path of virtue, rectitude and true holiness, so that having discharged our duty here below, completed the pilgrimage of life, burst the bands of mortality, passed over the Jordan of death, and safely landed on the shore of eternity, there, in the presence of myriads of attending angels, may we be greeted as brethren, and received into the extended arms of the blessed Immanuel, forever to participate in his heavenly kingdom.

**FINIS.**

You are now in possession of the attributes of the orders Knight Templar and Knight of Malta or order of St. John of Jerusalem, and as such are entitled to all the rights, benefits and privileges pertaining thereto.

I have the pleasure to present you with a copy of the by-laws of this commandery. Be seated and participate in our labors.



## Dramatic Address.

FOR PUBLIC WORSHIP OR OTHER PUBLIC OCCASIONS.

POETRY BY ROB. MORRIS, L. L. D.,



This may be introduced in public services, generally at the close, leaving out such portions of the other service as may appear desirable (e. g. the commandments, p. 311.)

The participants are five, represented by COM. 2d. 3d. 4th, and 5th. Except the Com. they should be in different places in the audience; and should have their parts committed to memory. When addressed, each rises, salutes with the hand and responds. Other details are left to the good taste of the Sir Knights.

COM.: *To Audience:*

O gallant Knights, in fitting garb arrayed,  
With helmet high, and cross and glittering blade—  
Brave warriors in a warfare not to cease  
Till wearied souls shall find perpetual peace.

While in this noble chamber met,  
Where zeal and light and love abound,  
Let's sit around the MASTER's feet,  
And listen to the gracious sound :  
The Master—PRINCE IMMANUEL,  
The sound—his word we love so well !

If to this company our Lord should come,  
If here, and now, Jesus should make his home,  
If face to face, we could behold that head  
Once crowned with thorns, once buried with the dead ;  
If in our hands those hands were laid, once torn  
With cruel spikes, alas, on cross-tree borne,  
What startling questions, gallant Templars, might  
Our GRAND COMMANDER, make to us to-night ?

(He turns to the second speaker and inquires.)

*Servant of Jesus, bold and free,  
What hast thou done, Sir Knight, for me?*

2d.—I saw the widow's tears, I heard the cry,  
Her little ones in rags and misery,  
Her household lamp gone out, her firelight dead,  
In utter loneliness and lack of bread :  
Then MASTER, in thy place I stood, my hand  
Was opened wide to that unhappy band ;  
I fed them, clothed them, and that widow's prayer  
Named my poor name who saved her from despair.

This, O Lord, I did for THEE,  
Thou hadst done *so much* for me.

Com.—turns to the third speaker.)

*Servant of Jesus, bold and free,  
What hast thou done, Sir Knight, for me?*

3rd.—I found a good man compassed round with foes,  
On every side reproaches, threats and blows :  
In innocence he bravely strove and well,  
And many a foeman to his good sword fell ;  
But nature fainting, soon his arm were numb  
Had not my cross-hilt sword, relieving come ;  
Then MASTER, in thy place I stood ! my blade  
Flew swiftly from its scabbard to his aid :  
I shielded him, I smote till close of day,  
And drove them all disconfited away,

This, O Lord, I did for THEE,  
Thou hadst done *so much* for me.

Com.—to the fourth speaker.)

*Servant of Jesus, bold and free,  
What hast thou done, Sir Knight, for me?*

4th.—I saw a stricken Knight—his youth had fled,  
Friends of his manhood resting with the dead,  
Standing beside a monumental stone,  
A mourner, broken-hearted and alone :  
Hopes once as bright and flowery as the spring,  
Withered and flown upon returnless wing ;  
Then MASTER, in thy place I stood ! I showed  
From Thy last message all the love of God,  
Pointed Thee out on Mediatorial Throne,  
And lo ! he made Thy promises his own !

This, O Lord, I did for THEE,  
Thou hadst done *so much* for me.

(COM.' to the fifth speaker.)

*Servant of Jesus, bold and free,  
What hast thou done Sir Knight, for me?*

5th.—MASTER DIVINE, in all life's weary round  
None so unhappy as myself I found!  
Blind, naked, sin-polluted, wholly lost;  
A wreck upon the ocean, tempest-tost;  
Nought could *I do* to win thy loving smile  
Since all my *doings*, like myself, were vile;  
Then MASTER, to THYSELF I flew! I plead  
That righteousness that triumphed o'er the dead,  
Placed my eternal trust within thy hand,  
And evermore will bow at Thy command.

This, O Lord, I did for THEE,  
Thou hadst done *so much* for me.

(COM.' to the assembled Knights.)

Sir Knights, well done, the high award is given,  
You open Word assures us of his praise:  
It is not far from grateful heart to Heaven,  
Almost we see him with faith's earnest gaze;  
Sir Knights, well done! read gladly the decree—  
"Ye did it unto them and unto *me!*"

It is but little any man can do,  
So insignificant is human pow'r;  
But as on christian's pilgrimage we go,  
There are occasions every day and hour  
In which God's hand is seen, and be our care  
To act as Jesus would were Jesus there.

The widow's tears are His, for Jesus wept;  
The imperilled Knight is His—spring forth, ye blades!  
The broken heart is His—while others slept  
How in Gethsemane He groaned and prayed!  
Sir Knights, He left the sin-struck world to us,  
To give its comfort and remove its curse.

Leap forth, good swords! stand warriors, on your feet!  
In serried ranks bear one another up!  
By THIS SIGN CONQUER! it is full, complete,  
You need no other sign, no other hope:  
And when from nerveless hands your swords shall fall,  
The GRAND COMMANDER will receive us all.

## Cemplar Uniform.



UTILATION of Uniform, such as attaching fancy crosses, not authorized, or gold lace when silver is designated, etc., ought not to be permitted. This want of *uniformity* is doubtless owing to the undue brevity of the law.

To supply the omissions, suggestions are made in foot notes, which, if approved, and this or something better is enforced, will effect a great desideratum. A military coat should be buttoned to the throat. On dress occasions a white collar should appear, *all around*, above the uniform coat collar.

### EDICT OF 1862.\*

FULL DRESS—Black Frock Coat,† Black Pantaloons, Scarf, Sword, Belt, Shoulder Straps, Gauntlets, and Chapeau, with appropriate trimmings.

FATIGUE DRESS—Same as Full Dress, except for Chapeau a Black Cloth Cap, Navy form, with *appropriate* Cross in front, and for Gauntlets, white gloves.

\* See proceedings Gr. E.'s 1862, pp. 45—50, and code. † Cut military style, single-breasted, nine buttons in front; skirt reaching a little over two-thirds of the distance to the knee; standing collar, fastened with hook and eye at neck gorge; sleeve plain with three buttons at cuff; four buttons behind. (If metal buttons, they are silver; see "distinctions," page 370.)

For Commanders and Past Commanders—Same as above, except coat is double-breasted, two rows of buttons set on shield-shape, six buttons behind. (If metal buttons, gold.)

For Grand and Past Grand Commanders—Same as above, except buttons are set on in groups of two, on each side, eight in each row.

For Grand and Past Grand Masters—Same as above, except nine buttons in each row, set on in groups of threes.

In some jurisdictions a small cross of the kind to which the wearer is entitled is worn on the coat collar in front: there is nothing in the regulations authorizing it, though it would be very pretty and appropriate.



SCARF (*Baldrick*)—Five inches wide in the whole, of white bordered with black one inch on either side, a strip of Navy Lace, one-fourth of an inch wide, at the inner edge of the black. On the front center of the Scarf a metal Star nine points, in allusion to the nine founders of the Templar Order inclosing the Passion Cross, surrounded by the Latin motto *in hoc Signo Vinces*; the star to be three and three quarter inches in diameter. The Scarf to be worn from the right shoulder to the left hip, with the ends extending six inches below the point of intersection.



**CHAPEAU**—The military Chapeau, trimmed with black binding, one white and two black Plumes, and *appropriate* Cross\* on the left side.

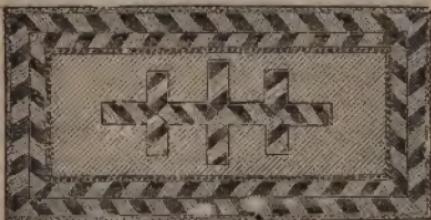


**GAUNTLETS**—Of buff leather, the flap to extend four inches upwards from the wrists, and to have the *appropriate* Cross\* embroidered

ed in gold, on the proper colored velvet, two inches in length.

**SWORD**—Thirty-four to forty inches, inclusive of Scabbard, Helmet Head, Cross Handle,† and metal Scabbard ‡

**BELT**—Red enameled or patent leather, two inches wide, fastened around the body with buckle or clasp.||



\* See "crosses" and "distinctions," page 370. † Black for all below the rank of Commander or P. C.; white for all others. ‡ See "distinctions," page 370.

|| Silver, oval in shape,  $2\frac{1}{4} \times 2\frac{3}{4}$  inches, with Passion Cross in the center; inner and outer edges of clasp raised and chased. From the belt suspend the sword by two silver chains, with a longer chain attached a little above the center of the scabbard, reaching to the center of the belt in rear; chains attached to belt by metal slide and ring; the ring nearest the front supplied with a hook, to hook up the sword when walking. [The cap is no part of the full-dress uniform, and no authority for wearing it at the belt. If, when in full-dress, the baggage must be carried, a knapsack might answer better, as it would prevent the cap, etc., being soiled or torn.]

It is the custom to trim the belt, with one row of one-fourth inch silver lace, near its edges. There is no regulation for it, but it is frequently worn.

For Commander and P. C.—Same as above, except gold buckle, etc., [if lace is used, an additional row in the center].

For Grand Commander and Past Grand Commander—Same as Commander, except two rows of lace near the edges.

For Grand Master and Past Grand Master—Same as Commander, except there are five rows of lace, two on each side and one in the center, at equal distances.

**SHOULDER STRAPS—*For Grand Master and Past Grand Masters of the Grand Encampment***—Royal Purple Silk Velvet, two inches wide by four inches long (outside measurement) bordered with two rows of embroidery, of gold, three-eights of inch wide; the *Cross of Salem*, embroidered, of gold, in the center, lengthwise.



***For all other Grand Officers of the Grand Encampment—***  
The same as the Grand Master, except for the Cross of Salem, the *Patriarchal Cross*, of gold, with the initials of the office, respectively embroidered, of silver (*Old English Characters*), at the foot of the cross, narrowwise of the strap.



***For the Officers and Past Gr. Officers of the Gr. Commandery—***Bright Red Silk Velvet, two inches wide by four inches long, bordered with one row of embroidery, of gold, a quarter of an inch wide; the *Templar's Cross*, of gold, with the initials of the office, respectively, to be embroidered (*Old English Characters*), in silver, on the lower end of the strap.



*For the Commander and Past Commanders of a Subordinate Commandery*—Emerald Green Silk Velvet, one and a half inches wide by four inches long, bordered with one row embroidery, of gold, quarter of an inch wide; the *Passion Cross*, with a halo, embroidered of silver, in the center.



*For the Generalissimo*—Same as the Commander, except for the *Passion Cross* the Square, surmounted with the *Passal Lamb*.



*For the Captain General*—Same as the Commander, except the *Passion Cross*, the Level, surmounted with the Cock.



**CAP**—Navy form; black cloth, four to five inches high, narrow leather strap, fastened at the sides with small metal Templar's Cross, and with *appropriate* cross in front.

**DISTINCTIONS**—The Sir Knights will wear white metal wherever metal appears. Commanders and Past Commanders, Grand and Past Grand Officers, gold.

**CROSSES\***—Sir Knights, Commanders, and Past Commanders of Subordinate Commanderies will wear the Passion Cross. Grand and Past Grand Officers of State Commanderies, the Templar Cross. Grand and Past Grand Officers of the Grand Encampment, the Patriarchal Cross. The Grand Master and Past Grand Masters of the Grand Encampment, the Cross of Salem, which is the Patriarchal Cross with an additional bar in the center.

The various crosses, as designated, to be worn on the side of the Chapeau, and on the Scabbard of the Sword. Those on the Chapeau to be three inches in height; on the Sword one inch.

**HANGINGS FOR JEWELS**—Hangings of Grand and Subordinate Commanderies may remain as at present.

**GRAND STANDARD\***—Is of white woolen or silk stuff, six feet in height and five feet in width, made tripartite at the bottom, fastened at the top to the cross-bar by nine rings; in the center of the field, a blood-red Passion Cross, over which is the motto, *In hoc Signo Vinces*; and under, *Non Nobis sed Nomini tuo da Gloriam!* The cross

---

\* These crosses and standards are given in the proceedings of 1859, page 76; and the crosses in the shoulder straps.

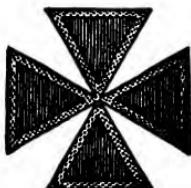
to be four feet high, and the upright bar to be seven inches wide. On the top of the staff a gilded globe or ball, four inches in diameter, surmounted by the Patriarchal Cross, twelve inches in height. The cross to be crimson, edged with gold.

**BEAUSEANT**—Of woolen or silk stuff, same form and dimensions as the Grand Standard, and suspended in the same manner. The upper half of this standard is black, the lower half white.

**PRELATE'S ROBES\***—A full white linen or muslin Robe, open behind, reaching down within six inches of the feet, fastened around the neck below the cravat, which should be white, and having flowing sleeves reaching to the middle of the hand. A white woolen Cloak, lined with white, fastened around the neck, and extending down to the bottom of the Robe; on the left front, a red velvet Templar Cross, six inches in width. A blue silk Stole reaching down in front to within six inches of the bottom of the robe, and having on it three Templar Crosses of red silk. Mitre of white merino bordered with gold, lined with green, having the Red Templar Cross extending to the edges, and surmounted by a Passion Cross three inches high. *The special Badge of his office is a Crozier.*†

\* There is no special *uniform* for the Prelate, and it is of questionable taste to distinguish a *Prelate* by the color or shape of his plume or sword. If he wears a "uniform," ought it not to be as a Knight and not as a Prelate?

† A staff surmounted by a cross, about five feet long, usually made of tin, hollow, gilt and highly ornamented.



## Constituting New Commanderies.



**REMARKS**—The following (consecration of new commanderies and installations) are "*the only forms and ceremonials sanctioned by the Grand Encampment.*" [See proceedings 1880, page 266]. It is to be hoped that the "sanction" will be withdrawn at the next triennial conclave.

The military part is so contrary to army practice and different from the teachings of this work, that suggested changes are noted in foot notes; not however to criticise, but to point out a few of the errors only.

### **Forms as Published in Grand Encampment Proceedings.**

The Knights about to be constituted will assemble in their Asylum and form in two divisions, open order, inward-faced, with swords at a carry. The Delta should be placed near the center of the hall, the tapers not lighted. The Bible and reliques on the Delta should be covered. The Grand Commandery, or constituting officers of the same, having met and made due preparatory arrangements in an adjoining room, will march to the commandery hall, where they should be received with the proper salute, and assume their stations. The Grand Commander, or officer in charge, will then cause the service to commence, by the rendering of an appropriate hymn or chant. Then may follow the reading of a Scripture lesson by the Grand Prelate. (Micah vii. 8—12 is suggested for such a lesson.) Prayer shall then be offered by the Prelate, all kneeling and uncovering.

**PRAYER**—Almighty and ever blessed God our Father, with whom is life, and from whom cometh every good and perfect gift of life, unto Thee we bow our hearts in reverence and in trust, gratefully acknowledging all Thy mercies and the mani-

fold manifestations of Thy providence and Thy truth. And now, as we engage in the solemn services of this occasion, we beseech Thy blessed help and direction, that all things may be done to Thy glory and to the advancement of the interests we have in charge. Let thy grace be poured out upon these Thy servants about to be constituted into an organization founded upon the Christian religion and the practice of the Christian virtues. Give unto them a large appreciation of the mission to which they are called, and an earnest purpose to perform the duties which will henceforth devolve upon them in connection with this new organization. Enlighten their minds, purify their hearts, and help them to attain such true consecration of soul that they may indeed bear much fruit to the honor and glory of Thy holy name. May they be true to the pledges they have taken as members of this Institution, true to the example and teachings of the Great Captain of their salvation, that so they may be met at the last with the welcome, "Well done, good and faithful servants, enter ye into the joy of your Lord." All this we ask, most Merciful Father, through Him who is the Resurrection and the Life, our Lord and Saviour, Jesus Christ. Amen.

All rise and resume chapeaux, after which the "Gloria Patri" may be rendered.

The Deputy Grand Commander, at the base of the Triangle, will then address the Grand Commander as follows :

**GRAND COMMANDER:** A constitutional number of Knights of the Valiant and Magnanimous Order of the Temple, duly instructed in the sublime mysteries of our Orders, having received from the proper authority a Warrant or Charter, authorizing them to hold a regular Commandery of Knights Templar, are now assembled for the purpose of being legally constituted, and having their officers installed, in due and ancient form.

**GRAND COMMANDER—**Let the Warrant or Charter be read.

The Grand Recorder reads the Charter.

GRAND COMMANDER: Sir Knights, do you still approve of the officers named in the Charter, and do you promise conformity to the laws and regulations of the Grand Body under whose authority this action is taken?

The petitioners respond : We do.

The Knights will stand at "present arms,"\* whilst the Grand Commander makes the following

**Declaration of Constitution.**

By virtue of the high power and authority in me vested, I do now form you, my worthy brother Knights, into a just and regular Commandery of Knights Templar, by the distinctive title of \_\_\_\_\_ Commandery; and you are henceforth authorized and empowered to form and open a Council of Knights of the Red Cross, a Commandery of Knights Templar, and a Council of Knights of Malta, of the Order of St. John of Jerusalem, and to perform all such things as may appertain to the same; conforming in all your doings to the laws and Constitution of the Grand Commandery under whose authority you act, and to the Constitution and Edicts of the Grand Encampment of the United States. And may the God of your fathers be with, guide, and direct you in all your undertakings.

The Grand Wardens will now uncover the jewels on the Delta, whilst the choir shall chant the Fifteenth Psalm, or some other appropriate selection. The Grand Commander will then cause the Knights to be assembled in a triangle around the Delta, and the Grand Prelate may then read the Apostle's Creed, as follows:—

**Credo.**

"I believe in God, the Father Almighty, Maker of Heaven and Earth; and in Jesus Christ, his only Son, our Lord; who was conceived by the Holy Ghost; born of the Virgin

\* Further along the command for same motion is "carry swords."

Mary; suffered under Pontius Pilate; was crucified, dead, and buried. He descended into Hell; the third day, he rose from the dead; he ascended into Heaven, and sitteth at the right hand of God, the Father Almighty; from thence he shall come to judge the quick and the dead.

"I believe in the Holy Ghost; the communion of saints; forgiveness of sins; the resurrection of the body, and the life everlasting. Amen."

The Grand Commander shall then direct the Grand Prelate to pronounce the sentence of consecration in the terms following:—

"To our Most Eminent and Worthy Patron, St. John the Almoner, I do now solemnly dedicate this Commandery, by the name and title of \_\_\_\_\_ Commandery; and may the God of all grace abundantly bless it and all its members in their laudable undertaking; and may each one of its members so redeem his time, that he may receive the joyful invitation, 'Enter thou into the joy of thy Lord.' Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, and good-will towards men."

**Response by all the Knights:—**

"As it was in the beginning, is now, and ever shall be, world without end. Amen."

Then may follow the "Gloria in Excelsis," or "Te Deum Laudamus," by the choir, after which the Grand Commander shall direct the Grand Marshal\* to make the following proclamation:—

#### **Grand Marshal's Proclamation.**

Hear ye ! hear ye ! hear ye ! Valiant Knights of the Temple !

I am ordered to proclaim that this new Commandery of Knights Templar and the Appendant Orders, by the name of

---

\* There is no such officer known to Constitution or Ritual. Why not cause Grand Generalissimo to exercise his functions as *aid*?

Commandery, has been legally constituted according to the forms and ceremonies of Knights Templar; and it is now authorized to meet and work as a regular Commandery under the jurisdiction of the Grand Commandery of \_\_\_\_\_.

This Proclamation is from the East *Once (a blast on trumpet), Twice (trumpet), Thrice (trumpet)*. All interested will take due notice, and govern themselves accordingly.

If the Grand Commandery has assembled for consecration services only, the Knights will be formed into two divisions, inward-faced; the Grand Officers then retire, passing under an arch of steel, escorted by Commander, Generalissimo and Captain General, preceded by Warder, to entrance of Guard Room.\*

If services upon constituting, dedicating, and installing officers, as for a new Commandery, the Grand Officers resume their stations, and at proper time proceed with installation services.

## Installation Subordinate Commanderies

[See Remarks, page 372.]



The Grand Officers having been duly received and escorted to their respective stations, the Grand Commander states the purpose of the occasion, and calls upon the Grand Prelate to lead in devotional exercises. A Scripture lesson should be read and prayer offered. If a choir is present, an appropriate selection of music may be given.

The Grand Marshal† receives from the Recorder a list of the Officers elect, and retires with them to Guard Room:

\* What is a *guard room*; What are its uses? † See foot note, page 375.

forms them in line according to official rank,—swords at a carry,—Commander on right, to Captain of Guard\* on left.

An Altar should be placed before Grand Commander, with Bible, opened, and Square, Compasses, Cross Swords, Jewels, Charter, Constitution of Grand Encampment, Statutes and Regulations of Grand Commandery, and By-Laws of Commandery, resting thereon. Banners of Commandery displayed from Grand Commander's station.

Grand Marshal announces officers elect. Grand Commander orders Knights to form into two divisions,—swords at a carry,—at open order, full width of Asylum, and inward faced.

#### **Grand March.**

Grand Marshal escorts officers elect into Asylum; halts, and faces them before Grand Commander, right resting on south. Commander is placed in center, and three paces in front of officers elect.

Grand Marshal orders, "Attention, Sir Knights! † Present arms! ‡ Officers salute, and Knights stand at "present."

The Sir Knights then uncover, and kneel || whilst the Grand Prelate offers prayer, to be followed by the Lord's Prayer, in which all the Knights join.

The Eminent Commander elect is then presented to the Grand Commander by the Grand Captain General, who says:—

Right Eminent: I have the honor to present you Eminent Sir ———, who has been elected to the office of Eminent Commander of this (new) Commandery. I find him to be well skilled in our sublime mysteries, and observant of the noble precepts of our forefathers, and have, therefore, no doubt but he will discharge the important duties of his office with fidelity.

The Grand Commander then asks, "Eminent Sir: Are you

\* See Const. Gr. Encamp. This is an officer of grand bodies—not of subordinate. Why is he "*Captain?*" What does he command?

† *Sir Knights, ATTENTION,* is correct. See Upton's army tactics.

‡ Further along this is given as "*carry swords.*"

|| It is unfortunate that Knights must *present, uncover, and kneel*, all at the same time. See foot note page 326.

ready to subscribe to the oath of office?" On his answering in the affirmative, the Grand Commander will draw his sword, and hold it horizontally, the edge toward the Commander elect, who will place his left hand on the blade, and his right hand on his left breast, and repeat as follows:—

I, \_\_\_\_\_, do promise and vow that I will support and maintain the Constitution and Code of Statutes of the Grand Encampment of Knights Templar of the United States of America; that I will support and maintain the By-Laws of this Commandery, and the Laws, Constitution, Rules, and Edicts of the Grand Commandery under whose immediate authority I act; and that I will, to the best of my knowledge and ability, faithfully discharge the various duties incumbent upon the office to which I have been elected.

The Grand Commander will then address the Commander elect as follows:

Eminent Sir: Having been elected to the important and honorable station of Commander of this Commandery, it is with unsigned pleasure that I enter upon the discharge of the duty of installing you into office. As the head of a Christian institution you are charged with important responsibilities and duties, and it is confidently anticipated that your fidelity to these trusts will reflect honor upon yourself and credit upon your Commandery. It now becomes my duty to propose certain questions to you, to which unequivocal answers are required:—

I. Do you solemnly promise, upon the honor of a Knight Templar, that you will redouble your endeavors to correct the vices, purify the morals, and promote the happiness of those of your brethren who have attained this magnanimous Order?

II. That you will never suffer your Commandery to be opened, unless there be present nine regular Knights of the Order?

III. That you will not confer the Orders upon any one

who has not shown a charitable and humane disposition, or who has not made a considerable proficiency in the foregoing degrees?

IV. That you will promote the general good of the Order, and on all proper occasions be ready to give and receive instructions, particularly from the General and State Grand Officers?

V. That, to the utmost of your power, you will preserve the solemnities of our ceremonies, and behave in open Commandery with the most profound respect and reverence, as an example to your brethren.

VI. That you will not acknowledge or hold communication with any Commandery that does not work under a Constitutional Warrant or Dispensation?

VII. That you will not admit any visitor into your Commandery who has not been knighted in a Commandery legally constituted, without his being first formally healed?

VIII. That you will pay due respect and obedience to the instructions of the General and State Grand Officers, particularly relating to the several lectures and charges, and will resign the chair to them, severally, when they may visit your Commandery?

IX. That you will support and maintain the Constitution and Code of Statutes of the Grand Encampment and the Constitution, Rules, and Edicts of the Grand Commandery under whose authority you act?

X. That you will bind your successor in office to the observance of the same rules to which you have now assented?

Do you submit to all these things? and do you promise to observe and practice them faithfully?

If the Commander responds affirmatively, the Grand Commander then addresses him as follows:—

Eminent Sir: Having been chosen by the Knights of your Commandery to fill the most exalted station in their power

to bestow, I congratulate you upon being the recipient of such honorable preferment, and now invest you with the jewel of your office, which is a cross surrounded by rays of light. It is to remind you that *humility, love, and pure benevolence* are resplendent rays that emanate from the pure and undefiled religion of the blessed Immanuel, and which should ever characterize the members of this Christian Order. It is to remind you of Him who died that he might give life to the world, and who is indeed the Lord and Saviour of all those who accept his guidance and obey his precepts.

I present you the Charter of your Commandery.

You will receive it as a sacred deposit, and never permit it to be used for any other purpose than those expressed in it, and safely transmit it to your successor in office.

I also commit to your hands the Holy Bible, the great light in every degree of Masonry, together with the Cross Swords. The doctrines contained in this sacred volume create in us a belief in the existence of the Eternal Jehovah, the only true and living God, the Creator and Judge of all things in heaven and earth; they also confirm in us a belief in the dispensations of his providence. This belief strengthens our faith, and enables us to ascend the first step of the Grand Masonic ladder. This faith naturally produces in us a hope of becoming partakers in the promises expressed in this inestimable gift of God to man, which hope enables us to ascend the second step; but the third and last, being Charity, comprehends the former, and will continue to exert its influence when faith shall be lost in sight, and hope in complete enjoyment. The Cross Swords, resting upon the Holy Bible, are to remind us that we should be "strong in the Lord and in the power of his might;" that we should put on the whole armor of God, to be able to wrestle successfully against principalities and powers, and spiritual wickedness in high places.

I also present you the Constitution of the Grand Encamp-

ment of the United States of America, the Rules and Regulations of the Grand Commandery of this State, and the By-Laws of your Commandery. You will frequently consult them yourself, and cause them to be read for the information of your Commandery, that all, being informed of their duty, may have no reasonable excuse to offer for the neglect of it.

And now, Eminent Sir, permit me to induct you into the chair of your Commandery, and in behalf of the Knights here assembled, to offer you my most sincere congratulations on your accession to the honorable station you now fill. It will henceforth be your special duty to preserve inviolate the Laws and Constitutions of the Order; to dispense justice, reward merit, encourage truth, and diffuse the sublime principles of universal benevolence. You will distribute alms to poor and weary pilgrims traveling from afar, feed the hungry, clothe the naked, and bind up the wounds of the afflicted. You will inculcate the duties of charity and hospitality, and govern your Commandery with justice and moderation. And finally, my brother, may the bright example of the illustrious heroes of former ages, whose matchless valor has shed undying lustre over the name of Knight Templar, encourage and animate you to the faithful performance of every duty.

SIR KNIGHTS: Behold your Eminent Commander, [*The Knights rise and present arms.*] Recollect, Sir Knights, that the prosperity of your Commandery will as much depend on your support, assistance and obedience, as on the assiduity, fidelity, and wisdom of your Commander. Be ye therefore diligent and faithful in the performance of your respective duties.

If the new Commander desires to offer any remarks, this is the appropriate time. The Grand Marshal orders:—

Attention, Sir Knights! Carry arms! Officers elect, return swords!

Then may follow a chant or appropriate hymn by the choir. The Grand Marshal then presents the other officers in the following words:—

Right Eminent Grand Commander,\* I have the further honor of presenting to you for installation these valiant Knights, who have been chosen to fill the various offices in this Commandery for the ensuing year, and now declare themselves ready to enter upon the duties of their respective stations.

The Grand Commander addresses the officers elect as follows:—

SIR KNIGHTS: Before proceeding to invest you with the honor and responsibility of your respective stations, it becomes my duty to administer to you the vow of office. Do you severally consent to take upon yourselves that vow?

They bow in token of assent. Grand Marshal orders.—

Officers elect, about face! Deposit chapeau! About face!† Call off from the right;—by twos! Numbers one—Handle swords.|| Draw swords! Carry swords! Incline blade of sword to left! Numbers two—Grasp blade with left hand! Numbers one—Grip sword with left hand! Numbers one and two—Place right hand upon left breast!

Grand Marshal then says:—

RIGHT EMINENT GRAND COMMANDER: The officers chosen are in proper position to take upon themselves the vow of office.

Grand Marshal orders:—

\* In these forms he is addressed as *Grand Commander*, *Right Eminent*, *Right Eminent Sir*, and *Right Eminent Grand Commander*. Why not the same (or at least the last two) habitually?

† Needs a preparatory. Why not "officers elect, ABOUT, FACE" as before?

|| There is no such military command. "Call off," in masonry, has a signification peculiar to itself.

¶ Why this? They necessarily "handle" to draw.

Attention, Sir Knights! Present arms.

Officers elect then repeat after the Grand Commander the  
**Vow of Office.**

I, A. B. C., do promise and vow that I will maintain and support the Constitution and Code of Statutes of the Grand Encampment of the United States of America, the Constitution, Rules, and Edicts of the Grand Commandery of \_\_\_\_\_, and that I will, to the best of my ability, faithfully discharge the duties of the office to which I have been elected.

Grand Marshal orders:—

Numbers two—Relinquish sword blade! Numbers one—Grip sword with right hand! Carry arms!\* Return sword! About face! Resume chapeaux! About face! Attention, Sir Knights! Carry arms! Return swords! To your posts—March!

Grand Marshal conducts the Generalissimo first, then remaining officers according to rank, to altar before the Grand Commander, introducing each by his title, and designating the office to which he has been chosen. The Grand Commander will receive each of these officers with fitting words, calling attention to their official duties and charging them to faithfulness in discharging the same. He shall also invest these officers with their respective jewels, and direct them to their respective stations.

Then may follow a charge to the Commandery by the Installing officer, after which the Grand Marshal will make the

**Official Proclamation.**

Hear ye! hear ye! hear ye! Valiant Knights of the Temple! In the name of the Grand Commandery of the State of \_\_\_\_\_, I hereby proclaim that the officers of \_\_\_\_\_ Commandery, No. —, Knights Templar, have been duly installed into their respective stations for the ensuing Templar

---

\* This was first given as "carry swords." Why not always give the same command for the same motion?

year, and the Commandery is now constitutionally organized for the dispatch of business. This proclamation is made to the North (*one blast on trumpet*), to the South (*one blast*), to the East (*one blast*), to the West (*grand flourish on trumpet*). All true and courteous Knights take due notice thereof and govern themselves accordingly.

The choir may then chant "Te Deum Laudamus," or render some appropriate musical selection.

The Grand Commandery then retires with a proper escort, and the Commandery is duly closed.

## Installation Grand Commanderies.



At the time selected for the ceremony of installation the acting Grand Commander shall take his place as presiding officer, and select some competent Sir Knight to act as Grand Marshal, under whose direction the officers elect will retire to an adjoining room. The jewels of office should be placed on the altar in front of the installing officer. The Grand Commander will then direct the Grand Marshal to introduce the Grand officers elect, and display them by single line, facing East, in the order of their official rank, the Grand Commander on the right. The Grand Marshal will then say:—

R. E.: Grand Commander, I present before you these Eminent Sir Knights, who having been duly elected officers of this Grand Commandery for the ensuing year, are now ready to enter upon the duties of their several stations.

Then, all standing, the Grand Commander shall say:—

SIR KNIGHTS: Before investing you with the jewels of your respective official positions, it becomes my duty to re-

ceive from you the vow of office. Are you willing to take such a vow?

They bow in token of assent. The Grand Marshal will then cause each Sir Knight in the line of officers elect, occupying the odd numbers from the right of the line, to draw his sword, dropping it to the left to a horizontal position. The Sir Knight on his left will lay his left hand upon the sword, then each will place his right hand upon his left breast and repeat after the Grand Commander the following

**Vow of Office.**

I, ——, do promise and vow that I will support and maintain the Constitution and Code of Statutes of the Grand Encampment of Knights Templar of the United States of America, the Statutes and Regulations of the Grand Commandery of the State of ———, and that I will, to the best of my ability, faithfully discharge the duties of the office to which I have been elected.

The Grand Marshal will then conduct the Grand Commander elect to the front of the altar, and, addressing the presiding officer, will say:—

R.: E.: Grand Commander, I present to you E.: Sir——, who has been elected to the office of Grand Commander of the Knights Templar of this jurisdiction, and who now declares himself ready for installation.

The presiding officer will then say:—

Attention, Sir Knights!\* Uncover! Let us unite with our Prelate in an invocation to the Throne of Grace.

The Prelate will then offer an appropriate prayer. The Sir Knights will then be covered, and the presiding officer will deliver to the Grand Commander the following

**Charge.**

R.: E.: SIR: Having been called by the members of this Grand Body to fill the highest office in their gift, I congratulate you upon having received such high honor at their hands, and I now invest you with the jewel of your office.

\* *Sir Knights, ATTENTION is correct. See Upton's Army Drill.*

Having placed the jewel on the left breast of the Grand Commander, he continues:—

The high honors of your office are accompanied by weighty responsibilities. While your authority will at all times be respected and your orders cheerfully obeyed, it is expected that you will not only have a watchful care over the interests of the Order in your jurisdiction, and enforce a prompt obedience to its Rules and Regulations, and that you will yourself exemplify, in your daily walk and conversation, the excellent tenets of our profession; that your ears will never be closed to the cry of the widow and the orphan; and that you will not turn aside from injured innocence, and the wayfaring brother in distress. Maintain with unfailing care the Statutes and Regulations of this Grand Body, and by your own respect for law cause others to find a strong incentive to obedience of all lawful requirements.

R.. E.: Sir, approach the East. Attention, Sir Knights! Behold your Grand Commander! Grand Commander, behold your Commandery!

The Grand Commandery will now be seated; and should the new Grand Commander desire to offer any remarks, this is the appropriate time.

The Grand Marshal will then present the remaining Grand Officers for installation, which work may be done by the Grand Commander, or the officer previously officiating. In either case the officers to be installed shall be charged to the faithful performance of the duties of their respective positions, and shall be invested with the jewels thereto attached.

Due proclamation shall then be made by the Grand Marshal as follows:—

Hear ye! hear ye! hear ye! Valiant Knights of the Temple! The Grand Officers of the Grand Commandery of \_\_\_\_\_, for the year ensuing, have been duly installed into their respective stations. This proclamation is made to the North (*one blast on trumpet*), to the South, (*one blast*), to the East (*one blast*), and to the West (*grand flourish on*

*trumpet).* All true and courteous Sir Knights will take due notice thereof and govern themselves accordingly.

If desired, appropriate music may be used during the ceremony.

## Installation Grand Encampment.



At the time designated for the ceremony of installation, the officers elect shall be placed in due position before the retiring Grand Master, or some officer designated to take his place in the performing of the service of installation, who shall administer to them the following

### Vow of Office.

I, — — —, do promise and vow that I will support and maintain the Constitution and Code of Statutes of the Grand Encampment of Knights Templar of the United States of America, and will use my best endeavors to cause a proper observance of the same, according to the authority which is in me vested; and that I will, to the best of my ability, faithfully discharge the duties belonging to the office to which I have been elected.

Prayer may then be offered.

The presiding officer may then address the Grand Master and those associated with him in office, calling attention to the work and responsibility which devolve upon them, and giving to them a special charge that they shall exercise a careful supervision of the affairs and interests of the Order, and be diligent in their several exalted stations to exemplify the graces of Christian Knighthood.

He shall then cause proclamation to be made that the officers have been duly installed.

## Crosses and Heraldic Cinctures.

### CROWNS AND BANNERS.



Gold  
(Or).



Silver—*Argent* (Ar.)



Blue—*Azure* (Az.) perp-  
endicular parallel lines, and so on.

Red—*Gules*, abbreviated *Gu.*) by  
FURS—Are also used and appro-

priately represented.



Red—*Gules* (Gu.)

An important rule in heraldry is that color should not appear upon col-



Green—*Vert.*

or, nor metal on metal; there are, however, a few exception-al cases.



Purple—*Purpure* (Purp.)

### CROSSES

Are almost innumerable in form, and are popular in heraldry and architecture. They were used in the earliest ages, and



are claimed to have been found in America at its discovery. The Latin Cross—also called Passion Cross and Christian Cross—is a plain cross of right angles, its lower limb longest, and is most common; also called Cross of Calvary. The base, like steps, are called *degrees*.



PATRIARCHAL CROSS and TRIPLE, or CROSS OF SALEM, are illustrated and described in different parts of this work.



GREEK CROSS is also described.

TEMPLAR'S CROSS is four triangles united, and should not be confused with the MALTESE CROSS, which has eight points.



The former (red with gold border, see cut) is Grand Commandery emblem.



CROSS OF ST. GEORGE is the national ensign of England: a red cross on white field. Said to have originated with the son of Joseph of Arimathea, who preached Christ in Britain, and dying, drew a cross upon his body with his own blood. It now, with the CROSS OF ST. ANDREW (X) and CROSS OF ST. PATRICK (which are the same), forms the ensign of the British Isles. The X is supposed to be the form of cross upon which St. Andrew was crucified.



TAU CROSS (T) has no upper limb; it derives its name from the Greek letter *tau*; called also EGYPTIAN CROSS. Among hieroglyphics it appears with an ovated top or oval ring, symbolizing eternal life! Called also Anticipatory Cross, as it "anticipated" the Cross of Christ; also called Cross of St. Anthony.





**RHO CROSS**—A St. Andrews Cross bi-sected with a P. Representing Greek letter *Chi* (ch) like our X, and *Rho* (r) like our P, which stands for abbreviation of Christ (*Chr.*) As a monogram, this is formed, in catacombs, sometimes as a seal, with letters ES DEUS between the arms—meaning that the person had “set to his seal that Christ is God.”



**CROSS CROSSLETT** is crossed near the extremity of the limbs, and is the Latin or Greek Cross, erect or inclined; when the latter, it is sometimes called the Cross of St. Julian; and when in red, before the signature, it indicates the Scottish Rite degree of S. P. R. S.



**DOUBLE CROSS CROSSLETT** and **TRIPLE CROSS CROSSLETT**, here represented as inclined; when prefixed to signature, indicate the rank of Sovereign Grand Inspector General, or Sovereign Grand Commander, Scottish Rite, etc.



**CROSS OF JERUSALEM** (the one on the left in shield argent), said to have been the insignia of the kingdom of Jerusalem and jewel of Knights of the Holy Sepulchre. That on the right, also called **JERUSALEM** and

#### TEUTONIC CROSS.



**A CROSS FITCHY**, or pointed at the lower end; said to have been adopted by Knights who had performed a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, indicating that it was (whatever its form) so arranged that it could be planted when the pilgrim halted.

**RAGULY CROSS**, made “ragged,” or of trunks of trees.



### CROWNS



Are of various forms, material and significance: of laurel, olive, oak leaves, etc., of gold and precious minerals. The *Antique Crown* has rays or points; is probably the most ancient; worn by kings of antiquity, assigned to gods and deified heroes. Sometimes borne upon shields. The shield on cover represents this, and is the shield of an ancient family, (Grant).

RINGS are considered the emblem of constancy, eternity, being endless.



An attempt was made in Grand Encampment to provide a TEMPLAR'S RING, but it failed to pass. It was to have a Templar Cross, w th the letters P. D. E. P., *Pro Deo Et Patria* (for God and Country) between the arms.

### BANNERS.

The BEAUSEANT, so called from the war-cry of Templars. Half black to indicate death to foes, whom it did dismay and confound. White, to encourage friends, typifying purity, etc.

PENNONS were carried by individual knights, displayed from their lances, being either swallow tailed or pointed, bearing his personal ensign. (See cover of this book, one bearing a family crest, the other a cross.)



### STARS.

The number of their points have different significations. In lodge *five* points; on baldric *nine*, the number of the founders of the order.



# Index.

<b>CONTENTS . . . . .</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Support swords . . . . .</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>PREFACE . . . . .</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Portwords . . . . .</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>TESTIMONIALS . . . . .</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Order swords . . . . .</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>NOMENCLATURE . . . . .</b>	<b>11</b>	<b>Charge . . . . .</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>SCHOOL OF THE KNIGHT . . . . .</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>Right shoulder swords . . . . .</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Introduction . . . . .</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>Support (from shoulder) . . . . .</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Commands . . . . .</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>Rear rest swords . . . . .</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>Position . . . . .</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>Reverse . . . . .</b>	<b>34, 307</b>
<b>Rest; in place; Parade . . . . .</b>	<b>15, 17</b>	<b>Sword arms rest . . . . .</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>Attention . . . . .</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>Parade rest . . . . .</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>Break ranks . . . . .</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>Open files . . . . .</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>Eyes right and left . . . . .</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>Cross swords . . . . .</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>Salutes with hand . . . . .</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>Kneel and rest on swords . . . . .</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>Facings: right; left; about . . . . .</b>	<b>17</b>	<b>Return swords . . . . .</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>Steps and cadence . . . . .</b>	<b>17, 18</b>	<b>Secure swords . . . . .</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>Balance step . . . . .</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>Inspection swords . . . . .</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>To March in common time . . . . .</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>UNCOVER . . . . .</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>To halt . . . . .</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>Silent Manual . . . . .</b>	<b>4, 40</b>
" march in quick time . . . . .	19, 21	<b>THE SALUTE . . . . .</b>	<b>16, 30, 31, 41</b>
" march in double time . . . . .	19—21	<b>OFFICER'S SCHOOL . . . . .</b>	<b>42</b>
" mark time . . . . .	19	<b>Commandery and Staff . . . . .</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>Short step . . . . .</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>THE BAND . . . . .</b>	<b>46</b>
" change step . . . . .	20	<b>SCHOOL OF COMMANDERY (17 plates) . . . . .</b>	<b>47</b>
" march backward . . . . .	20	<b>Formations . . . . .</b>	<b>49</b>
" march to the rear . . . . .	20	<b>Double ranks . . . . .</b>	<b>52</b>
" march sidewise . . . . .	20	<b>To dismiss Commandery . . . . .</b>	<b>52</b>
" dress . . . . .	21, 22	" open ranks . . . . .	52, 53
" march forward . . . . .	22	" march in line . . . . .	53
" march by the flank . . . . .	22, 23	" halt in line . . . . .	54
" change direction . . . . .	23	" wheel in line . . . . .	54
" put column in motion and change direction . . . . .	23	" incline and turn . . . . .	55
" halt a column . . . . .	23	" march by flank . . . . .	55
" form line from column . . . . .	23	" march threes to front . . . . .	56
" oblique . . . . .	24	" change direction of column . . . . .	57
<b>Wheelings . . . . .</b>	<b>24—26</b>	" halt column . . . . .	57
<b>Double rank . . . . .</b>	<b>27</b>	" oblique in column . . . . .	57
<b>SWORD MANUAL (22 plates) . . . . .</b>	<b>28</b>	" march column to rear . . . . .	58
<b>Draw swords . . . . .</b>	<b>29</b>	" line to right, etc., from threes . . . . .	59
<b>Carry swords . . . . .</b>	<b>29, 30</b>	" form line on the right, etc . . . . .	59
<b>Present swords . . . . .</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>Line to front 1 or 2 ranks . . . . .</b>	61, 62
<b>Officers present or "SALUTE" . . . . .</b>	<b>30</b>	" face and march to rear . . . . .	62, 63
<b>SALUTE for Standard . . . . .</b>	<b>30</b>	" break threes to rear . . . . .	63
<b>Salutes in march . . . . .</b>	<b>31</b>	<b>Rout step . . . . .</b>	<b>63</b>
		<b>Column of files from threes . . . . .</b>	<b>64</b>

- Column threes from column files . . . . . 64  
 Column of twos from line . . . . . 65  
 Line from column twos . . . . . 65  
 Column files from line, etc. . . . . 65  
 Single and double rank . . . . . 65  
 Double rank distance . . . . . 67  
**COLUMN OF DIVISIONS** . . . . . 67, 69  
 Same and move forward . . . . . 69  
 To halt or march column divisions 70  
 " oblique column divisions . . . . . 70  
 " change direction col. div's, 70, 71  
 Same and put in march . . . . . 71  
 Same faced and marched to rear . . . . . 71  
 To form line from column of divisions to or on right, etc . . . . . 72, 73  
 To form line and march forward . . . . . 72  
 " break into divisions . . . . . 74  
 " re-form Commandery . . . . . 75  
 " march column divisions by flank and re-form column . . . . . 76  
 To advance by right or left of divisions and form line again 77  
 To form threes from col. divisions 78  
 " form col. divisions from col. 3's 78  
**TEMPLAR DISPLAY DRILL(27 cuts)** 79  
 Position and numbers . . . . . 80  
 Column of twos or fours from line, 80  
 Line from column of twos or fours 81  
 To march col. of 2's or 4's to rear 82  
 " form two lines from column 4's 82  
 " form column 8's from col. 4's . . . . . 83  
 " form column 4's from col. 8's . . . . . 84  
 " form platoons from col. 4's or 8's 85  
 " form 8's from col. platoons . . . . . 86  
 " form column of threes by flank movement from column files 87  
 To form line faced to rear from column of threes . . . . . 87  
 To form line by two movements from column of threes . . . . . 88  
 To form line faced to rear by same 88  
 " change front . . . . . 89  
 " form line on standard . . . . . 90  
 " wheel about standard . . . . . 90  
 " wheel in line from col. threes 91  
 " form column sections . . . . . 91  
 " wheel into sections from line and advance . . . . . 92  
 To form column sections from 3's 92  
 " form same right or left from 3's 93  
 " break into col. 3's from col. sec. 93  
 " form column threes to right or left from column sections . . . . . 94  
 To march in line before completion of above . . . . . 94  
 To form col. 3's from col. sec. and march to rear & re-form sec. 95, 96  
 To close sec's to  $\frac{1}{2}$  distance, etc. 96  
 " take wheeling distance . . . . . 97  
 " form col. sec. forward from line 97  
 " form line to front from sections 98  
 " form line by 2 movements from col. sec's at  $\frac{1}{2}$  distance . . . . . 98, 99  
 To form line by three movements 100  
 " form col. 2's from col sec's . . . . . 101  
 " wheel in circles . . . . . 102  
 " wheel half of sections . . . . . 103  
 " advance even sections, etc. . . . . . 103  
 " deploy column sections . . . . . 104—106  
 " form double section from col. of sections . . . . . 107  
 " break into sections . . . . . 108  
 " wheel subdivis's consecutively 109  
 " change direction col. by flank 110  
 " advance by right or left of double sections . . . . . 111  
 To break by right of subdivisions, rear into column . . . . . 111—113  
 To deploy col. double sec's, 114—117  
 " deploy col. 3's open order . . . . . 117  
 " deploy column sections, etc. 118  
 " close the column . . . . . 118, 119  
 " deploy to front by files . . . . . 119  
 " deploy line open order . . . . . 120  
 " extend and close intervals . . . . . 121  
 " counter march, open order . . . . . 121  
**ORDER IN ECHELON** . . . . . 122  
 To march echelon to rear . . . . . 123  
 " march echelon by flank . . . . . 123  
 " re-form line from echelon . . . . . 124  
 " form sections in echelon from threes in echelon . . . . . 124  
 To form echelon from col. files . . . . . 124  
 " open & close ranks in echelon 125  
 " form line obliquely from files in echelon, etc . . . . . 126, 127  
**GENERAL REMARKS APPROX.—** 128  
 To form column from oblique line 128  
 " form line from files in echelon . . . . . 129  
**CROSSES—**  
 To form cross from column threes 129  
 " reduce cross to column threes 130  
 " form and reduce Greek Cross 131  
 " form Greek and Passion Cross from column of threes . . . . . 132  
 To display Greek Cross . . . . . 133  
 " form Greek Cross from line . . . . . 135  
 " form Patriarchal Cross . . . . . 136, 137  
 " form Cross of Salem . . . . . 138  
 " form St. Andrew's Cross 138, 139

<b>TRIANGLES—</b>	
From column of files . . . . .	140
From column of threes . . . . .	142-145
From column of sections . . . . .	145, 146
To form square . . . . .	147
<b>SCHOOL OF BATTALION</b> (14 cuts) . . . . .	149
Remarks—Who commands . . . . .	149
When commands are repeated . . . . .	151
Rank, position of Commanders . . . . .	151
Equalizing Commanders . . . . .	152
Standards . . . . .	153
Post of officers . . . . .	154
Markers . . . . .	154
To form Battalion . . . . .	154
" open and close ranks . . . . .	157, 158
" dismiss Battalion . . . . .	158
" march in line . . . . .	158
" face to rear; march to rear . . . . .	159, 160
" oblique and resume forward . . . . .	160
" halt Battalion . . . . .	160
" rectify alignment . . . . .	160
" correct alignment . . . . .	171
" give general alignment . . . . .	160
" wheel . . . . .	161
" march by flank . . . . .	162
" break into col. 3's from right, etc., to march to left, etc. . . . .	162
To form line <i>to</i> left, etc . . . . .	163
Successive formations . . . . .	164
To form line <i>on</i> right, etc . . . . .	164
" form line to front . . . . .	165
" form line to front faced to rear . . . . .	166
" form column sections from line . . . . .	166
" form line from column sections . . . . .	167
" form line to right, etc., from column sections . . . . .	167
To form col. comm'ds from line . . . . .	167
" form col. and move forwards . . . . .	168
" form commanders to rear into column from line . . . . .	169
To break from right, etc., to march to left, etc., from line . . . . .	169
To march column forward, etc . . . . .	170
" change direction of column . . . . .	170
" from line <i>to</i> left from column . . . . .	170
" form line and move forward . . . . .	172
" form line on right, etc . . . . .	172
" form line to front from halt . . . . .	173
" form line to front faced to rear . . . . .	174
" form line by two movements . . . . .	174
" advance by flank of subdivi- sions from line . . . . .	174
To form line from subdivisions when marching by flank of subdivisions . . . . .	175
To form column of subdivisions when marching by flank of subdivisions and reverse . . . . .	175
To form threes from column com- mand's and squadrons, 176, 176	
To close column to $\frac{1}{2}$ distance . . . . .	176
" deploy column . . . . .	176
" form line to right, etc., from column squadrons at $\frac{1}{2}$ dis. . . . .	176
To form column command's from column of squadrons . . . . .	177
To change front of battalion . . . . .	178
<b>SCHOOL OF MOUNTED KNIGHT</b> (7 "cuts") . . . . .	179
Lead out . . . . .	179
To mount . . . . .	180
" form rank . . . . .	181
Position when mounted . . . . .	181
The stirrups . . . . .	182
To dismount . . . . .	183
To rest . . . . .	183
The attention . . . . .	183
To file off and dismiss . . . . .	184
Use of reins . . . . .	184
To march and halt . . . . .	185
" march by flank at intervals . . . . .	185
" halt column of files . . . . .	186
" march to rear . . . . .	186
" oblique and resume forward . . . . .	186'7
" change direction . . . . .	187
" rein back . . . . .	187
The alignment . . . . .	180, 188
To march by flank from line . . . . .	188
" form line to right or left from column of files . . . . .	189
" trot and walk . . . . .	189
" pass from head to rear of col. . . . .	189
" pass from rear to head of col. . . . .	190
" increase, etc., in trot . . . . .	190
" pass from halt to trot . . . . .	190
" halt from a trot . . . . .	190
The spur . . . . .	191
To gallop . . . . .	191
" pass from gallop to trot . . . . .	191
" close intervals . . . . .	192
Changes of gait . . . . .	192
<b>SCHOOL OF MOUNTED PLATOON</b> (7 "cuts") . . . . .	193
To mount . . . . .	193
Alignments . . . . .	194, 195, 197
To rest and resume attention . . . . .	196
" march in line . . . . .	197
" halt and align . . . . .	197
" oblique in line . . . . .	197
To resume forward march . . . . .	197

- To rein back . . . . . 198  
 The wheelings, etc . . . . . 198—202  
 To make slight change direction 202  
 " march by flank . . . . . 202  
 " form col. 3's or 2's and halt . . . . . 202  
 " march 3's to front from line . . . . . 202  
 " halt column and put in motion 203  
 " oblique in column and resume forward . . . . . 203  
 To change direction column threes 203  
 " march column threes to rear . . . . . 204  
 " form line from column of threes to right or left . . . . . 204  
 To form line to right or left without intervals . . . . . 204, 206  
 To form line to front . . . . . 205  
 " face to rear and march to rear 206  
 " break threes to rear . . . . . 206  
 " form rear threes in line . . . . . 206  
 " form col. files from col. 3's, etc 207  
 " form col. 2's from col. threes 207  
 " form col. 3's from col. files . . . . . 208  
 " form col. 3's from col. twos . . . . . 208  
 Movements in column of twos . . . . . 208  
 To form line from column of twos, etc., to right or left . . . . . 208  
 To form line on right, etc . . . . . 209  
 " form line to front . . . . . 209  
**SCHOOL OF THE COMMANDERY**  
 MOUNTED (16 " cut") . . . . . 210  
 Post of Officers . . . . . 210  
 Formation . . . . . 211  
 Alignments . . . . . 212  
 General Movements . . . . . 213  
 To open order . . . . . 213  
 " close order . . . . . 214  
 " dismiss . . . . . 214  
 " pass obstacles . . . . . 214  
 " form platoon in line . . . . . 214  
 " form column of sections . . . . . 215  
 " form two columns of sections . . . . . 215  
 Movements in column of sections . . . . . 215  
 Wheelings—double ranks . . . . . 216  
 To form line from column of sections to front . . . . . 217  
 To and on right into line . . . . . 217  
 " form column of platoons to right or left . . . . . 218  
 To break by right or left of platoons to rear into column . . . . . 219  
 To form col. of platoons to front . . . . . 220  
 " put column platoons in march and halt it . . . . . 221  
 To oblique column platoons, etc . . . . . 221  
 " change direction of column . . . . . 221  
 To put in march and change direction at same time . . . . . 222  
 To face column of platoons to rear and march to rear . . . . . 222  
 To form line to right or left from column of platoons . . . . . 223  
 To form line on right or left from column of platoons . . . . . 224  
 To form column front into line . . . . . 225  
 " wheel about by platoons in line 227  
 " march the column by flank . . . . . 227  
 " advance by flank of platoons . . . . . 227  
 " form threes from platoons . . . . . 228  
 To form column of platoons to right or left . . . . . 218  
 To break by right or left of platoons to rear into column . . . . . 219  
 To form platoon from threes . . . . . 223  
 " march by flank of platoons from column of threes . . . . . 228  
**MOUNTED DISPLAY DRILL** . . . . . 229  
 To form Triangles . . . . . 229  
 " form Squares, etc . . . . . 230  
**CONCLUSION NOTES** . . . . . 230  
**Visitation and Courtesies** . . . . . 242  
**SWORD SIGNALS (1 cut)** . . . . . 236  
**BUGLE OR TRUMPET SIGNALS—(1 cut, 32 signals, 1 march)** . . . . . 258  
**AWARD OF PRIZE (1 cut)** . . . . . 266  
**RULES FOR COMPETITIVE DRILLS—**  
 266—269  
**CAMPS AND CAMPING (2 cuts)** . . . . . 270  
 The Quartermaster . . . . . 272  
**CORRESPONDENCE AND ORDERS—**  
 (1 cut) . . . . . 273  
 Forms of orders . . . . . 274  
 Forms of endorsements, etc . . . . . 275  
**ASYLUM, COUNCIL, TACTICS—**  
 (5 cuts) . . . . . 276  
 Commands . . . . . 276  
 To establish line . . . . . 276  
 " form divisions on N. S. E. . . . . 277  
 " form divisions on S. and N . . . . . 277  
 To form on one side or center . . . . . 277  
 " form in two or more ranks . . . . . 278  
 " form in open order . . . . . 278  
 " form for rehearsal . . . . . 278  
**ESCORTS** . . . . . 278—282  
 For Grand Officer . . . . . 244  
 " distinguished persons . . . . . 243  
 " Commanderies . . . . . 243  
 " Sovereign Master . . . . . 279  
 " Eminent Commander . . . . . 280  
 " High Priest or Prelate . . . . . 280  
 " Banquet . . . . . 281

To form triangle from 2 divisions . . . . .	282	WORK Red Cross . . . . .	328
" reduce triangle . . . . .	284	TEMPLAR MANUAL (38 cuts) . . . . .	339
" form triangle from three ranks . . . . .	285	Plat of Asylum . . . . .	340
" reduce it . . . . .	286	Officers—their jewels, stations and duties . . . . .	341
" seat Sir Knights without dis- missal . . . . .	286	Opening K. T . . . . .	344
To change division to opposite side of Asylum . . . . .	286	Closing " . . . . .	345
" Inspection and Review" . . . . .	287	Work " . . . . .	346
BURIAL SERVICE (cuts and music) . . . . .	288	KNIGHTS OF MALTA (3 cuts) . . . . .	357
Order of procession . . . . .	288	History . . . . .	357
At the residence . . . . .	289	Work . . . . .	358
" church . . . . .	290	Charge . . . . .	359
" grave . . . . .	290	DRAMATIC ADDRESS (1 cut) for Public Worship, etc . . . . .	362
RITUAL . . . . .	291	UNIFORM (12 cuts) . . . . .	365
Left reverse swords . . . . .	307	GRAND ENCAMPMENT FORMS AND CEREMONIES (4 cuts)—	
PUBLIC WORSHIP (3 cuts) . . . . .	308, 362	Constituting new Commanderies . . . . .	372
DEDICATING AND CONSECRATING ASYLUMS (1 cut) . . . . .	314	Installation Subordinate Comman- deries . . . . .	376
CONSECRATING BANNERS (3 cuts) . . . . .	318	Installation Grand Commanderies . . . . .	384
RED CROSS MANUAL (17 cuts) . . . . .	323	Installation Grand Encampment . . . . .	387
Plat of Council . . . . .	322	Heraldic Tinctures — Crosses, crowns, banners & stars . . . . .	389—391
Duties etc., of officers . . . . .	323		
Opening . . . . .	326		
Closing . . . . .	327		

